

PROJECT MANUAL



Kingsessing Recreation Center
Building and Site Improvements

4901 Kingsessing Ave.

PROJECT No. 16368E-02-03

CITY OF PHILADELPHIA

REBUILD/PHILADELPHIA PARKS AND RECREATION

Project Specifications VOL. 2

08/28/2023

Bid Package #2

Issue for Bid

NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION



TABLE OF CONTENTS

ISSUE DATE

DIVISION 00 - BIDDING AND CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS

00 0110	TABLE OF CONTENTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 0115	LIST OF DRAWINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 2113	INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 2114	DIESEL ENGINE EMISSIONS CONTROL	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 2115	NOTICE TO SELLERS - MAYOR'S EXECUTIVE ORDER	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 4114	CONSTRUCTION BID PROPOSAL FORM	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 4313	BID BOND	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 4322	UNIT PRICES FORM	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 4323	ALTERNATES FORM	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 7200	STANDARD CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
00 7343	PREVAILING WAGE RATES SCHEDULE	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 1200	SUMMARY OF THE WORK	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2100	ALLOWANCES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2200	UNIT PRICES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2300	ALTERNATES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES ATTACHMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 2973	SCHEDULE OF VALUES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3113	PROJECT COORDINATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3119	PROJECT MEETINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3216	CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULING	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3233	CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3300	SUBMITTALS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3513.18	SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS FOR WORK WITHIN THE PHILADELPHIA PARKS & RECREATION SYSTEM	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 3591	HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 4100	CODES, REGULATIONS AND STANDARDS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 4516.13	CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY CONTROL	BP#2	8/28/2023

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS - PACKAGE #2

00 0110

TOC-1

01 5000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 5639	TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 5719	ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 5800	PROJECT IDENTIFICATION AND SIGNS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 6001	PRODUCTS AND MATERIALS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7123	FIELD ENGINEERING	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7329	CUTTING, PATCHING, SLEEVES AND INSERTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7423	CLEANING	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7836	WARRANTIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 7839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
01 9113	GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 4119	SELECTIVE DEMOLITION (SITE)	BP#2	8/28/2023
02 4120	SELECTIVE DEMOLITION (BUILDING)	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

03 0100	MAINTENANCE OF CONCRETE	BP#2	8/28/2023
03 1000	CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
03 2000	CONCRETE REINFORCING	BP#2	8/28/2023
03 3000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04 0101	REPAIR AND CLEANING OF EXISTING MASONRY	BP#2	8/28/2023
04 0511	MASONRY MORTARING AND GROUTING	BP#2	8/28/2023
04 2000	UNIT MASONRY	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 05 - METALS

05 1200	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING	BP#2	8/28/2023
05 4000	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING	BP#2	8/28/2023
05 5000	METAL FABRICATIONS	BP#2	8/28/2023

05 5100	METAL STAIRS	BP#2	8/28/2023
05 5133	METAL LADDERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
05 5213	PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 1000	ROUGH CARPENTRY	BP#2	8/28/2023
06 2000	FINISH CARPENTRY	BP#2	8/28/2023
06 4100	ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 1300	SHEET WATERPROOFING	BP#2	8/28/2023
07 1600	WATERPROOF CEMENT-BASED COATING	BP#2	8/28/2023
07 2100	THERMAL INSULATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
07 2126	BLOWN INSULATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
07 8410	FIRE STOPPING AND SMOKE STOPPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
07 9200	JOINT SEALANTS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

08 1113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 3100	ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 3313	COILING COUNTER DOORS	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 4113	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 5210	WINDOW SECURITY SCREENS	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 7100	DOOR HARDWARE	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 7110.01	DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 8100	GLAZING	BP#2	8/28/2023
08 9110	LOUVERS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 0561	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FLOORING PREPARATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 2216	NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 2300	GYPSON PLASTERING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 2400	CEMENT PLASTERING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 2500	GYPSON BOARD	BP#2	8/28/2023

09 3000	TILING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 6200	RESINOUS POURED IN PLACE RESILIENT FLOORING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 6500	RESILIENT FLOORING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 6566	RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING	BP#2	8/28/2023
09 9000	PAINTS AND COATINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 0610	EXTERIOR SIGNAGE		
10 1400	SIGNAGE	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 2113.19	PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 2213	WIRE MESH PARTITIONS	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 2600.13	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 2800	TOILET ACCESSORIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 4415	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 5617	WALL-MOUNTED STANDARDS AND SHELVING	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 5723	CLOSET AND UTILITY SHELVING	BP#2	8/28/2023
10 8213	EXTERIOR ENCLOSURE	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

11 3013	RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES	BP#2	8/28/2023
11 6800	PLAY EQUIPMENT AND STRUCTURES	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12 2400	WINDOW SHADES	BP#2	8/28/2023
12 3600	SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOPS	BP#2	8/28/2023
12 9300	SITE FURNISHINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

13 3423	FABRICATED STRUCTURES	BP#2	8/28/2023
---------	-----------------------	------	-----------

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

14 2400	HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS	BP#2	8/28/2023
14 4200	WHEELCHAIR LIFTS	BP#2	8/28/2023

VOLUME 2

DIVISION 21 - FIRE PROTECTION

21 0500	COMMON WORK RESULT FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 0523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 0548	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING EQUIPMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 1119	FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 1313	WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
21 1316	DRY PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 0500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 0518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 0523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMEN	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 0719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 1116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 1119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 1316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 1319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 3400	FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
22 4000	PLUMBING FIXTURES	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

23 0500	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0519	METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0523	VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023

23 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0533	HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0548	VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0713	DUCT INSULATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 0923	DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL DDC SYSTEM FOR HVAC	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 1123	NATURAL-GAS PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 2113	HYDRONIC PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 2116	HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 2123	HYDRONIC PUMPS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 2300	REFRIGERANT PIPING	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 2500	HVAC WATER TREATMENT	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 2923	VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 3113	METAL DUCTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 3300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 3416	CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 3423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 3713	AIR DIFFUSERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 3713.23	REGISTERS AND GRILLES	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 5216	CONDENSING BOILERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 7213	HEAT WHEEL AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVER UNITS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 7313.13	INDOOR BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNIT	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 8126	SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
23 8129	VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

26 0500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0543	UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0573.13	SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0673.16	COORDINATION STUDIES	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0573.19	ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS	BP#2	8/28/2023

26 0923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 0943	PERFORMANCE LIGHTING CONTROLS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 2200	LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 2416	PANELBOARDS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 2726	WIRING DEVICES	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 2816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 5119	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 5213	EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING	BP#2	8/28/2023
26 5619	LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 27 TELECOM

27 1500	COMMUNICATION CABLING	BP#2	8/28/2023
---------	-----------------------	------	-----------

DIVISION 28 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS

28 2300	VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS	BP#2	8/28/2023
28 3111	DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 1000	SITE CLEARING	BP#2	8/28/2023
31 2000	EARTH MOVING	BP#2	8/28/2023
31 2100	SOIL EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION	BP#2	8/28/2023
31 2319	DEWATERING	BP#2	8/28/2023
31 5000	EXCAVATION AND SUPPORT	BP#2	8/28/2023

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 1216	ASPHALT PAVING	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1313	CONCRETE PAVING	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1314	CONCRETE CURBING	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1315	CONCRETE SIDEWALK	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1373	PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1723	PAVEMENT MARKINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1813	SYNTHETIC TURF	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 1816.13	PROTECTIVE PLAYGROUND SURFACING	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 3113	CHAIN LINK FENCING GATES	BP#2	8/28/2023
32 3300	SITE FURNISHINGS	BP#2	8/28/2023

32 9113	SOIL PREPARATION	BP#2 8/28/2023
32 9200	TURFS AND GRASSES	BP#2 8/28/2023
32 9300	PLANTS	BP#2 8/28/2023

DIVISION 33 – SITE UTILITIES

33 0500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES	BP#2 8/28/2023
33 4100	SITE STORM SEWRAGE SYSTEMS	BP#2 8/28/2023
33 4101	CONNECTION TO EXISTING CITY OF PHILADELPHIA SEWER STRUCTURES	BP#2 8/28/2023

SECTION 00 0115
LIST OF DRAWINGS

		ISSUE	DATE
<u>GENERAL</u>			
CS1-R.2	COVER SHEET	BP#2	8/28/2023
Z101-R.2	SITE PLAN / ZONING	BP#2	8/28/2023
LS101-R.2	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2	8/28/2023
LS102-R.2	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2	8/28/2023
LS103-R.2	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2	8/28/2023
<u>CIVIL</u>			
C-021-R.2	EXISTING CONDITONS PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-050-R.2	SITE UTILIZATION PLAN		
C-051-R.2	SITE DEMOLITION PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-100-R.2	OVERALL SITE KEY PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-101-R.2	SITE IMPROVEMENT PLAN SOUTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-102-R.2	SITE IMPROVEMENT PLAN NORTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-151-R.2	GRADING PLAN SOUTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-152-R.2	GRADING PLAN NORTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-153-R.2	GRADING PLAN DETAIL	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS154-R.2	SYNTHETIC TURF FIELD SPORTS STRIPING PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-171-R.2	PCSM / UTILITY PLAN SOUTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-172-R.2	PCSM / UTILITY PLAN NORTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS601-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS602-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS603-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS604-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS605-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS606-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS607-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS608-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
CS609-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-610-R.2	SITE IMPROVEMENT PLAN SOUTH	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-801-R.2	EROSION & SEDIMENTATION CONTROL PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-851-R.2	EROSION & SEDIMENTATION CONTROL NOTES	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-852-R.2	EROSION & SEDIMENTATION CONTROL	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-900-R.2	PRE-CONSTRUCTION DRAINAGE AREA MAP	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-901-R.2	POST-CONSTRUCTION DRAINAGE AREA MAP	BP#2	8/28/2023
C-902-R.2	INLET DRAINAGE AREA MAP	BP#2	8/28/2023
<u>LANDSCAPE</u>			
L-100-R.2	SITE IMPROVEMENTS OVERVIEW PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-101-R.2	SITE LAYOUT PLAN - BASE SCOPE	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-102-R.2	SITE MATERIALS PLAN - BASE SCOPE	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-103-R.2	SITE FURNISHINGS AND EQUIPMENT PLAN - BASE SCOPE	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-104-R.2	SITE LIGHTING LAYOUT PLAN - BASE SCOPE	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-105-R.2	SITE PHOTOMETRY PLAN - BASE SCOPE	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-106-R.2	SITE PLANTING PLAN- BASE SCOPE	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-401-R.2	PLAN ENLARGEMENT - SAFETY SURFACE LAYOUT PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-402-R.2	PLAN ENLARGEMENT - PLAY MOUNDS	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-501-R.2	SITE DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-502-R.2	PLANTING DETAILS	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-800-R.2	SITE ADD ALTERNATES OVERVIEW PLAN	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-801-R.2	SITE ADD ALTERNATE S3 - TENNIS COURTS	BP#2	8/28/2023
L-802-R.2	SITE ADD ALTERANTE S4 - DIAGONAL PATH AMENITIES	BP#2	8/28/2023

ARCHITECTURAL

G101-R.2	GENERAL NOTES AND ABBREVIATIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD101-R.2	DEMOLITION PLAN - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD101B-R.3	DEMOLITION PLAN - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALT	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD101C-R.4	DEMOLITION PLAN - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALT	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD102-R.2	DEMOLITION PLAN - 1ST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD103-R.2	DEMOLITION PLAN - 2ND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD104-R.2	DEMOLITION PLAN - ATTIC	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD106-R.2	DEMOLITION RCP - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD107-R.2	DEMOLITION RCP - 1ST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD108-R.2	DEMOLITION RCP - 2ND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD201-R.2	DEMOLITION ELEVATION-EAST	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD202-R.2	DEMOLITION ELEVATION-WEST	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD203-R.2	DEMOLITION ELEVATIONS-SOUTH	BP#2 8/28/2023
AD204-R.2	DEMOLITION ELEVATIONS-NORTH	BP#2 8/28/2023
A101-R.2	NEW WORK - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
A101B-R.2	NEW WORK - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALT	BP#2 8/28/2023
A101C-R.2	NEW WORK - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALT	BP#2 8/28/2023
A102-R.2	NEW WORK - 1ST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A103-R.2	NEW WORK - 2ND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A104-R.2	NEW WORK - ATTIC & ROOF	BP#2 8/28/2023
A105-R.2	INTERIOR REPAIR - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
A106-R.2	INTERIOR REPAIR - 1ST FL	BP#2 8/28/2023
A107-R.2	INTERIOR REPAIR - 2ND FL	BP#2 8/28/2023
A201-R.2	BUILDING ELEVATIONS - EAST	BP#2 8/28/2023
A202-R.2	BUILDING ELEVATIONS - WEST	BP#2 8/28/2023
A203-R.2	BUILDING ELEVATIONS - NORTH	BP#2 8/28/2023
A204-R.2	BUILDING ELEVATIONS - SOUTH	BP#2 8/28/2023
A205-R.2	SITE WALLS ELEVATIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A301-R.1	BUILDING SECTIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A401-R.2	ENLARGED PLANS/ELEVATIONS - TOILET ROOMS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A402-R.3	ENLARGED PLANS/ELEVATIONS - TOILET ROOMS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A450-R.2	VERTICAL CIRCULATION - STAIRS, PLANS & SECTIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A451-R.2	VERTICAL CIRCULATION - STAIRS, PLANS & SECTIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A452-R.2	VERTICAL CIRCULATION - STAIRS, PLANS & SECTIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A453-R.2	VERTICAL CIRCULATION - ELEVATOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A454-R.2	VERTICAL CIRCULATION - RAMPS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A501-R.2	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A502-R.2	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
A511-R.2	ENLARGED PLAN, ELEV., DTLS - KITCHEN	BP#2 8/28/2023
A701-R.2	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
A702-R.2	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN - 1ST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A703-R.2	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN - 2ND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A801-R.2	FINISH PLAN - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
A802-R.2	FINISH PLAN - 1ST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A803-R.2	FINISH PLAN - 2ND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A804-R.2	MATERIAL SCHEDULE	BP#2 8/28/2023
A805-R.2	SIGNAGE PLAN - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
A806-R.2	SIGNAGE PLAN - 1ST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A807-R.2	SIGNAGE PLAN - 2ND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
A901-R.2	DOOR AND PARTITION SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
A910-R.2	STOREFRONT ENTRANCE	BP#2 8/28/2023

STRUCTURAL

S001-R	GENERAL NOTES	BP#2 8/28/2023
SD-101-R	DEMOLITION PLAN - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023

SD-102-R	DEMOLITION PLAN - FIRST FLOOR AND SECOND FLOORS	BP#2 8/28/2023
SD-103-R	DEMOLITION PLAN - ROOF FRAMING	BP#2 8/28/2023
S101-R	LOWER LEVEL FRAMING PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023
S102-R	FIRST FLOOR FRAMING PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023
S103-R	SECOND FLOOR FRAMING PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023
S104-R	ATTIC FRAMING PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023
S105-R	ROOF FRAMING PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023
S201-R	REPAIR SECTIONS AND DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023

MECHANICAL

M001-R.2	MECHANICAL INDEX SHEET	BP#2 8/28/2023
M002-R.2	MECHANICAL NOTES	BP#2 8/28/2023
M100-R.2	MECHANICAL DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
M101-R.2	MECHANICAL DEMOLITION - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
M102-R.2	MECHANICAL DEMOLITION - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
M200-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED DUCTWORK - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
M200B-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED DUCTWORK - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
M200C-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED DUCTWORK - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
M201-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED DUCTWORK - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
M202-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED DUCTWORK - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
M203-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED DUCTWORK - ATTIC/ROOF	BP#2 8/28/2023
M300-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED PIPING - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
M300B-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED PIPING - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
M300B-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED PIPING - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
M301-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED PIPING - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
M302-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED PIPING - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
M303-R.2	MECHANICAL PROPOSED PIPING - ATTIC/ROOF	BP#2 8/28/2023
M400-R.2	MECHANICAL PARTIAL PLANS & SECTIONS	BP#2 8/28/2023
M500-R.2	MECHANICAL CONTROLS SEQUENCES	BP#2 8/28/2023
M501-R.2	MECHANICAL DIAGRAMS	BP#2 8/28/2023
M600-R.2	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
M601-R.2	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
M700-R.2	MECHANICAL DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
M701-R.2	MECHANICAL DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
M702-R.2	MECHANICAL DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023

ELECTRICAL

E001-R.2	ELECTRICAL INDEX SHEET	BP#2 8/28/2023
E100-R.2	ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E100B-R.2	ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E101-R.2	ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
E102-R.2	ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
E200-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E200B-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E200C-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E201-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
E202-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
E203-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - ATTIC/ROOF	BP#2 8/28/2023
E204-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED POWER - SITE PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023
E205-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSAL POWER - SITE PLAN	BP#2 8/28/2023

E300-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED LIGHTING - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E300B-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED LIGHTING - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E300C-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED LIGHTING - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
E301-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED LIGHTING - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
E302-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED LIGHTING - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
E303-R.2	ELECTRICAL PROPOSED LIGHTING - ATTIC	BP#2 8/28/2023
E400-R.2	ELECTRICAL SINGLE-LINE DIAGRAM - EXISTING	BP#2 8/28/2023
E401-R.2	ELECTRICAL SINGLE-LINE DIAGRAM - PROPOSED	BP#2 8/28/2023
E500-R.2	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
E501-R.2	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
E502-R.2	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
E503-R.2	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
E600-R.2	ELECTRICAL DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
<u>PLUMBING</u>		
P001-R.2	PLUMBING INDEX SHEET	BP#2 8/28/2023
P100-R.2	PLUMBING DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P100B-R.2	PLUMBING DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P101-R.2	PLUMBING DEMOLITION - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
P102-R.2	PLUMBING DEMOLITION - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
P103-R.2	PLUMBING DEMOLITION - ATTIC	BP#2 8/28/2023
P200-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED DRAINAGE - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P200B-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED DRAINAGE - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P200C-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED DRAINAGE - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P201-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED DRAINAGE - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
P202-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED DRAINAGE - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
P203-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED DRAINAGE - ROOF	BP#2 8/28/2023
P300-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED SUPPLY - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P300B-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED SUPPLY - LOWER LEVEL DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P300C-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED SUPPLY - LOWER LEVEL ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P301-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED SUPPLY - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
P302-R.2	PLUMBING PROPOSED SUPPLY - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
P400-R.2	PLUMBING SANITARY RISER BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P400B-R.2	PLUMBING SANITARY RISER DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P400C-R.2	PLUMBING SANITARY RISER ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P401-R.2	PLUMBING SUPPLY RISER BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P401B-R.2	PLUMBING SUPPLY RISER DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P401C-R.2	PLUMBING SUPPLY RISER ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
P500-R.2	PLUMBING SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023
P600-R.2	PLUMBING DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
<u>FIRE ALARM</u>		
FA001-R.2	FIRE ALARM INDEX SHEET	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA100-R.2	FIRE ALARM DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA100B-R.2	FIRE ALARM DEMOLITION - LOWER LEVEL - DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA101-R.2	FIRE ALARM DEMOLITION - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023

FA102-R.2	FIRE ALARM DEMOLITION - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA200-R.2	FIRE ALARM PROPOSED - LOWER LEVEL BASE SCOPE	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA200B-R.2	FIRE ALARM PROPOSED - LOWER LEVEL - DEDUCT ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA200C-R.2	FIRE ALARM PROPOSED - LOWER LEVEL - ADD ALTERNATE	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA201-R.2	FIRE ALARM PROPOSED - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA202-R.2	FIRE ALARM PROPOSED - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA203-R.2	FIRE ALARM PROPOSED - ATTIC	BP#2 8/28/2023
FA300-R.2	FIRE ALARM RISER & MATRIX	BP#2 8/28/2023

FIRE PROTECTION

FP001-R.2	FIRE PROTECTION INDEX SHEET	BP#2 8/28/2023
FP100-R.2	FIRE PROTECTION PROPOSED - LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
FP101-R.2	FIRE PROTECTION PROPOSED - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
FP102-R.2	FIRE PROTECTION PROPOSED - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
FP103-R.2	FIRE PROTECTION PROPOSED - ATTIC	BP#2 8/28/2023

TELECOM

T-001-R	TELECOM GENERAL NOTES, ABBREVIATIONS & SYMBOLS	BP#2 8/28/2023
TD-100-R	TELECOM DEMOLITION - BASEMENT	BP#2 8/28/2023
TD-101-R	TELECOM DEMOLITION - FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
TD-102-R	TELECOM DEMOLITION - SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
TD-103-R	TELECOM DEMOLITION - SITE	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-100-R.2	TELECOM PROPOSED- LOWER LEVEL	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-101-R	TELECOM PROPOSED- FIRST FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-102-R	TELECOM PROPOSED- SECOND FLOOR	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-103-R	TELECOM PROPOSED- ATTIC	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-104-R	TELECOM PROPOSED- SITE	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-301-R	TELECOM - ENLARGED PLANS	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-401-R	TELECOM - DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-402-R	TELECOM - DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-403-R	TELECOM - DETAILS	BP#2 8/28/2023
T-501-R	TELECOM - DIAGRAMS AND SCHEDULES	BP#2 8/28/2023

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 21 0500
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. The Work of this Section includes:

1. Sleeves without waterstop.
2. Sleeves with waterstop.
3. Stack-sleeve fittings.
4. Sleeve-seal systems.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.
7. Escutcheons.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product, excluding motors which are included in Part 1 of the fire-suppression equipment Sections.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of components.
 - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
1. Motor controllers.
 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

A. Sleeves without Waterstop:

1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron, with plain ends.
2. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
3. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 24 gaugeminimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
4. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
5. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange.
6. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange.

B. Sleeves with Waterstop:

1. Manufacturers
 - a. Linkseal
 - b. Metraflex
2. Description: Manufactured PVC/HDPE or galvanized steel, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

C. Stack-Sleeve Fittings:

1. Manufacturers

- a. Linkseal
- b. Metraflex
- 2. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated, Duco-coated or galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

D. Sleeve-Seal Systems:

- 1. Manufacturers
 - a. Linkseal
 - b. Metraflex
- 2. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - a. Hydrostatic Seal: 20 psigminimum.
 - b. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or Nitrile (Buna-N) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
 - c. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Composite plastic.
 - d. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with ASTM B633 coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

E. Grout:

- 1. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- 2. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- 3. Design Mix: 5000 psi28-day compressive strength.
- 4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

F. Silicone Sealants:

- 1. Silicone Sealant, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2. Silicone Sealant, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 25 , pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
3. Silicone Foam Sealant: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

2.02 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Escutcheon Types:

1. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
2. One-Piece, Stainless Steel Type: With polished stainless steel finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
4. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel or brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

B. Floor Plates:

1. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LOOPS AND SWING CONNECTIONS

- A. Install pipe loops and offsets in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements for expansion and contraction compensation.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES, GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in floors/slabs/walls without sleeve-seal system. Select to maintain fire-resistance of floor/slab/wall.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants that joint sealant manufacturer's literature indicates is appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.

- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange centered across width centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to wooden concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeves.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sleeves and Sleeve Seals:

1. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- a. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- b. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

2. Prepare test and inspection reports.

B. Escutcheons:

- 1. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

3.08 SLEEVES APPLICATION

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:

a. Sleeves with waterstops.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

a. Sleeves with waterstops.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops or stack-sleeve fittings.
4. Interior Walls and Partitions:
 - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

3.09 ESCUTCHEONS APPLICATION

- A. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
 2. Chrome-Plated Piping: One piece, steel, cast brass, or split plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 3. Insulated Piping:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - b. One piece, stainless steel with polished stainless steel finish.
 - c. One piece, cast brass with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - d. One piece, stamped steel or split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 4. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 5. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 6. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

7. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- B. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
 1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 2. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 3. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 4. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 5. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 6. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment room floors.

- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One piece, floor plate.
 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

END OF SECTION 210500

SECTION 21 0523

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
 2. Check valves.
 3. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
 4. NRS gate valves.
 5. Trim and drain valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- D. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
 - 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
 - a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
 - b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
 - 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
 - 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
 - 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
 - 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
 - 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
 - a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
 - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
 - a. Indicator posts.
 - b. Valves.
 - 1) Gate valves.
 - 2) Check valves.
 - a) Single check valves.
 - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
- D. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.
- G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.
- H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

2.02 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Anvil International.
2. Fivalco Inc.
3. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
4. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
5. NIBCO INC.
6. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
7. Victaulic Company.
8. Zurn Industries, LLC.

- B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron epoxy or polyamide coating.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Grooved-end connections.

2.03 CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Anvil International.
2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
3. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
4. Victaulic Company.

- B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.

8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

2.04 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hammond Valve.
 2. Victaulic Company.
 3. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 4. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
 5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
 6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
 9. End Connections: Flanged Grooved or Threaded.

2.05 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 2. NIBCO INC.
 3. Victaulic Company.
 4. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
 5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
 6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
 9. End Connections: Flanged, Grooved or Threaded.

2.06 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of

the following:

- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
- c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- d. NIBCO INC.
- e. Potter Roemer LLC.
- f. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- b. Body Design: Two piece.
- c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
- d. Port size: Full or standard.
- e. Seats: PTFE.
- f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- h. Actuator: Handlever.
- i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
- j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. United Brass Works, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
- c. Ends: Threaded.
- d. Stem: Bronze.
- e. Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. NIBCO INC.
- b. United Brass Works, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- c. Ends: Threaded.

- d. Stem: Bronze.
- e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
- f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
 - 1. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire- suppression standpipes.
 - 2. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire- suppression sprinkler systems.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags.
- H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.
- I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead

of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 0529
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Equipment supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 210516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Fire-Suppression Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
 - 1. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.04 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 - 7. Metallic Coating: No coating.
 - 8. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.
 - 9. Combination Coating: .
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
 - 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 - 7. Metallic Coating: No coating.
 - 8. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

2.05 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi minimum compressive strength.
- B. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- C. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.06 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

210529 - 3

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.07 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.08 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

210529 - 4

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal strut systems.
- D. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.

- c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. MSS SP-58, Type 39 Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. MSS SP-58, Type 40 Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.06 PAINTING

- A. Touchup:
 1. Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

- H. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- L. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 - 3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 - 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

- N. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 0548
VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 3. Open-spring isolators.
 - 4. Housed-spring isolators.
 - 5. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
 - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 7. Spring hangers.
 - 8. Snubbers.
 - 9. Mechanical anchor bolts.
 - 10. Adhesive anchor bolts.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.
 - 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, and wind forces required to select vibration isolators and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Air-Mounting System Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data performed by an independent agency.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-spring mounts and restrained-air-spring mounts to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.02 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
 - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
 - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.03 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.04 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.05 SNUBBERS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.

c. VMC Korfund

B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch-thick resilient cushion.

2.06 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.07 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.03 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- D. Piping Restraints:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
 - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
 - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- E. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- F. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- G. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- H. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- I. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- J. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
 6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 7. Measure isolator deflection.
 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
 9. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 210553

IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Warning tape
4. Pipe labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve-numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: Provide for fire-suppression piping system. Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032 inch stainless steel, 0.025 inch aluminum, 0.032 inch anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
3. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
4. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for

- greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 5. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 6. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
- 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
 - 3. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
 - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.02 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
- D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- F. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs in locations and with content in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.03 WARNING TAPE

- A. Material: Vinyl.
- B. Minimum Thickness: 0.005 inch.
- C. Letter, Pattern, and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Waterproof Adhesive Backing: Suitable for indoor or outdoor use.
- E. Maximum Temperature: 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Width: 2 inches.

2.04 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include the following:
 - 1. Pipe size.
 - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on main distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
 - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.05 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.
 - 2. Stencil Material: Aluminum, brass, or fiberboard.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 5. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

2.06 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.04 inch thick, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass beaded chain.

- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Include valve-tag schedule in operation and maintenance data.

2.07 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption, such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.02 INSTALLATION GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of fire-suppression equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors:
 - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAPE

- A. Warning Tape Color and Pattern: Yellow background with black diagonal stripes.
- B. Install warning tape on pipes and ducts, with cross-designated walkways providing less than 6 ft. of clearance.
- C. Locate tape so as to be readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- C. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- D. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Within 3 ft. of each valve and control device.
 - 2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
 - 3. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- E. Flow- Direction Arrows: Provide arrows to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- F. Fire-Suppression Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Fire-Suppression Pipe Labels: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF VALVE TAGS

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule in the operating and maintenance manual. Include the identification "FSV" on all fire-suppression system valve tags.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below.
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Color: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAGS

A. Warning Tag Color: Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 11 19
FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management"

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WALL-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. Manufacturer:
 - 1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Guardian Fire Equipment
 - 3. Potter Roemer LLC
 - 4. Approved equal.
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Flush, wall mounted.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- E. Body Material: Forged aluminum with powder coat finish.
- F. Connection type: Locking Storz inlet x Female NPT outlet.
- G. Caps: Blind cap with securing wire or chain.

- H. Identification Plate: round, brass, wall type.
- I. Body Style: 30° Angle Pattern.
- J. Number of Inlets: 1.
- K. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to AUTO SPKR.
- L. Inlet Size: NPS 4.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 21 11 19

SECTION 21 1313 WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
 - 2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
 - 3. Specialty valves.
 - 4. Sprinklers.
 - 5. Alarm devices.
 - 6. Pressure gages.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer licensed in Pennsylvania responsible for their preparation.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Domestic water piping.
 - 2. Compressed air piping.
 - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
 - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:

- a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- C. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- G. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:

1. NFPA 13.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer licensed in the state of Pennsylvania, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
1. Fire-hydrant flow test report should indicate the following conditions:
 - a. Flow Test Number
 - b. Date:
 - c. Time:
 - d. Performed by:
 - e. Hydrant #1 Tested:
 - 1) Elevation:
 - 2) Static Pressure:
 - 3) Residual Pressure:
 - f. Hydrant #2 Tested:
 - 1) Flow Rate:
 - 2) Residual Pressure:
 - 3) Outlet Coefficient:
 - 4) Outlet Diameter:
 - g. Hydrant #3 Tested:
 - 1) Flow Rate:
 - 2) Residual Pressure:
 - 3) Outlet Coefficient:
 - 4) Outlet Diameter:
 2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent or 10 psi (whichever is greater), including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - 1) Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - 2) Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - 3) General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - 4) Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
 - a. Light Hazard Areas: 225 sq. ft.
 - b. Ordinary Hazard Areas: 130 sq. ft.
- D. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7.

2.02 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 (DN 125) and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10 (DN 150 to DN 250), plain end.
- B. Schedule 40 black steel pipe (2" & smaller): ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- D. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8-inch-thick EPDM rubber gasket.
 - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
 - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Painted Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.03 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory".
- B. Pressure Rating:
 - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - 2. Standard: UL 1726.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 - 5. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.04 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - 2. Standard: UL 213. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
 - 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
 - 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
 - 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
 - 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
 - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
 - 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory".
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
 - 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

2.05 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - 2. Victaulic Company.
 - 3. Viking Corporation.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory",
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 - 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 - 2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated and bronze.
- F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
 - 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
 - 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- G. Sprinkler Guards:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - b. Victaulic Company.
 - c. Viking Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: UL 199.
 - 3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.06 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
 - b. Notifier.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: UL 464.

3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
4. Size: 8-inch minimum- diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - b. System Sensor.
 - c. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field- adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
 - b. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - c. System Sensor.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

2.07 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
2. AMETEK, Inc.
3. Ashcroft Inc.
4. Brecco Corporation.
5. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

B. Standard: UL 393.

- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection fire protection to water-service entrance piping.

3.03 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- L. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft- metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- M. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- I. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of

both piping systems.

3.05 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

3.06 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.09 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
- B. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger may be the following:
 - 1. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 2. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
 - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright or pendent sprinklers.
 - 2. Sprinklers above baffles and wood grilles: uprights sprinklers.
 - 3. Rooms with Acoustical Ceiling Panel (ACP), GWB and wood ceilings: recessed sprinklers.
 - 4. Cloud Ceiling: Concealed sprinkler with cover plate to match ceiling finish. Head to match angle of ceiling tile.
 - 5. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
 - 1. Recessed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
 - 2. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted cover plate.
 - 3. Upright and Pendent Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.
 - 4. Sidewall sprinklers chrome plated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 211316
DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel pipe and fittings.
2. Copper tube and fittings.
3. Specialty valves.
4. Dry-sprinkler system nitrogen generator with purge/vent.
5. Preaction sprinkler system nitrogen generator with purge/vent.
6. Sprinkler piping specialties.
7. Sprinklers.
8. Alarm devices.
9. Manual control stations.
10. Control panels.
11. Pressure gauges.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.
2. Section 210523 "Fire Protection Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Dry-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Domestic water piping.
 - 2. Compressed air piping.
 - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
 - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- C. Design Data:
 - 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- E. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- #### A. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air or nitrogen. Opening of sprinklers releases compressed air or nitrogen and permits water pressure to open dry-pipe valve. Water then flows into piping and discharges from opened sprinklers.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 13.
- C. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design dry-pipe sprinkler systems.
 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records indicate the following conditions:
 - a. Date: N/A.
 - b. Time: N/A
 - c. Performed by: N/A.
 - d. Location of Residual Fire Hydrant R: N/A.

- e. Location of Flow Fire Hydrant F: N/A.
- f. Static Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: N/A.
- g. Measured Flow at Flow Fire Hydrant F: N/A.
- h. Residual Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: N/A.

E. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - a. Attics: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
 - b. Churches: Light Hazard.
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
4. Maximum protection area per sprinkler according to UL listing.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
 - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
 - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft..
 - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
 - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
 - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.
 - c. Extra-Hazard Occupancies: 500 gpm for 90 to 120 minutes.

F. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

2.03 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E,. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M; ASTM A795/A795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

- D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Couplings: ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- F. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- I. Plain-End-Pipe Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron body with retainer lugs that require one-quarter turn or screwed retainer pin to secure pipe in fitting.
- J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
 - 2. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.04 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L [**ASTM B88, Type M**].
- B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18 pressure fittings.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22 pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick.
- E. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Copper-Tube, Mechanically Formed Tee Fitting: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
 - 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F2014.
- H. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
 - 1. Standard: UL 213.
 - 2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B75 copper tube or ASTM B584 bronze castings.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper tube dimensions; rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting EPDM-rubber gasket rated for minimum 180 deg F for use with ferrous housing and steel bolts and nuts; 300 psig minimum CWP pressure rating.
- I. Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings: Cast-brass, cast-bronze, or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.

2. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.05 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Dry-Pipe Valves:
 1. Standard: UL 260.
 2. Design: Differential-pressure type.
 3. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 4. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
 - a. Standard: UL 260.
 - b. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
 - c. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and **[175-psig]** **[300-psig]** outlet pressure.
 5. Air Compressor:
 - a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - 1) Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
 - c. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
 - d. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
 6. Air Compressor:
 - a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - 1) Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
 - c. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
 - d. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.

- G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1726.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 - 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.06 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. General Requirements for Dry-Pipe System Fittings: UL listed for dry-pipe service.
- B. Branch Outlet Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL 213.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
 - 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
 - 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
 - 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
 - 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- C. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
 - 1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- D. Branch Line Testers:
 - 1. Standard: UL 199.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Brass.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 5. Inlet: Threaded.
 - 6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
 - 7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- E. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- F. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1474.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM O-ring seals.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 5. Length: Adjustable.
 - 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

- G. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1474.
 - 2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.07 SPRINKLERS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250-psig minimum.
- E. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 - 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 - 2. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
 - 3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated.
- G. Special Coatings: Wax.
- H. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
 - 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
 - 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- I. Sprinkler Guards:
 - 1. Standard: UL 199.
 - 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.08 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
 - 1. Standard: UL 753.
 - 2. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
 - 3. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
 - 4. Size: 10-inch diameter.
 - 5. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
 - 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 7. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

- C. Electrically Operated Alarm Notification Appliances:
1. Electric Bell:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 - c. Size: 8-inch minimum 10-inch diameter.
 - d. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, 1 phase.
 - e. Finish: Red-enamel or polyester powder-coat factory finish, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox.
 2. Strobe/Horn:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Tone: Selectable, steady, Temporal-3 (T-3) in accordance with ISO 8201 and ANSI/ASA S3.41, 2400 Hz, electromechanical, broadband.
 - c. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Effective Intensity: 110 cd.
 - e. Finish: Red, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox. White letters on housing identifying device as for "Fire."
 - f. Sign, Integrated: Mount between backbox and strobe/horn with text visible on both sides, above and below strobe/horn. Housing to be shaped to cover surface-mounted weatherproof backbox. Sign is to consist of white lettering on red plastic identifying it as a "Sprinkler Fire Alarm" and instructing viewers to call 911, police, or fire department.
- D. Pressure Switches - Water-Flow Alarm Detection:
1. Standard: UL 346.
 2. Type: Electrically supervised, pressure-activated water-flow switch.
 3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 4. Design Operation: Rising pressure to 6 psi, plus or minus 2 psi signals water flow.
 5. Adjustability: Each switch is to be independently adjustable.
 6. Wire Separation: Pressure switch to provide separation of wiring to each switch connection to allow for low and high volume connections to comply with NFPA 70 Article 760 requirements.
- E. Pressure Switches - Low/High Air Pressure Supervisory:
1. Standard: UL 346.
 2. Type: Electrically supervised pressure supervisory switch.
 3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 4. Design Operation: Detects increase and/or decrease from normal supervisory air pressure.
 5. Adjustability: Each switch is to be independently adjustable.
 6. Wire Separation: Pressure switch shall provide for separation of wiring to each switch connection to allow for low and high voltage connections to comply with NFPA 70 Article 760 requirements.
- F. Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. General Requirements for Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Standard: UL 346.
 - b. Type: Electrically supervised.
 - c. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 - d. Wire Terminal Designations: Indicates normal switch position when switch is properly installed on the valve and valve is fully open.

2. Requirements for OS&Y Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Components: One or two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 and NEMA 6P enclosures suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
 - c. Visual Switch Indication: Indicates device is properly installed and OS&Y valve is fully open.
 - d. Mounting Hardware: Mounting bracket to grip valve yoke and prevent movement of switch assembly on OS&Y valve.
 - e. Trip Rod Length: Adjustable.

3. Requirements for PIV and Butterfly Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 and NEMA 6P enclosures suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
 - c. Mounting Hardware: Removable nipple.
 - d. Trip Rod Length: Adjustable.

4. Requirements for Ball Valve Supervisory Switch:
 - a. Components: One single-pole, double-throw switch.
 - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 enclosure suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
 - c. Mounting Hardware: Suitable for mounting directly to pipe, ball valves or backflow preventers sized from up to NPS 2.

2.09 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.010 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned type control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application
- B. Manual Control Stations, Electric Operation: Metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

- C. Manual Control Stations, Hydraulic Operation: With union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- D. Panels Components:
 - 1. Power supply.
 - 2. Battery charger.
 - 3. Standby batteries.
 - 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 - 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 - 6. Lamp test facility.
 - 7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
 - 8. Rectifier.

2.011 PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- C. Pressure Gauge Range: 0 to 300 psig.
- D. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- E. Air System Piping Gauge: Include "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water service.

3.03 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Connect compressed-air supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- L. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
 - 1. Pressure gauges and controls.
 - 2. Electrical power system.
 - 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.

- M. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- N. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- O. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- P. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- Q. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air compressors.
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.05 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- J. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- K. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- M. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- N. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install dry-pipe valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 - a. Install air compressor and compressed-air-supply piping.
 - b. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range; and 175-psig maximum inlet pressure.
 - c. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.09 NITROGEN-GENERATION, CORROSION-MITIGATION SYSTEM

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Locate purge vent/valve in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- C. Route alarm signals in code-approved electrical conduit from nitrogen generator system control panel to the supervisory circuit of BAS.

3.010 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Start and run air compressors.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.011 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.012 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.013 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.
- D. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 5. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 6. NPS 2, Type L, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- E. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 3. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 4. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 5. Type L, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- F. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and NPS 6, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
4. Type L, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

3.014 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Dry pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
3. Wall Mounting: Dry sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, dry pendent sprinklers; and dry sidewall sprinklers as indicated.
5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
4. Upright Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211316

SECTION 22 0500
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Alignment guides and anchors.
2. Sleeves without waterstop.
3. Sleeves with waterstop.
4. Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Sleeve-seal systems.
6. Grout.
7. Silicone sealants.
8. Escutcheons.
9. Thermometers, liquid in glass, lead free.
10. Thermowells, lead free.
11. Pressure gauges, dial type, lead free.
12. Gauge attachments, lead free.
13. Test plugs, lead free.
14. Test-plug kits, lead free.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product, excluding motors which are included in Part 1 of the plumbing equipment Sections.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components, and finishes.
 - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

- B. Delegated Design Submittals: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.

2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of gauge to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with 2021 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

1.07 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 1. Motor controllers.
 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water loops for plumbing piping intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Compatibility: Provide products suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

- C. Capability: Provide products and installations to accommodate maximum axial movement as scheduled or indicated on Drawings.

2.02 EXPANSION LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

A. Performance Requirements:

1. Compatibility: Provide products suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
2. Capability: Provide products and installations that will accommodate maximum axial movement as scheduled or indicated on Drawings.

B. Alignment Guides and Anchors:

1. Alignment Guides:

- a. Source Limitations: Obtain alignment guides from single manufacturer.
- b. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe. Provide dielectric spacer for use with copper tubing/piping.

2. Anchor Materials:

- a. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.
- b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A183, steel hex head.
- c. Washers: ASTM F844, steel, plain, flat washers.
- d. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - 1) Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon or stainless steel.
 - 2) Expansion Plug: zinc-coated carbon or stainless steel.
 - 3) Washer and Nut: zinc-coated carbon or stainless steel.
- e. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - 1) Bonding Material: ASTM C881/C881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - 2) Stud: ASTM A307, stainless steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3) Washer and Nut: Stainless steel.

2.03 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

A. Sleeves without Waterstop:

1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron, with plain ends.

2. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
3. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 24 gauge minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
4. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
5. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange.
6. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange.

B. Sleeves with Waterstop:

1. Manufacturers
 - a. Linkseal
 - b. Metraflex
2. Description: Manufactured PVC/HDPE or galvanized steel, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

C. Stack-Sleeve Fittings:

1. Manufacturers
 - a. Linkseal
 - b. Metraflex
2. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated, Duco-coated or galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

D. Sleeve-Seal Systems:

1. Manufacturers
 - a. Linkseal
 - b. Metraflex
2. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - a. Hydrostatic Seal: 20 psig minimum.
 - b. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or Nitrile (Buna-N) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.

- c. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Composite plastic.
- d. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with ASTM B633 coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

E. Grout:

- 1. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- 2. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- 3. Design Mix: 5000 psi 28-day compressive strength.
- 4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

F. Silicone Sealants:

- 1. Silicone Sealant, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- 2. Silicone Sealant, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 25 , pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
- 3. Silicone Foam Sealant: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

2.04 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Escutcheon Types:

- 1. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- 2. One-Piece, Stainless Steel Type: With polished stainless steel finish.

3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
4. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel or brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

B. Floor Plates:

1. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

2.05 METERS AND GAUGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

A. Thermometers, Liquid in Glass, Lead Free - Metal Case, Compact Style:

1. Source Limitations: Provide liquid-in-glass, lead-free, metal-case, compact-style thermometers by single manufacturer.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum ; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle or Straight unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid; mercury free.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanent scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or lead-free brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 or ASME B1.20.1 screw threads to fit thermowell.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of span or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of span.

B. Thermowells, Lead Free:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: Lead-free copper .
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Type 316 stainless steel.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, or as required to match threaded opening in pipe.
7. Internal Threads: Size and thread type as required to match thermometer mounting threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length to extend to center of pipe].

10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing. Extension is to be of sufficient length to extend beyond finished insulation surface.
 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
 12. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin .
- C. Pressure Gauges, Dial Type, Lead Free - Direct Mounted, Metal Case:
1. Source Limitations: Provide dial-type, lead-free, direct-mounted, metal-case pressure gauges from single manufacturer.
 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 3. Case: Liquid-filled or Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Lead-free Bourdon tube.
 5. Pressure Connection: Lead-free brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanent scale markings graduated in psi .
 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 9. Window: plastic.
 10. Ring: Metal.
 11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of span.
- D. Gauge Attachments, Lead Free:
1. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, lead-free brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston -type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- E. Test Plugs, Lead Free:
1. Source Limitations: Provide lead-free test plugs from single manufacturer.
 2. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 3. Body: Lead-free brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
 4. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 5. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F .
 6. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber.
- F. Test-Plug Kits, Lead Free:
1. Source Limitations: Provide lead-free test-plug kits from single manufacturer.
 2. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gauge and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gauge, and adapter probes are to be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
 3. Low-Range Thermometer, Lead Free: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range is to be at least 25 to 150 deg F .
 4. Pressure Gauge, Lead Free: Small, lead-free Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range is to be at least 0 to 200 psig .
 5. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF EXPANSION JOINTS, GENERAL

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Install metal-bellows expansion joints in accordance with EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- B. Install rubber packless expansion joints in accordance with FSA-PSJ-703.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion loops. Coordinate first paragraph below with structural Drawings if welding is included in structural work.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-58, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTIONS

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.

- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES, GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in floors/slabs/walls without sleeve-seal system. Select to maintain fire-resistance of floor/slab/wall.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants that joint sealant manufacturer's literature indicates is appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.07 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange centered across width centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to wooden concrete forms.
- D. Using [grout] [or] [silicone sealant], seal space around outside of sleeves.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.09 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.010 INSTALLATION OF METERS AND GAUGES

- A. Install thermometer with thermowell at each required thermometer location.
- B. Install thermowells in vertical position in piping tees.
- C. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- D. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- E. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- F. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- G. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gauges in piping tees with pressure gauge located on pipe at most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gauges on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gauge for fluids.
- K. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- L. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
 - 5. Outlet side of hot-water-balancing valve.
 - 6. Each main hot-water-recirculating line return pipe.
- M. Install pressure gauges in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.

2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.011 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gauges adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gauges, machines, and equipment.

3.012 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gauges to proper angle for best visibility.

3.013 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sleeves and Sleeve Seals:
 1. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - a. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - b. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 2. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Escutcheons:
 1. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

3.014 SLEEVES APPLICATION

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

- a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops or stack-sleeve fittings.
- 4. Interior Walls and Partitions:
 - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

3.015 ESCUTCHEONS APPLICATION

- A. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
 - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
 - 2. Chrome-Plated Piping: One piece, steel, cast brass, or split plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - 3. Insulated Piping:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - 4. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - 5. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - 6. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

7. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

B. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:

1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
2. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
3. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
4. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
5. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
6. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One piece, floor plate.
2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

3.016 THERMOMETER, LEAD FREE, APPLICATION

- A. Provide thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater.
- B. Thermometer stems are to be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.017 PRESSURE-GAUGE APPLICATION

- A. Provide pressure gauges at discharge of each water service into building. Retain one or more of three subparagraphs below. If retaining more than one type of pressure gauge, indicate location of each on Drawings.

B. Provide pressure gauges at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 22 0518
ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor Plates

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Bare Piping split-casting at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 22 0523
GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following general-duty valves:
 - 1. Copper-alloy ball valves.
 - 2. Ferrous-alloy ball valves.

- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and charts.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.

4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

1.06 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal.

2.02 VALVES, GENERAL

- A. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- B. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Valve Actuators:
 1. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller, except plug valves.
 2. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug head.

- D. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.
- E. Valve Flanges: ASME B16.1 for cast-iron valves, ASME B16.5 for steel valves, and ASME B16.24 for bronze valves.
- F. Valve Grooved Ends: AWWA C606.
 - 1. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - a. Caution: Use solder with melting point below 840 deg F for angle, check, gate, and globe valves; below 421 deg F for ball valves.
 - 2. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.03 BALL VALVES

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. Apollo
 - c. Watts
- B. Ball valves 2" and smaller: On "L" copper tubing used for water systems, valves shall be regular port two piece, lead free, Bronze ball valve. Watts. #LFB6080G2 bronze body, stainless steel ball, teflon seats and stuffing box ring, lever handle, solder ends.

2.04 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine piping system for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- C. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

2.05 VALVE INSTALLATION

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2
220523 - 3

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

2.06 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with keyed coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

2.07 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.
- B. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, or gate valves.
 - 2. Throttling Service: Globe valves.
- C. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 22 0529
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Refer to Architectural Documents for information and direction relating to “under slab grid system” that is provided for hanging of plumbing, mechanical, electrical piping, conduits, ducts, etc.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
Fastener systems.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel

2.02 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.03 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- F. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- G. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- H. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- I. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

J. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.02 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches

3.04 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.05 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 5. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.

8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 3. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 4. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 5. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel saddles and shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 6. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 7. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 8. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 22 0553
IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Warning signs and labels.
 - 2. Pipe labels.
 - 3. Stencils.
 - 4. Valve tags.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Valve numbering scheme.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide vinyl cloth identification bands, as manufactured by the William K. Brady Company, or "SNAP-A-ROUND" identification bands as manufactured by Seton Name Plate Corporation, or other acceptable manufacturers on all piping. Bands shall not be installed on exposed piping until final painting of the piping has been completed. Band shall indicate the piping service and the direction of flow in each pipe.

- B. Install bands on each side of each partition, at each valve, at each change in direction, but in no case shall the bands be more than 25 feet apart on horizontal piping.
- C. On vertical piping, the bands shall be located at each floor, at a height of approximately 5'-0" above the floor.
- D. Markers or bands shall have background colors similar to ANSI A-13.1 color code and OSHA safety color regulation. In lieu of bands on concealed piping, the piping may, except where contrary to local laws, be painted with 6" bands around the pipe.

2.12 CHARTS AND TAGS

- A. Install on each valve a brass tag giving the number of that particular valve and the words "Hot," "Cold," "Gas," or "Gas" thereon. Tags shall be stamped to indicate piping system and shall be 2" diameter with white number 1/2" high and the letters 1/4" high. They shall be attached with a heavy brass "S" hook and a piece of brass window sash chain.
- B. Install where directed by the Architect a chart and diagram giving the location and function of each numbered main and riser valve. The chart shall be glass covered in a proper size frame. Valve charts shall be submitted for review prior to framing.
- C. Furnish three copies of valve schedule in loose leaf form with acetate covers. Schedule shall be divided into systems and each valve numbered within the systems shall be listed therein and the specific use shall be described. Furnish a key plan for each floor showing the valve locations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surface of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 22 0719
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic hot -water return piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Fiber Glass Pipe Insulation: High performance fiber glass, rigid, one –piece insulation, ASJ SSL (All Service Jacket with Self-Sealing Lap Closure System).
 - 1. All referenced manufactures on the construction drawings are to establish a minimum acceptable level of quality and is not intended to prevent submission of equivalent equipment or other materials. Refer to Pipe Insulation Schedule on drawing P0.1.
 - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok HP
 - b. Approved Equal.

2.02 PVC INSULATED FITTING COVERS

- A. PVC Insulated Fitting Covers: High-impact, gloss white, UV-resistant, polyvinyl chloride.
 - 1. All referenced manufactures on the construction drawings are to establish a minimum acceptable level of quality and is not intended to prevent submission of equivalent equipment or other materials.
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston 2000 PVC
 - b. Approved Equal.

2.03 TAPES

- A. PVC Tape: Flexible polyvinyl chloride film adhesive tape
 - 1. All referenced manufactures on the construction drawings are to establish a minimum acceptable level of quality and is not intended to prevent submission of equivalent equipment or other materials.
 - a. Johns Manville; PVC “Z” tape.
 - b. Approved Equal.
 - 2. Width: 2 inches (51 mm).
 - 3. Thickness: 10 mils (0.25 mm).
 - 4. Adhesion: 30 ounces force/inch (0.033 N/mm) in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 200 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 27 lbf/inch (4.7 N/mm) in width.

2.04 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. McGuire Manufacturing.
 - b. Plumberex.
 - c. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to two locations of straight pipe, two locations of fittings,
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.08 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified in Domestic Water Piping Notes on drawing P02. For each pipe size range Piping insulation schedules in first three articles below specify commonly used insulation materials and thicknesses by pipe size range for each service. LEED Prerequisite EA 2 requires that pipe insulation thickness comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 table titled "Minimum Pipe Insulation Thickness." Not all materials and thicknesses may be suitable for a specific project. Revise to suit Project after considering all parameters that impact selection. Do not duplicate requirements inserted in "Insulation Materials" Article. See Evaluations for more information and guidance.

3.09 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Hot & Cold Water:
 - a. Cellular Glass; 1" inch thick: pipe 1/2" TO 2" inches.
 - b. Cellular Glass; 1 1/2" inch thick: Pipe 2 1/2" to 4" inches.
- B. Domestic Hot Water Return:
 - a. Cellular Glass; 1/2" inch thick: pipe 1/2" TO 1 1/2" inches.

3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 22 1116
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Domestic water piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following products:
 - 1. Specialty valves.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Flexible connectors.
- B. Coordination Drawings: For piping in congested areas, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Domestic water piping.
 - 2. Gas piping.
- C. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L.

1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
5. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:

- 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
- 2) NIBCO INC.
- 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.

- b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

- c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

- 1) NVent LLC.

6. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:

- 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc.

- b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104.

7. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.

- a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.03 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- C. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- F. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- H. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- L. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping.
- M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

- N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- Q. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

3.02 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- E. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.03 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 3 and smaller. gate valves for piping NPS 4 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
 - 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

3.04 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.05 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

3.06 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.
- C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch).

- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.08 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.09 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
 - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.

- b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:
1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, and hose bibbs.
 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.13 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Aboveground domestic water piping, shall be::
 - Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.14 VALVE SCHEDULE

- 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 3 and smaller. Use, gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 4 and larger.
- 2. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
- 3. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 22 1119
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Balancing valves.
 - 4. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
 - 5. Hose bibbs.
 - 6. Drain valves.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers <Insert drawing designation if any>:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 4. Body: Bronze.
 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 6. Finish: Rough bronze Chrome plated.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated Rough bronze.

2.02 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers >:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1032.
 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 5. Body: Stainless steel.
 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

2.03 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. Red-White Valve Corp.
 2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
 3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
 4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
 5. Body: Copper alloy.
 6. Port: Standard or full port.
 7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
 9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
 10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.04 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

- A. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - c. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Lawler Manufacturing
 2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled water tempering valve.
 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
 5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.

6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 120 degree
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 2 GPM

B. Mixing valve shall be Lawler series 310 or equal

2.05 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Chicago
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
5. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
6. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig
8. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
9. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
11. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
12. Include wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.
Size: NPS 3/4

B. Hose Bibb shall be similar to Chicago 387-E27CP

2.06 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
- F. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 3. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 4. Primary water tempering valves.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:

1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 22 1316
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water
 - 2. SUBMITTALS
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
 - 1. For Manufacturer of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings: Member of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI).
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
 - 1. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI) and NSF.
- C. Cast iron pipe and fittings shall be certified by NSF, subject to CISPI quality control program and complying with International Plumbing Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the specified product, or a comparable product by one of the manufacturers listed.

2.02 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.03 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74 Service class or CISPI 301
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Co.; "Charlotte Service" or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc
- B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: ASTM C 1540, with stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Co.; "Charlotte Service" or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - 3. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 4. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- N. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- O. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.02 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

3.03 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - Longer Than 100 Feet MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 5. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.

2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.07 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.08 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping be the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- B. Aboveground, vent piping shall be any of the following:

1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [CISPI] hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 22 1319
SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Floor drains
 - 3. Sanitary Indirect Waste Drains
- B. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

1.04 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Jay R Smith
 - 2. Wade
 - 3. Mifab

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CLEANOUTS

- A. Cleanouts in waterproofed floors shall be made accessible through a modified, J. R. Smith 4313, Wade W-8190, or Zurn ZN 1455-4C with flashing clamp and 6 lb. lead flashing. Flashing shall be extended at least 12" beyond drain body in all directions. Cover of cleanout shall be nickel bronze or recessed to receive asphalt tiles, Zurn ZN 1455-5C.

- B. Cleanouts behind walls shall be extended to finished wall and closed gas tight with bronze plug and stainless steel cover similar to J. R. Smith 4422 or 4472, Wade W-8450-R or W-8470-R, or Zurn ZN 1440-1 in cast iron pipe or Fig. ZN 1460-8 in steel pipe. Cleanout plugs shall be made up with a graphite lubricant or teflon tape to insure easy removal. No pipe compound shall be used on cleanouts. Cleanout covers shall have no lettering on the finished surface.

2.02 FLOOR DRAINS

Type A: (Toilet Room) shall be cast iron with double drainage flange and seepage openings, bottom outlet connection, flashing clamp device, and 6" round adjustable strainer of high polished brass or bronze. Individual shower compartments use a 6" round adjustable strainer of high polished nickel bronze. Drains shall be Smith 2005Y-A, or equal MIFAB F1000C.

Type B: Kitchen Floor Sink Funnel Drain : Zurn Z326-AR-DB, 7" diameter indirect waste funnel acid resisting epoxy coated cast iron with bottom dome strainer.

Type C: (Kitchen Floor Drain) shall be Smith 3141Y -Drain shall be cast-iron with acid resistant coated interior and exterior, bottom outlet, flashing collar, adjustable nickel bronze top and full bar grate with sediment bucket.

Type D: (Kitchen Sanitary Indirect Waste Drain). Drain shall consist of a cast iron body with white acid –resisting coating and a PVC anti splash dome strainer. Drain shall be Zurn No-Hub type Model FD2378 Series 8"x8" x6" deep.

2.03 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Deep-Seal Traps

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.

B. Air-Gap Fittings

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

C. Sleeve Flashing Device

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top

- of fitting that will extend 1 inch 2 inches above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
 1. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 2. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- F. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- H. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.02 TESTS

- A. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in the sanitary piping . If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.03 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 22 3400
FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Commercial, power condensing, gas-fired, water heaters.
 - 2. Water heater accessories.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7, "Service Water Heating."
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial gas-fired water heater from manufacturer.
- C. Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listing: The water heater will be listed ETL listed to UL 795 or ANSI Z21.10.3 -2004/CSA 4.3-2004 "Gas Water Heaters"
- B. ASME Compliance: Water heater shall bear the ASME HLW stamp and be National Board listed
- C. The water heater will operate at a minimum 95% thermal efficiency at full firing rate when tested to the ANSI Z21.10.3 thermal efficiency test protocol.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- F. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- G. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.07 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
- a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
3. Storage Tank: 15-year coverage (8 years full, 7 additional years of discounted replacement) for manufacturing or material defects, leaks, production of rusty or discolored water and/or chloride stress corrosion cracking.
4. The heater shall have a first year service policy, which shall cover labor and freight costs under certain conditions for warranty covered services.
5. Burner and all heater parts: two years

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. The heater shall have a first year service policy, which shall cover labor and freight costs under certain conditions for warranty covered services. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Power Condensing Domestic-Water Heaters:
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. PVI Industries, LLC.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 - 3. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 99.1% Ultra High Efficiency.
 - 4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
- B. The water heater will be a vertical fire tube design that is constructed and stamped in accordance with Section IV, Part HLW of the ASME code. Water heater will be National Board Registered for a working pressure of 150 psi and will be pressure tested at 1-1/2 times working pressure.
- C. Water heater will be a three-pass configuration
- D. Tank and fire tubes will be unlined. Lined or plated water heaters will not be acceptable
- E. Tank and fire tubes will be constructed from phase-balanced austenitic and ferritic duplex steel with a chemical structure containing a minimum of 21% chromium to prevent corrosion and mill certified per ASTM A 923 Methods A to ensure that the product is free of detrimental chemical precipitation that affects corrosion resistance. The material selected shall be tested and certified to pass stress chloride cracking test protocols as defined in ISO 3651-2 and ASTM G123 - 00(2005) "Standard Test Method for Evaluating Stress-Corrosion Cracking of Stainless Alloys with Different Nickel Content in Boiling Acidified Sodium Chloride Solution."

- F. Waterside surfaces shall be welded internally utilizing joint designs to minimize volume of weld deposit and heat input. All heat affected zones (HAZ) shall be processed after welding to ensure the HAZ corrosion resistance is consistent with the mill condition base metal chemical composition. Weld procedures (amperage, volts, welding speed, filler metals and shielding gases) utilized shall result in a narrow range of austenite-ferrite microstructure content consistent with phase balanced objectives for welds, HAZ and the base metal.
- G. All internal and external tank surfaces shall undergo full immersion passivation and pickling processing to meet critical temperature, duration and chemical concentration controls required to complete corrosion resistance restoration of pressure vessel surfaces. Other passivation and pickling methods are not accepted. Immersion passivation and pickling certification documents are required and shall be provided with each product.
- H. Materials shall meet ASME Section II material requirements and be accepted by NSF 61 for municipal potable water systems. Storage tank materials shall contain more than 80% post-consumer recycled materials and be 100% recyclable.
- I. Water contacting tank surfaces will be non-porous and exhibit 0% water absorption.
- J. All tank connections/fittings will be non-ferrous.
- K. Finished vessel will not require sacrificial anode rods and none will be used. Water heaters or sidearm storage tanks that employ anode rods of any type will not be acceptable.
- L. Combustion will be provided by a premix, fan-assisted surface burner with a gas train meeting ANSI and FM requirements for the input specified.
- M. Burner will be stainless steel covered with stainless steel mesh
- N. Burner will employ non-linkage modulation utilizing only a VFD drive to vary gas and air.
- O. Burner NOx emissions will be less than 20 ppm when corrected to 3% oxygen.
- P. Water heater will be a category IV, condensing appliance and vent through CPVC
- Q. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - 1. Capacity: 250 gal.
 - 2. Recovery: 2085 gph at 140 deg F temperature rise.
 - 3. Fuel Gas Input: 1,800,000 Btu/h.
 - 4. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: 120
 - b. Phase: Single
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 - 5. Vent Diameter: 8" based on intake and exhaust

2.02 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Water Compression Tanks:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL Inc.
 - b. Flexcon Industries.
 - c. State Industries.
 2. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20) with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1
- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
- E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and [calibrated] [memory-stop] balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.
1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- G. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include pressure rating as required to match gas supply.
- H. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
- I. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- J. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.

1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

K. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete, Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install gas-fired, Water heaters according to NFPA 54.
 - 1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
 - 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 - 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.

4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Gas Piping."
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- I. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- J. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for fuel-oil piping specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- C. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
- D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 22 4000 PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions", "Special Requirements" and "General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
 - 1. Faucets for lavatories.
 - 2. Flushometers.
 - 3. Toilet seats.
 - 4. Fixture supports.
 - 5. Water closets.
 - 6. Lavatories.
 - 7. Urinals.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
- D. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
- E. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- F. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

- H. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. All Submittals shall be coordinated and scheduled in accordance with the DGS bidding documents.
- B. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act" for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
 - 1. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 - 2. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory faucets:
 - 1. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 2. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 3. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
 - 4. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 5. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 - 6. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 7. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:

1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
 3. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
 2. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
 3. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
 4. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 5. Plastic Shower Receptors: ANSI Z124.2.
 6. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
 7. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
 - b. Faulty operation of flushometers, faucets, fixtures and valves.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 2. Warranty Period for Commercial Applications: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 LAVATORY FAUCETS

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Chicago Faucets
 - b. T&S Brass and Bronze Works
 - c. Approved Equal.

2.02 FLUSHOMETERS

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company

- b. Zurn Industries
- c. Approved Equal.

2.03 TOILET SEATS

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Church #9500C, open front without cover, white in color.
 - b. Olsonite #95, open front without cover, white in color.
 - c. Approved Equal.

2.04 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. TRUEBRO, Inc.
 - c. Approved Equal.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,

C. See Editing Instruction No. 1 in the Evaluations for cautions about naming manufacturers and products. Retain one of first two subparagraphs and list of manufacturers below. See Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. TRUEBRO, Inc.
 - b. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Approved Equal
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

2.05 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

A. Lavatory Supports

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Co.
 - c. Approved equal

B. Urinal Supports

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Co.
 - c. Approved equal

2.06 WATER CLOSETS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. American Standard
 - b. Eljer.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Approved Equal.
- B. Description wall mounting, blow out wall hung top spud.

- a. Type: Siphon jet: floor mounted top spud
- b. Strainer or trapway: open trapway
- c. Design consumption; 1.28 gpf
- d. Color: white
- e. Supply Spud size: 1 ½ HPS
- f. Outlet size: 4"
- g. Drain piping: 4"
- h. Flushometer: See dwg. P001
- i. Fixture support: See dwg. P001

2.07 LAVATORIES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. American Standard
 - b. Ekay
 - c. Just Manufacturing Co.
 - d. Approved Equal.

B. Description wall mounting

- a. Type: wall mounted
- b. Strainer or trapway: open trapway
- c. Design consumption: .35 GPM
- d. Color: white
- e. Spud size: ½" HPS
- f. Outlet size: 1 ¼"
- g. Drain piping: 1 ¼"
- h. Flushometer: See dwg. P001
- i. Fixture support: See dwg. P001

2.08 MOP SINK

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:

- a. Elkay
- b. Just Manufacturing Co.
- c. Approved Equal.

2.09 URINALS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:

- a. American Standard
- b. Eljer.
- c. Kohler Co.
- d. Approved Equal.

B. Description Wall mounting, bottom-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.

- a. Type: Washout.
- b. Strainer or Trapway: Open trapway.
- c. Design Consumption: .05 OGL/flush (GPF).
- d. Color: White.
- e. Supply Spud Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) (back spud).
- f. Outlet Size: NPS 2.
- g. Drain Piping: NPS 2.
- h. Flushometer: See dwg. P001
- i. Fixture Support: See dwg. P001

2.10 ELECTRIC WATER COOLER

A. Available manufacturers Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:

- a. Elkay
 - b. Haws
 - c. Approved equal
- B. Description wall mounting
- a. AOA bottle filling station
 - b. Strainer or trapway: Open trapway
 - c. Design Consumption: Chill capacity 8.GPH
 - d. Color: 5.5
 - e. Supply size: 1/2"
 - f. Outlet size: 1 1/4" HPS
 - g. Drain piping: HPS 1 1/4"
 - h. Flushometer: See dwg. P001
 - i. Fixture support: See dwg. P001

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- C. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- D. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture.
- F. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.

- G. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- H. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- I. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- J. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- K. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- M. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.03 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- C. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- D. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Professional.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 23 05 00
BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Mechanical demolition.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.

2.02 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.03 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.04 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.
 - a. Calpico, Inc.

- b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- 1. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.05 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- 1. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified or approved equal.
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.06 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.07 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With exposed-rivet hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.08 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and spring clips.

- c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - k. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. PVC Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.02 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.04 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.05 PAINTING

- A. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.06 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.

2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 3 Section " Cast-in-Place Concrete (Limited Applications)."

3.07 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.08 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230513
COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Variable speed drives
 - 3. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 4. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 5. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F-
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T

2.04 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 23 0516
EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Alignment guides and anchors.
 - 2. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.02 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides

- 1. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

- 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
- 3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
- 4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
- 5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.

- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.02 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 23 0519
METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
3. Duct thermometer mounting brackets.
4. Thermowells.
5. Dial-type pressure gages.
6. Gage attachments.
7. Test plugs.
8. Orifice flowmeters.
9. Vortex-shedding flowmeters.
10. Impeller-turbine, thermal-energy meters.
11. Ultrasonic, thermal-energy meters.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - 2. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 3. Weksler
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.02 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - c. Weksler
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 3. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
 - 7. Window: Glass or plastic.

8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.03 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.04 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.05 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - d. Weiss Instruments, Inc. Standard:
 2. ASME B40.100.
 3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.

6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass or plastic.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.06 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.07 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F-
- F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.08 FLOWMETERS

- A. Orifice Flowmeters:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Emerson Process Management, Rosemount, Inc.
 - c. Spirax Sarco
 2. Description: Flowmeter with sensor, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.

3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
4. Sensor: Wafer-orifice-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation between pipe flanges.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for water.
 - b. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
5. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected sensor and having 6-inch-diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to sensor.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
6. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected sensor and having two 12-foot hoses, with carrying case.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
7. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
8. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor and indicator.
9. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

B. Vortex-Shedding Flowmeters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Emerson Process Management, Rosemount, Inc.
 - c. Spirax Sarco
2. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
4. Sensor: Inline type; for installing between pipe flanges and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
 - a. Design: Flow obstruction device, vortex-measurement type for steam.
 - b. Construction: Stainless-steel body, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 1000 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 500 deg F.
 - e. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power operation.
5. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25 percent for liquids and 0.75 percent for gases.
7. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

2.09 THERMAL-ENERGY METERS

A. Impeller-Turbine, Thermal-Energy Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - b. Emerson Process Management, Rosemount, Inc.
 - c. Spirax Sarco
2. Description: System with strainer, flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
3. Flow Sensor: Impeller turbine with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter; for installing in piping.
 - a. Design: Total thermal-energy measurement.
 - b. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Minimum Temperature Range: 40 to 350 deg F.
4. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type transducer.
5. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack; for wall mounting.
 - a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
 - b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
7. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
8. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
9. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- L. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- U. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
 - 3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
 - 7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
- D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.04 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be the following:
 - 1. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- E. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- F. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
- G. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.05 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.
- D. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.
- E. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 150 deg F.

3.06 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each boiler shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- D. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- E. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with-EPDM-self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.07 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Low Pressure Steam Piping: 0 to 30 psi.
- C. Scale Range for High Pressure Steam Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

3.08 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Orifice type.
- B. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Orifice type.
- C. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Orifice type.
- D. Flowmeters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Vortex-shedding type.

3.09 THERMAL-ENERGY METER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermal-Energy Meters for Chilled-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.
- B. Thermal-Energy Meters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.

C. Thermal-Energy Meters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Impeller-turbine type.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTION 23 0525
VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - a. Bronze gate valves.
 - b. Bronze globe valves.
 - c. Bronze swing check valves.
 - d. Iron swing check valves.
 - e. Bronze ball valves.
 - f. Cast iron plug valves.
 - g. Iron butterfly valves.
 - h. Spring loaded lift disc check valves.
 - i. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - j. Safety valves.
 - k. Automatic flow control valves.
 - l. Electric valve actuators.
 - m. Chainwheel actuators

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.
- H. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- I. WOG: Water, oil, or gas.
- J. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
2. For each type of special duty valve indicated include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for diverting fittings, calibrated balancing valves and automatic flow control valves.

B. Maintenance Data.

1. Furnish maintenance manuals as specified in Division 1.
1. Furnish complete operation and maintenance manuals for the purchased equipment.
2. Include the following items as a minimum for the purchased equipment.
 - a. Parts list.
 - b. Maintenance guide.
 - c. Preventive maintenance schedule.
 - d. Flow / pressure drop curves.
 - e. Performance data.
 - f. Lubrication schedule.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.

2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. Standards: If any item in this specification, as furnished by the contractor is manufactured in a location which does not certify ASME / ANSI standards, the contractor is to pay the owner for all expenses incurred by the owner for an outside testing company to confirm such compliances.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends. with wooden flange covers or with screwed plugs / caps as required.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
7. Protect instrumentation from damage.
8. Clean flanges and exposed metal surfaces and treat with anti-corrosive compound before assembly and testing.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points

1.07 WARRANTY

A. General warranty: Special warranty specified in this article shall not deprive the owner of the other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Manufacturer's warranty: 2 year written warranty signed by manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace all defective items including material, parts and labor at no additional cost to the owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule on design documents.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
6. Electric motor: As indicated on the drawings.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves
2. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.5 for steel valves,
3. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.24 for bronze valves.
4. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
5. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 VALVE DESCRIPTIONS

A. BRONZE GATE VALVES, 2 INCHES AND SMALLER, MSS SP-80 TYPE 1

1. Manufacturers - Bronze gate valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves
 - b. Crane Co; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves
 - c. Crane Co; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Grinnell Corporation
 - e. Walworth Company
 - f. NIBCO Inc.
2. Class 150 psi steam, 300 psi cold working pressure (CWP)
 - a. ASTM B 62 cast-bronze body and bonnet

- b. Union bonnet
- c. Solid-bronze wedge
- d. Copper-silicon alloy rising stem
- e. Teflon-impregnated packing with bronze packing nut
- f. Aluminum or malleable-iron handwheel
- g.

B. BRONZE GLOBE VALVES, 2 INCHES AND SMALLER, MSS SP-80 TYPE 3

- 1. Manufactures-Bronze globe valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Crane Co; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves
 - b. Crane Co; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves
 - c. Crane Co; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Grinnell Corporation
 - e. Walworth Company
 - f. NIBCO Inc.
- 2. Class 150 psi steam, 300 psi cold working pressure (CWP)
 - a. ASTM B 62 cast-bronze body and bonnet
 - b. Union bonnet
 - c. Stainless steel disc
 - d. Stainless steel seat
 - e. Copper-silicon alloy rising stem
 - f. Teflon-impregnated packing with bronze packing nut
 - g. Threaded end connection
 - h. Aluminum or malleable-iron handwheel

C. BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES, 2 INCHES AND SMALLER, MSS SP-80

- 1. Manufacturers - Bronze check valves, Horizontal and Vertical - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Horizontal
 - 1) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves
 - 2) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves
 - 3) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division
 - 4) Grinnell Corporation
 - 5) Walworth Company
 - 6) NIBCO Inc.
 - b. Vertical
 - 1) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves
 - 2) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves
 - 3) Cincinnati Valve Co
2. Class 150 psi steam, 300 psi cold working pressure (CWP)
- a. ASTM B 62 cast-bronze body and cap
 - b. "Y" pattern
 - c. Stainless steel free floating hinge pin
 - d. Threaded cap
 - e. Regrinding seat
 - f. Bronze disc

D. BRONZE BALL VALVES, 3 INCHES AND SMALLER

1. Manufacturers - Bronze ball valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
- a. Conbraco Industries Inc.; Apollo Division
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division
 - d. Jamesbury Inc.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company

2. 2 piece, class 150 psi steam, 600 psi cold working pressure (CWP), reduced port
 - a. ASTM B584 cast bronze body
 - b. Stainless steel ball and stem
 - c. Chrome plated brass ball with brass stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. PTFE stem packing
 - g. Zinc plated steel lever with vinyl covered grip
3. 2 piece, class 150 psi steam, 600 psi cold working pressure (CWP), standard port
 - a. ASTM B584 cast bronze body
 - b. Stainless steel ball and stem
 - c. Chrome plated brass ball with brass stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. PTFE stem packing
 - g. Zinc plated steel lever with vinyl covered grip
4. 3 piece, class 150 psi steam, 600 psi cold working pressure (CWP), full port
 - a. ASTM B584 cast bronze body
 - b. Stainless steel ball and stem
 - c. Chrome plated brass ball with brass stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. PTFE stem packing
 - g. Zinc plated steel lever with vinyl covered grip
 - h. Threaded ends

E. CARBON STEEL BALL VALVES

1. Manufacturers - Steel ball valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Conbraco Industries Inc.; Apollo Division
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division
 - c. Jamesbury Inc.
 - d. Cooper Cameron Corp.; Cooper Cameron Valves Div.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company
2. 2 piece, class 150 psi steam, 3000 psi cold working pressure (CWP), full port, 2_inches and smaller
 - a. ASTM A108 carbon steel body
 - b. Stainless steel ball and stem
 - c. ASTM A108 chrome plated ball and stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. PTFE stem packing
 - g. Zinc plated steel lever with vinyl covered grip
 - h. Threaded ends
3. 3 piece, class 150 psi steam, 1000 psi cold working pressure (CWP), full port, 2_inches and smaller
 - a. ASTM A108 carbon steel body
 - b. Stainless steel ball and stem
 - c. ASTM A108 chrome plated ball and stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. PTFE stem packing
 - g. Zinc plated steel lever with vinyl covered grip
4. ANSI flanged, class 150 psi steam, 285 psi cold working pressure (CWP), reduced port, 2½ inches to 10 inches

- a. ASTM A216 WCB cast carbon steel body
 - b. ASTM A216 WCB chrome plated ball
 - c. ASTM A108 carbon steel stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. Graphite stem packing
 - g. Galvanized pipe lever
 - h. Raised face flange ends
5. ANSI flanged, class 150 psi steam, 285 psi cold working pressure (CWP), full port, 2½ inches to 6 inches
- a. ASTM A216 WCB cast carbon steel body
 - b. ASTM A216 WCB chrome plated ball
 - c. ASTM A108 carbon steel stem
 - d. Blow out proof stem design
 - e. PTFE seats
 - f. Graphite stem packing
 - g. Galvanized pipe lever
 - h. Raised face flange ends

F. CAST IRON PLUG VALVES

- 1. Manufacturers - Cast iron plug valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Nordstrom Valve Inc.
 - b. Walworth Company
 - c. R&M Energy systems (Tomball Tx)
 - d. Olson Technologies; Homestead Div.
- 2. 2 inch and smaller, MSS SP 25, MSS SP-78
 - a. 200 psi cold working pressure (CWP)

- 1) ASTM A 126 gray iron body
 - 2) Regular pattern
 - 3) Screwed gland
 - 4) Buna-N gland and stem seals
 - 5) Gray iron lubricated tapered plug
 - 6) Carbon steel sealant fitting
 - 7) 1 year supply lubricant per valve
 - 8) 1 lubricating gun with 15,000 psi gauge and 12 inch connection hose per 10 valves
 - 9) 1 wrench operator per 10 valves
 - 10) Threaded end connection
 - 11) SCHEDULE VALVE NO. 2001
3. 2 1/2 inch to 4 inch, MSS SP 25, MSS SP-78
- a. 200 psi cold working pressure (CWP)
 - 1) ASTM A 126 gray iron body
 - 2) Regular pattern
 - 3) Screwed gland
 - 4) Buna-N gland and stem seals
 - 5) Gray iron lubricated tapered plug
 - 6) Carbon steel sealant fitting
 - 7) 1 year supply lubricant per valve
 - 8) 1 lubricating gun with 15,000 psi gauge and 12 inch connection hose per 10 valves
 - 9) 1 wrench operator per 10 valves
 - 10) ANSI 125 flanged ends
 - 11) SCHEDULE VALVE NO. 2011

G. IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES

1. Manufacturers - Iron butterfly valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Keystone division of Tyco Flow Control
 - b. Bray Valve & Controls
 - c. ABZ Valves & Controls
2. 200 psi cold working pressure (CWP), 2 inch to 24 inch
 - a. ASTM A126 cast iron body
 - b. ANSI 125/150 pattern, fully lugged, and tapped body style
 - c. Stainless steel stem
 - d. Resilient EPDM seat
 - e. Bronze stem bushing
 - f. Stainless steel disc screws or taper pins

H. SPRING LOADED LIFT DISC CHECK VALVES

1. Manufacturers - Spring loaded lift disc check valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Mueller Steam Specialty Co.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Co.
 - c. Titan Flow Control, Inc.
2. 2 inch and smaller
 - a. 200 psi cold working pressure (CWP) up to 150°F
 - 1) Cast iron body and cap
 - 2) Screwed cap
 - 3) EPDM seal
 - 4) Stainless steel stem
 - 5) Stainless steel spring
 - 6) Brass disc
 - 7) Threaded ends

I. CALIBRATED BALANCING VALVES

1. Manufacturers - Calibrated balancing valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. ITT Bell & Gossett
 - b. Macon, Tunstall Corp.
 - c. TA Hydronics
2. 2 inch and smaller
 - a. 200 psi cold working pressure (CWP) up to 250°F
 - 1) Bronze body, straight through ball valve design
 - 2) Brass ball
 - 3) Carbon filled TFE seat rings
 - 4) Read out ports with internal EPT insert and check valve
 - 5) ¼ inch NPT tapped drain port
 - 6) Memory stop feature
 - 7) Calibrated nameplate
 - 8) Sweat ends
3. 2½ inch to 3 inch
 - a. 175 psi cold working pressure (CWP) up to 250°F
 - 1) Cast iron body, straight through ball valve design
 - 2) Brass ball
 - 3) Carbon filled TFE seat rings
 - 4) Read out ports with internal EPT insert and check valve
 - 5) Memory stop feature
 - 6) Calibrated nameplate
 - 7) ANSI class 125 flanged end connections
4. 3 inch to 12 inch

- a. 175 psi cold working pressure (CWP) up to 250°F
 - 1) Cast iron body, "Y" pattern globe valve design
 - 2) Bronze seat
 - 3) Replaceable bronze disc
 - 4) EPDM seal insert
 - 5) Stainless steel stem
 - 6) Read out ports with internal EPT insert and check valve
 - 7) Memory stop feature
 - 8) Calibrated nameplate
 - 9) ANSI class 125 flanged end connections

J. SAFETY VALVES

- 1. Manufacturers - Safety valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Conbraco Industries Inc.
 - b. Kunkle
- 2. Class 300 steam safety shut off valve, 1 inch to 6 inches
 - a. ASTM A 216 grade WCB cast carbon steel body
 - b. Normally closed, air to open
 - c. Integral stainless steel seat ring with cobalt nickel alloy hard facing
 - d. Replaceable diaphragm and stem seal
 - e. Suitable for dead end service with maximum leakage to ANSI B16.104 class IV
 - f. Actuator shall be bolted to valve bonnet and capable of closing valve against 250 psig line pressure drop
 - g. Teflon graphite packing
 - h. Cage retained internal valve parts
 - i. Valve and control device shall be supplied by the same manufacturer
 - j. ANSI class 300 flanged end connections

K. AUTOMATIC FLOW CONTROL VALVES

- 1. Manufacturers - Automatic flow control valves - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Griswold Controls

- b. Belime Control Valves
 - c. TA Hydronics
2. ½ inch to 2 inch
 - a. 600 psi cold working pressure (CWP)
 - 1) ASTM B283 forged brass body
 - 2) 304 stainless steel cartridge
 - 3) 17-7 PH stainless steel spring
 - 4) ¼ NPT taps with pressure/temperature test valves
 - 5) FNPT threaded ends
 3. 2½ inch to 3 inch
 - a. 362 psi cold working pressure (CWP) up to 275°F
 - 1) ASTM A536-80 ductile iron body
 - 2) 304 stainless steel cartridge
 - 3) 17-7 PH stainless steel spring
 - 4) ¼ NPT taps with pressure/temperature test valves
 - 5) Pressure/temperature extensions
 - 6) ANSI class 150 wafer type construction
 - 7) SCHEDULE VALVE NO. 2811

L. SOLENOID VALVES

1. Solenoid valves
 - a. ASCO
2. 2 inch and smaller, 125 psi cold working pressure (CWP)
 - a. Brass body
 - b. NBR disc
 - c. PTFE seals
 - d. Stainless steel trim
 - e. Disc closing speed snubber

- f. 24 VDC – schedule valve no. 2901
- g. 120 VAC – schedule valve no. 2902
- h. Threaded end connections

2.03 ELECTRIC MOTOR ACTUATORS

A. Manufacturers - Electric valve actuators - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Limatorque Corporation
- b. Rotork Controls, Inc.
- c. Belimo Air Controls, Inc.
- d. EIM Company, Inc.

B. Motor valve operators.

C. Provide as follows:

1. Mount operators on side or top of valve at factory or at site under manufacturer's supervision. Provide gear operated single or double reduction. For 90 deg (1/4 turn) application, adjustable mechanical stops shall prevent travel of more than 90 deg
2. Grease or oil lubricated.
3. 120 Volt, 1 phase, 60 hertz
4. Control circuit: 24 volt, transformer as required.
5. Control circuit: 120 volt, transformer as required.
6. Assembly:
 - a. Motor shall be high speed, high torque, totally enclosed non-ventilated, Class B or F insulation and operational at up to 10 percent above or below nominal voltage. Motor shall be prelubricated, anti-friction bearing type with thermal overload protection.
 - b. Limit switches shall be integral to the unit. Gearing shall be bronze or stainless steel. Steel switches shall be fully adjustable and shall trip anywhere between full open and full close, as required. Switches shall be heavy duty, open contact type with rotary wiping action. Provide minimum spare contacts 2 normally open, 2 normally closed.

- c. Torque switch shall have torque protection either direction, fully adjustable and shall shut off actuator motor when a predetermined amount of torque is reached.
 - d. Stem nut shall be high tensile bronze or material compatible to the valve stem and shall be constructed for easy removal without disassembling gear case.
 - e. Handwheel for manual operation: Handwheel shall declutch automatically when motor is energized. Rimpull shall not exceed a maximum of 80 lb. Handwheel shall be similar to Limitorque SMB and SMC.
7. For open/closed operation: All valves shall have integral control package including control transformer with fused secondary, motor reversing contactor (mechanically interlocked), limit switch compartment heater and terminal strip.
- a. Indicating lights shall be:
 - 1) Red light glows when valve closed.
 - 2) Green light glows when valve open.
 - 3) Intermediate position indication.
 - b. Pushbutton station: Provide selector switch if required and momentary or maintained contacts as required.
8. For modulating service shall be controlled by analog signal 4-20 ma DC with momentary pushbuttons.
- a. Controls shall be mounted inside the actuator.
 - b. Provide three phase power supply:
 - 1) Solid state reversing controller.
 - 2) Comparator circuit module.
 - 3) Transformer.
 - 4) 2 position selector switch (auto/manual).
 - 5) Limit switch compartment heater.
 - 6) Mechanical dial position indicator with 1,000 ohm potentiometer.
 - 7) Class F insulation motor.
 - 8) Mounted and wired.
 - 9) Similar to Limitorque Modutronic 30.
 - c. Provide single phase power supply:
 - 1) Comparator circuit module.

- 2) Mechanical dial position indicator with 1,000 ohm potentiometer feedback.
 - 3) 2 position (auto/manual) selector switch.
 - 4) Limit switch compartment heater.
 - 5) Motor: 2100 rpm D.C. in lieu of A.C.; class F insulation; 20 percent run valve duty.
 - 6) Mounted and wired, similar to Limitorque Modutronic 10A and 10B.
9. Closing time:
- a. Gate shall be 12 inches per minute, minimum 1 minute.
 - b. Globe shall be 4 inches per minute, minimum 1 minute.
 - c. Butterfly shall be 1/4 turn per minute.
10. Provide remote open-close buttons and open-close indicating lights for installation on control board in Division 15 Section "Automatic Controls System".
11. Final field adjustment of valve operation shall be made by manufacturer's representative.

SCHEDULE 1 - CHAINWHEEL ACTUATORS

- A. Manufacturers - Chainwheel actuators - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
1. Babbitt Steam Specialties Co.
 2. Roto Hammer Industries Inc.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.
 - a. Cast iron.
 - b. Bronze
 2. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
 3. Chain:
 - a. Hot-dip, galvanized steel
 - b. Brass
 - c. Stainless steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine piping system for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- C. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

230525 - 18

VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

- A. General-Duty Valve Applications: Unless otherwise indicated in the pipe schedule, use the following valve types:
 - 1. Shutoff Service except Steam: Ball, butterfly or gate valves.
 - 2. Throttling Service except Steam: Ball, plug valves, Globe valves
 - 3. Pump Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2 1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with level and weight or with spring or iron, center guided, metal seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Install shutoff duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, at supply connection to each piece of equipment, unless only one piece of equipment is connected in the branch line. Install throttling duty valves at each branch connection to return mains, at return connections to each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- D. Install calibrated balancing valves in the return water line of each heating or cooling element and elsewhere as required to facilitate system balancing.
- E. Install spring loaded check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- F. Install safety valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to discharge. Comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- G. Install pressure-reducing valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required to regulate system pressure.
- H. Threaded connections are not to be used for glycol systems.

END OF SECTION 230523

SECTION 23 0529
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Fastener systems.
- 4. Pipe stands.
- 5. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
- 2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Pipe stands.
 - 3. Equipment supports.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.02 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.03 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.04 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.05 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.06 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.02 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.03 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.05 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.

15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.

8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 23 0533
HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes heat tracing for HVAC piping with the following electric heating cables:
 - 1. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
 - 2. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Chromalux
 2. Raychem
 3. Watts Radiant
- B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 AWG, nickel-coated, stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.
- D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.
- E. Cable Cover: Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.
- F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.
- G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 CONTROLS

- A. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F.
- B. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
- C. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.
- D. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

- B. Warning Labels: Refer to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.
 - 1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
 - 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install electric heating cable across expansion joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.
- B. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
- C. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.
- D. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- E. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.
- F. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
 - 2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
 - 3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.
- B. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.
- C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage during construction.
- B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 230533

SECTION 23 0548
VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Elastomeric hangers.
9. Spring hangers.
10. Snubbers.
11. Restraint channel bracings.
12. Restraint cables.
13. Seismic-restraint accessories.
14. Mechanical anchor bolts.
15. Adhesive anchor bolts.
16. Vibration isolation equipment bases.
17. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development (for the State of California).

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.

- a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:
- 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.
- 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - 3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Air-Mounting System Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data performed by an independent agency.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-spring mounts and restrained-air-spring mounts to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
 1. Basic Wind Speed: 95 MPH.
 2. Building Classification Category: IV.
 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by maximum area of HVAC component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: Refer to existing structural drawings.
 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: Refer to existing structural drawings.

- a. Component Importance Factor: 1.0 refer to contract drawings.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 1.5 refer to existing structural drawings.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: Refer to existing structural drawings.
- 3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
 - 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period.
 - 5. Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they are subjected.

2.02 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

- 1. Manufacturers
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
- 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
- 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
- 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
- 5. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
- 6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.03 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - b. VMC Korfund
- 2. Mounting Plates:
 - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
- 3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.04 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
 - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.05 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.06 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top housing with threaded mounting holes and internal leveling device.

2.07 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
 2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
 - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
 - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.08 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
 2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.09 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.10 SNUBBERS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
- B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch-thick resilient cushion.

2.11 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.12 RESTRAINT CABLES

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.13 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.

C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.

D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.14 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.15 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.16 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Ace Mounting Company
- b. Mason Industries, Inc.
- c. VMC Korfund

B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.

a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.

3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- D. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.17 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ace Mounting Company
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. VMC Korfund
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- C. Upper Frame: The upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces.
- D. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.

- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.03 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- D. Equipment Restraints:
 - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.

2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

E. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

F. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

G. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

H. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

I. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

J. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

K. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.04 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one

supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 - 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 - 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 - 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
 - 6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 - 7. Measure isolator deflection.
 - 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
 - 9. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

END OF SECTION 230548

SECTION 23 0593
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Heat exchangers.
 - b. Motors.
 - c. Chillers.
 - d. Condensing units.
 - e. Boilers.
 - f. Heat-transfer coils.
- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
- 5. Sound tests.
- 6. Vibration tests.
- 7. Duct leakage tests.
- 8. Control system verification.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
 - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
 - b. The TAB plan.
 - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.

B. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by as a NEBB or TABB TAB technician.

C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

 - 2. Hydronics:
 - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Water treatment is complete.
 - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
 - e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
 - f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
 - g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
 - h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
 - i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
 - j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.03 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.

- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch pound units.

3.04 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.05 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 1. Measure total airflow.

- a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses, close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Obtain approval from Construction Manager for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 4. Mark all final settings.
 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.06 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
 - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
 - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
 - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
 - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
 - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
 - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
 - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
 5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
 - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.

- c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - d. Mark final settings.
 - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
 - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.07 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 - 1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 - 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 - 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 - 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 - 5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.08 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - 1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.

- c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 - 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- F. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 3. Mark final settings.
- G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.09 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:
 - 1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
 - 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no diversity:
 - 1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 - 2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 - 3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
 7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
 8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
 10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- D. For systems with diversity:
1. Determine diversity factor.
 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

- c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- 4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- 6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- 7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- 8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
- 9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
- 10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
- 11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
- 12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
- 13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.

- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - 1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 - 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.

2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
- B. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
- C. Measure inlet steam pressure.
- D. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator[and condenser] to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers:
 - 1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 - 2. Measure and record water flow.
 - 3. Record relief valve pressure setting.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
 - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 - 2. Water flow rate.
 - 3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
 - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 - 6. Airflow.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 - 1. Nameplate data.
 - 2. Airflow.
 - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 - 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
 - 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 - 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
 - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 2. Airflow.
 - 3. Inlet steam pressure.
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
 - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 3. Airflow.

3.17 VIBRATION TESTS

- A. After systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record vibration levels on equipment having motor horsepower equal to or greater than 10.
- B. Instrumentation:
 - 1. Use portable, battery-operated, and microprocessor-controlled vibration meter with or without a built-in printer.
 - 2. The meter shall automatically identify engineering units, filter bandwidth, amplitude, and frequency scale values.
 - 3. The meter shall be able to measure machine vibration displacement in mils of deflection, velocity in inches per second, and acceleration in inches per second squared.
 - 4. Verify calibration date is current for vibration meter before taking readings.
- C. Test Procedures:
 - 1. To ensure accurate readings, verify that accelerometer has a clean, flat surface and is mounted properly.
 - 2. With the unit running, set up vibration meter in a safe, secure location. Connect transducer to meter with proper cables. Hold magnetic tip of transducer on top of the bearing, and measure unit in mils of deflection. Record measurement, then move transducer to the side of the bearing and record in mils of deflection. Record an axial reading in mils of deflection by holding nonmagnetic, pointed transducer tip on end of shaft.
 - 3. Change vibration meter to velocity (inches per second) measurements. Repeat and record above measurements.
 - 4. Record CPM or rpm.
 - 5. Read each bearing on motor, fan, and pump as required. Track and record vibration levels from rotating component through casing to base.
- D. Reporting:
 - 1. Report shall record location and the system tested.
 - 2. Include horizontal-vertical-axial measurements for tests.
 - 3. Verify that vibration limits follow Specifications, or, if not specified, follow the General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart or Vibration Acceleration General Severity Chart from the AABC National Standards. Acceptable levels of vibration are normally "smooth" to "good."
 - 4. Include in report General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart, with conditions plotted.

3.18 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.19 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2
230593 - 17

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.20 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

3.21 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: [Plus or minus 10 percent] <Insert value>.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: [Plus or minus 10 percent] <Insert value>.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: [Plus or minus 10 percent] <Insert value>.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: [Plus or minus 10 percent] <Insert value>.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.22 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.

13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.
 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.

- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.

- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Fuel type in input data.
- g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
- h. Ignition type.
- i. Burner-control types.
- j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
- l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
- m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
- e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
- f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
- g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- j. Manifold pressure in psig.
- k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
- l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
- m. Motor voltage at each connection.
- n. Motor amperage for each phase.
- o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil identification.
- d. Capacity in Btu/h.
- e. Number of stages.
- f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
- g. Rated amperage.
- h. Airflow rate in cfm.
- i. Face area in sq. ft..
- j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Heat output in Btu/h.
- b. Airflow rate in cfm.
- c. Air velocity in fpm.
- d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

- f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.
 - I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
 - 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.
 - e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Air velocity in fpm.
 - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
 - e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
 - f. Final velocity in fpm.
 - g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.
 - d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

- h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
- i. Pump rpm.
- j. Impeller diameter in inches.
- k. Motor make and frame size.
- l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- m. Voltage at each connection.
- n. Amperage for each phase.
- o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
- b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
- c. Actual impeller size in inches.
- d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
- e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
- f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.23 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of commissioning authority.
- B. Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.24 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 23 0713 DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.07 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.08 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements on Contract Drawings for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
 - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
 - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
 - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

2.02 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- B. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.03 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- 5. Color: Aluminum.
- 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.04 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 - 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 - 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.05 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

- 2. Width: 3 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

- B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

- 2. Width: 2 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.06 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

- 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- 3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- 4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
- 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; CD.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135 inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
- 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
2. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
- 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
- b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel Aluminum Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
- b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel Aluminum Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel aluminum stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
 - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 2. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1) GEMCO.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.07 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping "Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.08 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Refer to Contract Drawings.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 23 0719
HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
 - 2. Chilled water piping indoors.
 - 3. Low pressure steam and condensate piping, indoors.
 - 4. High pressure steam and condensate piping, indoors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to

authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- B. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements on Contract Drawings.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Calcium Silicate:
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Industrial Insulation Group
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 3. Flat-, curved-and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation
 - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
 - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 - 7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
 - b. Armacell, LLC
 - c. K-Flex USA

- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
 - e. Owens Corning

- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. CertainTeed Corporation
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
 - e. Owens Corning
2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.02 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.03 ADHESIVES

- A. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.04 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.05 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

2.06 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.

- d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
- 2. Width: 3 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

2.07 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
- 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.05 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.09 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Refer to Contract Drawings

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE:

- A. Refer to Contract Drawings

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 23 0923
DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923.13 "Energy Meters" for thermal and electric power energy meters that connect to DDC systems.
2. Section 230923.17 "Level Instruments" for liquid-level switches, sensors, and transmitters that connect to DDC systems.
3. Section 230923.22 "Position Instruments" for limit switches that connect to DDC systems.
4. Section 230923.33 "Vibration Instruments" for vibration instruments that connect to DDC systems.
5. Section 230923.43 "Weather Stations" for weather stations that connect to DDC systems.
6. Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for control sequences in DDC systems.
7. Communications Cabling:
 - a. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for balanced twisted pair communications cable.
8. Raceways:
 - a. Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceways for low-voltage control cable.
9. Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification requirements for electrical components.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.

- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
 3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
 5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.
- L. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- M. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- N. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- O. I/P: Current to pneumatic.

- P. LAN: Local area network.
- Q. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- R. LON Specific Definitions:
1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
 2. LonMark: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
 3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
 4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.
 5. Node: Device that communicates using CEA-709.1-C protocol and that is connected to a CEA-709.1-C network.
 6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
 7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CEA-709.1-C device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
 8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
 9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark International for configuration properties.
 10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
 11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
 12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CEA-709.1-C control network.
 13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25-Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
 14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "U-Keep-It." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
 15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- S. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- T. Mobile Device: A data-enabled phone or tablet computer capable of connecting to a cellular data network and running a native control application or accessing a web interface.
- U. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.

- V. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- W. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- X. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- Y. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- Z. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- AA. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- BB. PUE: Performance usage effectiveness.
- CC. RAM: Random access memory.
- DD. RF: Radio frequency.
- EE. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- FF. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- GG. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- HH. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- II. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- JJ. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.
- KK. VAV: Variable air volume.
- LL. WLED: White light emitting diode.

1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Multiple Submissions:
 1. If multiple submissions are required to execute work within schedule, first submit a coordinated schedule clearly defining intent of multiple submissions. Include a proposed date of each submission with a detailed description of submittal content to be included in each submission.

2. Clearly identify each submittal requirement indicated and in which submission the information will be provided.
3. Include an updated schedule in each subsequent submission with changes highlighted to easily track the changes made to previous submitted schedule.

B. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
 - a. Workstations.
 - b. Servers.
 - c. Printers.
 - d. Gateways.
 - e. Routers.
 - f. Protocol analyzers.
 - g. DDC controllers.
 - h. Enclosures.
 - i. Electrical power devices.
 - j. UPS units.
 - k. Accessories.
 - l. Instruments.
 - m. Control dampers and actuators.
 - n. Control valves and actuators.
6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

C. Software Submittal:

1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway, and DDC controller.
2. Description and technical data of all software provided, and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.

6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
8. Description of each network communication protocol.
9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity and limitations to expand database.
10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden and system throughout.
11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. General Requirements:
 - a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
 - b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
 - c. Drawings Size: 11x17.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.
3. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
4. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.
5. Plan Drawings indicating the following:
 - a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
 - b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
 - c. Each desktop workstation, server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to DDC controller, if included in Project.
 - d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
 - e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
 - f. Information, drawn to scale, of <Insert requirements>.
 - g. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.
6. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
 - a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
 - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
 - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
 - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.

- e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
 - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
 - g. Narrative sequence of operation.
 - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
7. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
- a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
 - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates and allocated spare space.
 - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
 - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
8. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
 - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
 - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
 - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
9. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
 - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
10. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
- a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
 - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
 - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
 - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
 - e. Pneumatic main air and control signal tubing to pneumatic [damper] [and] [valve] actuators, pilot-positioners if applicable, and associated transducers.
11. Color graphics indicating the following:
- a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
 - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed.
 - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.

E. System Description:

1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
 2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and events which initiate generation.
 3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Loss of power.
 - b. Loss of network communication signal.
 - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outputs.
 - d. Operator workstation failure.
 - e. Server failure.
 - f. Gateway failure.
 - g. Network failure
 - h. Controller failure.
 - i. Instrument failure.
 - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
 4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
 5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
 6. Description of Owner training.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For DDC system products and installation indicated as being delegated.
1. Supporting documentation showing DDC system design complies with performance requirements indicated, including calculations and other documentation necessary to prove compliance.
 2. Schedule and design calculations for control dampers and actuators.
 - a. Flow at Project design and minimum flow conditions.
 - b. Face velocity at Project design and minimum airflow conditions.
 - c. Pressure drop across damper at Project design and minimum airflow conditions.
 - d. AMCA 500-D damper installation arrangement used to calculate and schedule pressure drop, as applicable to installation.
 - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
 - f. Leakage airflow at maximum system pressure differential (fan close-off pressure).
 - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
 - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.
 - i. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
 - j. Actuator position on loss of power.
 - k. Actuator position on loss of control signal.
 3. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators.
 - a. Flow at Project design and minimum flow conditions.
 - b. Pressure-differential drop across valve at Project design flow condition.
 - c. Maximum system pressure-differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at Project minimum flow condition.
 - d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
 - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
 - f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
 - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.

- h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.
 - i. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
 - j. Actuator position on loss of power.
 - k. Actuator position on loss of control signal.
4. Schedule and design calculations for selecting flow instruments.
- a. Instrument flow range.
 - b. Project design and minimum flow conditions with corresponding accuracy, control signal to transmitter and output signal for remote control.
 - c. Extreme points of extended flow range with corresponding accuracy, control signal to transmitter and output signal for remote control.
 - d. Pressure-differential loss across instrument at Project design flow conditions.
 - e. Where flow sensors are mated with pressure transmitters, provide information for each instrument separately and as an operating pair.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

- 1. Systems Provider Qualification Data:
- 2. Manufacturer's qualification data.
- 3. Testing agency's qualifications data.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Product Certificates:

- 1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

D. Product Test Reports: For each product that requires testing to be performed by manufacturer.

E. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each separate test performed.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.

- 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
- b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
- c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
- d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
- e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
- f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
- g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
 - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
 - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
 - 3) Debug hardware problems.
 - 4) Repair or replace hardware.
- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as DVDs.
- j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over four - year period following warranty period. Parts list shall be indicated for each year.
- C. Furnish parts, as indicated by manufacturer's recommended parts list, for product operation during two-year period following warranty period.
- D. Furnish quantity indicated of matching product(s) in Project inventory for each unique size and type of following:
 - 1. Network Controller: One.
 - 2. Programmable Application Controller: One.
 - 3. Application-Specific Controller: One.

4. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: One.
5. Moisture Sensor and Transmitter: One.
6. Pressure Sensor and Transmitter: One.
7. Room Temperature Sensor and Transmitter: One.
8. General-Purpose Relay: One.
9. Multifunction Time-Delay Relay: One.
10. Latching Relay: One.
11. Current-Sensing Relay: One.
12. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay: One.
13. Transformer: One.
14. DC Power Supply: One.
15. Supply of 20 percent spare optical fiber cable splice organizer cabinets for several re-terminations.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of five years within time of bid.
3. DDC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least three past projects.
4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
 - a. Product research and development.
 - b. Product and application engineering.
 - c. Product manufacturing, testing and quality control.
 - d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning and troubleshooting of installations.
 - e. Owner operator training.

B. DDC System Provider Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
2. In-place facility located within 50 miles of Project.
3. Demonstrated past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope and value.
5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
7. Product parts inventory to support on-going DDC system operation for a period of not less than 5 years after Substantial Completion.
8. DDC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 - 3. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
 - 4. AWS D1.4/D1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
- E. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
 - 2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
 - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
 - 3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
 - 4. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. For Gateway: Two-year parts and labor warranty for each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 DDC SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Alerton Controls, Inc.
 - 2. Automated Logic Corporation
 - 3. Delta Control, Inc.
 - 4. Johnson Controls Inc.
 - 5. Seimens Industries
 - 6.

2.02 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.

1. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, other network devices, operator interfaces, and software.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.03 WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system shall be Web based or Web compatible.
1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:
 - a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
 - b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
 - c. Web access shall be password protected.
 2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:
 - a. Workstation and server shall perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
 - b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
 - c. Web access shall be password protected.

2.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.
1. System Performance Objectives:
 - a. DDC system shall manage HVAC systems.
 - b. DDC system control shall operate HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
 - c. DDC system shall respond to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
 - d. DDC system shall operate while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
 - e. DDC system shall record trends and transaction of events and produce report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.

- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths shall comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- D. DDC System Speed:
1. Response Time of Connected I/O:
 - a. AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
 - b. BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
 - c. AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
 - d. BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
 2. Display of Connected I/O:
 - a. Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every five seconds for use by operator.
 - b. Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every five seconds for use by operator.
 - c. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within 15 seconds of activation or change of state.
 - d. Graphic display refresh shall update within four seconds.
 - e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.
- E. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 30 percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- F. DDC System Data Storage:
1. Include capability to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.
 2. Local Storage:
 - a. Provide server with data storage indicated. Server(s) shall use IT industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
 3. Cloud Storage:

- a. Provide application-based and web browser interfaces to configure, upload, download, and manage data, and service plan with storage adequate to store all data for term indicated. Cloud storage shall use IT industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.

G. DDC Data Access:

1. When logged into the system, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
2. System(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.

H. Future Expandability:

1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least two times total I/O points indicated.
2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.

I. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet values identified on the Contract Documents.

J. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall meet the values identified on the Contract Documents.

K. Control Stability: Control variables meet the values identified on the Contract Documents.

L. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:

1. Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
 - a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application.
2. Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
 - a. Outdoors, Protected: [Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>.
 - b. Outdoors, Unprotected: [Type 4] [Type 4X].
 - c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: [Type 1] [Type 2] <Insert type>.
 - d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: [Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>.
 - e. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: [Type 1] <Insert type>.
 - f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:

- 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: [Type 12] [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
- 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: [Type 1] [Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>.

- g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
- h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: [Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>.
- i. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
- j. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
- k. <Insert location and enclosure requirements>.

M. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:

1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.

- a. If instruments and actuators alone cannot comply with requirement, install instruments and actuators in protective enclosures that are isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated[, cooled] and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

2. Instruments, actuators and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments and actuators not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:

- a. Outdoors, Protected: [Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>.
- b. Outdoors, Unprotected: [Type 4] [Type 4X].
- c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: [Type 1] [Type 2] <Insert type>.
- d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: [Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>.
- e. Indoors, Heated and Air-conditioned: [Type 1] <Insert type>.
- f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:

- 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: [Type 12] [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
- 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: [Type 1] [Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>.

- g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
- h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: [Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>.
- i. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
- j. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
- k. <Insert location and enclosure requirements>.

N. DDC System Reliability:

1. Design, install and configure DDC controllers, gateways, routers, and] < to yield a MTBF of at least 40,000 hours, based on a confidence level of at least 90 percent. MTBF value shall include any failure for any reason to any part of products indicated.

2. If required to comply with MTBF indicated, include DDC system and product redundancy to maintain DCC system, and associated systems and equipment that are being controlled, operational and under automatic control.
3. Critical systems and equipment that require a higher degree of DDC system redundancy than MTBF indicated shall be indicated on Drawings.

O. Electric Power Quality:

1. Power-Line Surges:

- a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.
- b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
- c. Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:
 - 1) 10-by-1000-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak current of 60 A.
 - 2) 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak current of 500 A.

2. Power Conditioning:

- a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner shall be as follows:
 - 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
 - 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal.
 - 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles, and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
 - 4) Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.
3. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

P. Backup Power Source:

1. HVAC systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated DDC system products that control such systems and equipment also served from a backup power source.

Q. UPS:

1. DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
 - a. Desktop workstations.
 - b. Printers.
 - c. Servers.
 - d. Gateways.
 - e. DDC controllers.

- R. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:
 - 1. Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

2.05 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- A. System architecture shall consist of no more than three levels of LANs.
 - 1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
 - 2. Level two LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
 - 3. Level three LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to programmable application controllers and network controllers.
- B. Minimum Data Transfer and Communication Speed:
 - 1. LAN Connecting Operator Workstations and Network Controllers: 100 Mbps.
 - 2. LAN Connecting Programmable Application Controllers: 1000 kbps.
 - 3. LAN Connecting Application-Specific Controllers: 115,000 bps.
- C. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than two times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- D. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing network equipment.
- E. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- F. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.
- G. Special Network Architecture Requirements:
 - 1. Air-Handling Systems: For control applications of an air-handling system that consists of air-handling unit(s) and VAV terminal units, include a dedicated LAN of application-specific controllers serving VAV terminal units connected directly to controller that is controlling air-handling system air-handling unit(s). Basically, create a DDC system LAN that aligns with air-handling system being controlled.

2.06 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Desktop and portable workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
 2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
 3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
 4. Mobile device and application with secured wireless connection through LAN router or cellular data service.
 5. Remote connection through web access.
- B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
1. Each mechanical equipment room.
 2. Security system command center.
 3. Fire-alarm system command center.
 4. Where indicated on Contract Documents
- D. Desktop Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
- E. Portable Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
 3. Connect to DDC system Level two or Level three LAN through a communications port on an application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-specific controller.
 4. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to Level one LAN.
 5. Connect to system through a cellular data service.
 6. Portable workstation shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN regardless of point of physical connection to system.
 7. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected anywhere in system.
 8. Have dynamic graphic displays that are identical to desktop workstations.
- F. POT:
1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.
 2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected or with LAN.
- G. Mobile Device:
1. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to LAN and cellular data service.
 2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system using a dedicated application and secure web access.
- H. Telephone Communications:

1. Through use of a standard modem, operator shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN.
2. Have auto-dial and auto-answer communications to allow desktop and portable workstations and DDC controllers to communicate with remote workstations and remote DDC controllers via telephone lines.

a. Desktop and Portable Workstations:

- 1) Operators shall be able to perform all control functions, report functions, and database generation and modification functions as if directly connected to system LAN.
- 2) Have routines to automatically answer calls, and either file or display information sent remotely.
- 3) Communications taking place over telephone lines shall be completely transparent to operator.
- 4) Dial-up program shall maintain a user-definable cross-reference and associated telephone numbers so it is not required to remember or manually dial telephone numbers.

b. DDC Controllers:

- 1) Not have modems unless specifically indicated for a unique controller.
- 2) Controllers with modems shall automatically place calls to report critical alarms, or to upload trend and historical information for archiving.
- 3) Analyze and prioritize alarms to minimize initiation of calls.
- 4) Buffer noncritical alarms in memory and report them as a group of alarms, or until an operator manually requests an upload.
- 5) Make provisions for handling busy signals, no-answers, and incomplete data transfers.
- 6) Call default devices when communications cannot be established with primary devices.

I. Critical Alarm Reporting:

1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.

J. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to [five] [10] [20] <Insert number> simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

2.07 NETWORKS

A. Acceptable networks for connecting workstations, mobile devices, and network controllers include the following:

1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
2. CEA-709.1-C.
3. IP.

4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- B. Acceptable networks for connecting programmable application controllers include the following:
1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
 2. CEA-709.1-C.
 3. IP.
 4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- C. Acceptable networks for connecting application-specific controllers include the following:
1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
 2. CEA-709.1-C.
 3. EIA-485A.
 4. IP.
 5. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.

2.08 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

- A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to Owner and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:
1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
 2. DDC system shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment, not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.
 3. If used, gateways shall connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
 4. Operator workstations, controllers and other network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.

2.09 DDC SYSTEM WIRELESS NETWORKS

- A. Use Zigbee or an open industry standard and technology used by multiple DDC system manufacturers technology to create a wireless mesh network to provide wireless connectivity for network devices at multiple system levels including communications from programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to temperature sensors and from network controllers to programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
- B. Installer shall design wireless networks to comply with DDC system performance requirements indicated. Wireless network devices shall co-exist on same network with hardwired devices.
- C. Hardwired controllers shall be capable of retrofit to wireless devices with no special software.
- D. A wireless coordinator shall provide a wireless interface between programmable application controllers, application-specific controllers, and network controllers.
- E. Wireless Coordinators:

1. Each wireless mesh network shall use wireless coordinator(s) for initiation and formation of network.
2. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
3. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
4. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
5. FCC compliant to 47 CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
6. Operate as a bidirectional transceiver with sensors and routers to confirm and synchronize data transmission.
7. Capable of communication with sensors and routers up to a maximum distance of 250 feet in line of sight.
8. Include visual indicators to provide diagnostic information required for operator verification of operation.

F. Wireless Routers:

1. Each wireless mesh network shall use wireless routers with any controller to provide a wireless interface to a network controller, through a wireless coordinator.
2. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
3. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
4. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
5. FCC compliant to 47 CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
6. Operate as a bidirectional transceiver with other mesh network devices to ensure network integrity.
7. Capable of communication with other mesh network devices at a maximum distance of 250 feet in line of sight.
8. Include indication for use in commissioning and troubleshooting.

G. Wireless Temperature Sensors:

1. Wireless temperature sensors shall sense and transmit room temperatures, temperature set point, room occupancy notification and low battery condition to an associated router.
2. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
3. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
4. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
5. FCC compliant to CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
6. Include set point adjustment between 55 to 85 deg F.
7. Multiple sensors shall be able to report to a router connected to a DDC controller for averaging or high and low selection.

H. One-to-One Wireless Network Receivers:

1. One-to-one wireless receivers shall receive wireless RF signals containing temperature data from multiple wireless room temperature sensors and communicate information to programmable application controllers or application-specific controllers.
 - a. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
 - b. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
 - c. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
 - d. FCC compliant to 47 CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
 - e. Operate as a bidirectional transceiver with the sensors to confirm and synchronize data transmission.
 - f. Capable of communication up to a distance of 200 feet.
 - g. Include visual indication of the following:

- 1) Power.
- 2) Receiver activity.
- 3) Wireless RF transmission from wireless sensors.
- 4) No transmission, weak signal, adequate signal or excellent signal.

I. One-to-One Wireless Network Sensors:

1. One-to-one wireless sensors shall sense and report room temperatures to one-to-one receiver.
 - a. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
 - b. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
 - c. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
 - d. FCC compliant to CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
 - e. Include set point adjustment between 55 to 85 deg F.

2.10 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32- or 64-bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

B. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Operator sign-on and sign-off activity shall be recorded and sent to printer.
6. Security Access:
 - a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.
 - b. An alphanumeric password shall be field assignable to each operator.
 - c. Operators shall be able to access DDC system by entry of proper password.

- d. Operator password shall be same regardless of which computer or other interface means is used.
 - e. Additions or changes made to passwords shall be updated automatically.
 - f. Each operator shall be assigned an access level to restrict access to data and functions the operator is cable of performing.
 - g. Software shall have at least five access levels.
 - h. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
 - i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.
7. Data Segregation:
- a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
 - b. Include at least 32 segregation groups.
 - c. Segregation groups shall be selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.
 - d. Points shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of data to printer or monitor shall occur where there is a match of operator or peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
 - e. Alarms shall be displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
 - f. Operators and peripherals shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups and all assignments are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Start or stop selected equipment.
 - b. Adjust set points.
 - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
 - d. Enable and disable process execution.
 - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
 - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
 - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
 - h. Override control loop set points.
 - i. Enter temporary override schedules.
 - j. Define holiday schedules.
 - k. Change time and date.
 - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
 - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
 - n. View limits.
 - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
 - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
 - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
9. Reporting:
- a. Generated automatically and manually.
 - b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.
 - c. Types of Reporting:

- 1) General listing of points.
 - 2) List points currently in alarm.
 - 3) List of off-line points.
 - 4) List points currently in override status.
 - 5) List of disabled points.
 - 6) List points currently locked out.
 - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
 - 8) List weekly schedules.
 - 9) List holiday programming.
 - 10) List of limits and deadbands.
10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.

C. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's workstation under password control.
5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication or point type.
7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall then be displayed.
14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.
16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.

19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display using pointing device.
 - a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
 - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using pointing device.
 - c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
21. Help Features:
 - a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
 - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
 - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating system software.
 - c. Available for Every Menu Item:
 - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
22. Graphic generation software shall allow operator to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays.
 - a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters, dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols[similar to those indicated].
 - b. Graphic development package shall use a pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:
 - 1) Define background screens.
 - 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
 - 3) Locate, orient and size descriptive text.
 - 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
 - 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.

D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
 - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.

- b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
 - c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic representation, similar to that indicated on Drawings, with point identification, set point and dynamic value indication, sequence of operation].
 4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
 5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers, gateways operator workstations and other network devices.

E. Customizing Software:

1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices planned.
2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
3. As a minimum, include the following modification capability:
 - a. Operator assignment shall include designation of operator passwords, access levels, point segregation and auto sign-off.
 - b. Peripheral assignment capability shall include assignment of segregation groups and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and printers, designation of workstation header points and enabling and disabling of print-out of operator changes.
 - c. System configuration and diagnostic capability shall include communications and peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points and application programs and initiation of diagnostics.
 - d. System text addition and change capability shall include English or native language descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages for alarms, run time and trouble condition.
 - e. Time and schedule change capability shall include time and date set, time and occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules and daylight savings time schedules.
 - f. Point related change capability shall include the following:
 - 1) System and point enable and disable.
 - 2) Run-time enable and disable.
 - 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and run time and to a fixed I/O value.
 - 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
 - g. Application program change capability shall include the following:
 - 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
 - 2) Programming changes.
 - 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.

4. Software shall allow operator to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to link them to energy optimization and management programs. Additions and modifications shall be online programmable using operator workstation, downloaded to other network devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point additions and associated program operation, database shall be uploaded and recorded on hard drive and disk for archived record.
5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of custom DDC programs. Software shall include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load capability.
6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic and relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, as a minimum, the following:
 - a. Proportional control (P).
 - b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
 - c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
 - d. Adaptive and intelligent self-learning control.
 - 1) Algorithm shall monitor loop response to output corrections and adjust loop response characteristics according to time constant changes imposed.
 - 2) Algorithm shall operate in a continuous self-learning manner and shall retain in memory a stored record of system dynamics so that on system shut down and restart, learning process starts from where it left off.
7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time delay, time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output, analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
10. Relational operators such as "Equal To," "Not Equal To," "Less Than," "Greater Than," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

F. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers, gateways and other network devices.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display shall include the following:
 - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
 - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
 - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
 - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.

6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.
7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
 - a. Class 1:
 - 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
 - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
 - 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
 - b. Class 2:
 - 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
 - 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
 - c. Class 3:
 - 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
 - 2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
 - 3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
 - 4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.
 - d. Class 4:
 - 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
 - 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.
9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.

G. Reports and Logs:

1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server for historical reporting.
4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
5. Reports and logs shall be stored on workstation and server hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.

6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.
- H. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.
1. All I/O: With current status and values.
 2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
 3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
 4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
 5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
 6. Logs:
 - a. Alarm history.
 - b. System messages.
 - c. System events.
 - d. Trends.
- I. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.
1. .
- J. Utility Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
1. Electric Report:
 - a. Include weekly report showing daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - b. Include monthly report showing the daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - c. Include annual report showing the monthly electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - d. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of submeters combined by load type, such as lighting, receptacles and HVAC equipment showing daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
 - e. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
 2. Natural Gas Report:
 - a. Include weekly report showing daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - b. Include monthly report showing the daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - c. Include annual report showing the monthly natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - d. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of submeters combined by load type, such as boilers and service water heaters showing daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand.
 - e. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand.
- K. Energy Reports: Prepare Project-specific daily, weekly, monthly and annual energy reports.

1. Prepare report for each purchased energy utility, indicating the following:
 - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
 - b. Consumption in units of measure commonly used to report specific utility consumption over time.
 - c. Gross area served by utility.
 - d. Consumption per unit area served using utility-specific unit of measure.
 - e. Cost per utility unit.
 - f. Utility cost per unit area.
 - g. Convert all utilities to a common energy consumption unit of measure and report for each utility.
 - h. Consumption per unit area using common unit of measure.

2. Prepare purchased energy utility report for each submetered area that indicates the following:
 - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
 - b. Gross area served.
 - c. Energy consumption by energy utility type.
 - d. Energy consumption per unit area by energy utility type.
 - e. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure.
 - f. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure per unit area.
 - g. Unit energy cost by energy utility type.
 - h. Energy cost by energy utility type.
 - i. Energy cost per unit area by energy utility type.
 - j. Total cost of all energy utilities.
 - k. Total cost of all energy utilities per unit area.

3. Prepare Project total purchased energy utility report that combines all purchased energy utilities and all areas served. Project total energy report shall indicate the following:
 - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
 - b. Gross area served.
 - c. Energy consumption by energy utility type.
 - d. Energy consumption per unit area by energy utility type.
 - e. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure.
 - f. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure per unit area.
 - g. Unit energy cost by energy utility type.
 - h. Energy cost by energy utility type.
 - i. Energy cost per unit area by energy utility type.
 - j. Total cost of all energy utilities.
 - k. Total cost of all energy utilities per unit area.

L. Weather Reports:

1. Include weekly report showing the following:
 - a. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
 - b. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.
 - c. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
 - d. Number of heating degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of 55 deg F.
 - e. Number of cooling degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of 65 deg F.

- f. Weekly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
- g. Daily minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
- h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
- i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.

2. Include monthly report showing the following:

- a. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
- b. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.
- c. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
- d. Number of heating degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of 55 deg F.
- e. Number of cooling degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of 65 deg F.
- f. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
- g. Daily minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
- h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
- i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.

M. Standard Trends:

- 1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
- 2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
- 3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching 75 of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
- 4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
- 5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
- 6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
- 7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.

N. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.

- 1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
- 2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server hard drives.
- 3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.

O. Programming Software:

- 1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
- 2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of operation.
- 3. Programming software shall be one of the following:
 - a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
 - 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent to control sequence in a flowchart.

- 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values and logical results of each function block.
- b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions, conditions, requirements and constraints.
- c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
4. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be inherent with programming software or as a separate product.

P. Database Management Software:

1. Where a separate SQL database is used for information storage, DDC system shall include database management software that separates database monitoring and managing functions by supporting multiple separate windows.
2. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication including ability to access data for use outside of DDC system applications.
3. Database management function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm, event, and audit for the following database management actions:
 - a. Backup.
 - b. Purge.
 - c. Restore.
4. Database management software shall support the following:
 - a. Statistics: Display database server information and trend, alarm, event, and audit information on database.
 - b. Maintenance: Include method of purging records from trend, alarm, event and audit databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup before purging, selecting database, and allowing for retention of a selected number of day's data.
 - c. Backup: Include means to create a database backup file and select a storage location.
 - d. Restore: Include a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring operator to have proper security level.
5. Database management software shall include information of current database activity, including the following:
 - a. Ready.
 - b. Purging record from a database.
 - c. Action failed.
 - d. Refreshing statistics.
 - e. Restoring database.
 - f. Shrinking a database.
 - g. Backing up a database.
 - h. Resetting Internet information services.
 - i. Starting network device manager.
 - j. Shutting down the network device manager.
 - k. Action successful.

6. Database management software monitoring functions shall continuously read database information once operator has logged on.
7. Include operator notification through on-screen pop-up display and e-mail message when database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
8. Monitoring settings window shall have the following sections:
 - a. Allow operator to set and review scan intervals and start times.
 - b. E-mail: Allow operator to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be delivered when a warning or an alarm is generated.
 - c. Warning: Allow operator to define warning limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
 - d. Alarm: Allow operator to define alarm limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
 - e. Database Login: Protect system from unauthorized database manipulation by creating a read access and a write access for each of trend, alarm, event and audit databases as well as operator proper security access to restore a database.
9. Monitoring settings taskbar shall include the following informational icons:
 - a. Normal: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that all databases are within their limits.
 - b. Warning: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their warning limit.
 - c. Alarm: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their alarm limit.

2.11 OFFICE APPLICATION SOFTWARE

- A. Include current version of office application software at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Office application software package shall include multiple separate applications and use a common platform for all applications, similar to Microsoft's "Office Professional."
 1. Database.
 2. E-mail.
 3. Presentation.
 4. Publisher.
 5. Spreadsheet.
 6. Word processing.

2.12 MAINTENANCE MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

- A. Scope:
 1. Include complete and functional software-driven maintenance management system. Software shall perform scheduling of preventive maintenance and generation of work orders, for mechanical and electrical equipment and systems.
 2. Work orders shall be automatically generated from alarm conditions, run time, and calendar time. Each work order generated shall list parts, tools, craftspeople, and define task to be performed.
 3. Work order generated shall be used to schedule a repair or preventive maintenance routine.

4. Work order shall be used to track completion of work, parts used and total cost of repair.
5. A database shall include an inventory tracking system. Work orders generated shall automatically update inventory database to show quantity of tools, repair parts and expendables used for a work order.
6. Work orders and preventive maintenance schedules shall be printed on a dedicated printer assigned solely to maintenance management function.

B. Additional Hardware Requirements:

1. Maintenance management software shall not require additional hardware, except for an additional printer that is dedicated to maintenance management.
2. Maintenance management software shall be integrated into DDC system.

C. Software Requirements:

1. From main menu of maintenance management system, it shall be possible through selection of icons to penetrate to individual functions described below.
2. Work Orders:
 - a. Automatically generate work orders initiated from alarm conditions, accumulated run time or calendar time. Work orders generated shall specify a particular task to be accomplished including the labor, material and tools needed to accomplish work.
 - b. Include at least two of the following types of work orders:
 - 1) Corrective and emergency maintenance work orders shall be generated for a specific job or repair for emergency, breakdown, or scheduled work.
 - 2) Preventive maintenance that are used on a periodic basis to generate preventive maintenance work orders.
 - c. Include the following functions:
 - 1) Work Order Tracking: Perform every function related to processing work orders including creating, approving and initiating work orders, checking their status history and closing or reworking them when appropriate.
 - 2) Work Requests: Report any problems that require corrective maintenance activity generated by dispatchers and those people designated to request work orders.
 - 3) Quick Reporting: Report work done on an open work order or a small job.
 - 4) Work Manager: Specify the type of labor to be applied to a specific work order at specific times. It shall include the capability to dispatch one or more laborers to top-priority jobs on as-needed basis and to interrupt work in progress to reassign labor to higher priority tasks.
 - d. Reports:
 - 1) Daily Maintenance Schedule by Supervisor: List a schedule of open work orders for a specified date by supervisor.
 - 2) Equipment Cost Roll-up Report: Include a roll-up of equipment costs incurred since the date the report was last run.
 - 3) Delinquent Work Order Report: List open work orders whose target completion date is earlier than the date the report is run.
 - 4) Employee Job Assignments: List labor codes that have job assignments for the specified date.

- 5) Daily Work Order Assignment: List work orders that have labor assignments for the specified date.
- 6) Estimated versus Actual Work Order Costs: List a cost summary of outstanding work orders.
- 7) Open Work Orders Report: List open work orders for locations and equipment.

3. Inventory:

- a. Include an inventory tracking system to keep track of stocked, non-stocked and special-order items.
- b. Link inventory tracking to database and when items are consumed, as noted on a work order issued by system, inventory of stocked items shall be automatically updated.
- c. Include the following functions:
 - 1) Inventory Control: Enter, display, and update information on each inventory item. It shall allow viewing of master inventory records that are independent of storeroom locations or item/location records. Include a screen that lists inventory transactions that move items in or out of inventory or from one storeroom location to another. Minimum information tracked shall include the following:
 - a) Vendors supply items.
 - b) Item balances, including the bin and lot level for each storeroom location.
 - c) Alternative items.
 - 2) Issues and Transfers: Issue stock directly from inventory, with or without a work order. When transfer of stock from one location to another location occurs, provide appropriate adjustments in stock balance record. Include a trace record of stock transfers from one storeroom to another.
 - 3) Item Assembly Structures: Include modeling of equipment with inventory items and building of equipment and location hierarchies.
 - 4) Metered Material Usage:
 - a) Track usage by a piece of equipment.
 - b) Record against a standing work order for a selected piece of equipment.
 - c) Material usage transaction shall be written for each item of material used and be provided as an input to calculation for per unit material consumption report for a piece of equipment.
- d. Reports:
 - 1) Inventory Analysis Report: List for a given storeroom location, inventory items analysis information that allows quick identification of which inventory items represent greatest monetary investment for dollar value and rate of turnover.
 - 2) Inventory Cycle Count Report: List for a specified storeroom, inventory items that are due to be cycle-counted, based on cycle-count frequency and last count date.
 - 3) Economic Order Quantity Report: For a given storeroom location, display optimum economic ordering quantity for items in selected results set.

- 4) Inventory Pick Report: A pick list, by work order for items needed to be pulled from a designated storeroom's inventory for work orders having a target start date of specified date.
- 5) Suggested Order Report: List inventory items in selected results set that are due to be recorded, for a specified storeroom location, based on the following calculation: Suggest a reorder if current balance minus reserve quantity plus on-order quantity is less than reorder point.
- 6) Reorder Point Report: List selected set of items and optimum minimum level to have in stock based on demand, lead delivery time and a reserve safety stock.
- 7) Inventory Valuation Report: Gives an accounting of cost of current inventory, for inventory records in a designated storeroom location.
- 8) Item Order Status: Lists items on order.
- 9) List of Expired Items: Lists expired lot items in a storeroom. Report shall include item number, description, expiration date, bin number, lot number, manufacturer lot number, and quantity of expired items in that lot and bin.
- 10) Item Availability at All Locations: Lists alternative storeroom locations for selected items.
- 11) Where Used Report: List equipment on which item is recorded as being used.

4. Equipment:

- a. Include equipment and location records; establish relationships between equipment, between locations, and between equipment and locations; track maintenance costs; and enter and review meter readings.
- b. Include the following functions:
 - 1) Equipment: Store equipment numbers and corresponding information including equipment class, location, vendor, up/down status and maintenance costs for each piece of equipment. Include building of equipment assemblies. Equipment assemblies hierarchical ordering shall be provided for arrangement of buildings, departments, equipment and sub-assemblies.
 - 2) Operating Locations: Facilitate creation of records for operating locations of equipment, and track equipment that is used in multiple locations. In addition, allow hierarchical organization of equipment operating in facility by means of grouping equipment locations into areas of responsibility.
 - 3) Failure Codes: Develop and display failure hierarchies to acquire an accurate history of types of failures that affect equipment and operating locations.
 - 4) Condition Monitoring: Display time related or limit measurements recorded for a piece of equipment. It shall be possible to generate work orders from this screen and to take immediate action on problem conditions.
- c. Reports:
 - 1) Availability Statistic by Location: List equipment availability by location over a user-specified time period.
 - 2) Equipment Failure Summary: List total number of failures by problem code for a piece of equipment for a specified time period.
 - 3) Detailed Equipment Failure Report by Equipment: List of failure reports for the current piece of equipment for a specified time period.
 - 4) Equipment Hierarchy Report: List of equipment.
 - 5) Equipment History Graphs: Include a graphical report in histogram format that displays equipment breakdown history over a specified period.

- 6) Equipment Measurement Report: Tabular listing and description of each measurement point for a piece of equipment and the history of measurements taken for that point.
- 7) Maintenance Cost by Equipment: List of transactions costs for elected equipment in the specified date range.
- 8) Failure Count by Equipment: Graphically report the number of failures for each piece of equipment showing number of failures for each piece of equipment over a specified time period, occurrence of each problem code within set of failures and failures by problem code.
- 9) Failure Analysis Graphs: Graphically report number of failures for each piece of equipment over a specified time period, number of occurrences of each problem code within set of failures and failures by problem code.
- 10) Failure Code Hierarchy Report: List of failure codes in each level of the failure hierarchy.
- 11) Location Failure Summary: A summary for each selected location of failures reported and any hierarchy level locations for specified time period.
- 12) Failure Summary by Location: A summary of failures for the selected location and their subordinate locations that are part of the hierarchical system.
- 13) Detailed Failure Report by Location: List all failures for selected location and its subordinate locations that are part of a hierarchical system.
- 14) Maintenance Cost by System: List of total costs reported in a given date range for locations in selected hierarchical system.
- 15) Location Hierarchy Report: Lists member locations of a hierarchical system displayed in hierarchical fashion.

5. Purchasing:

- a. Include preparation and generation of purchase requisitions and purchase orders; to report receipt of both items and services, match invoices with purchase orders and receipts and define and convert foreign currencies.
- b. Include the following functions:
 - 1) Purchase Requisition: Create and process purchase requisitions for items and services.
 - 2) Purchase Orders: Create and process purchase orders for items and services from scratch or from purchase requisitions. Record receipts of items and services.
 - 3) Invoices: Include functionality to match purchase orders with invoices and receipts. It shall also be possible to match a service receipt to an invoice. Project for entering of an invoice for bills that do not require purchase orders or receipts.
 - 4) Currency Management: Define currencies and specify exchange rates. Include preparation of purchase requisitions and purchase orders in currency of vendor, while tracking costs in systems base currency.
- c. Reports:
 - 1) Invoice Approval Report: Include an approval form for entered invoices.
 - 2) Inventory Receipts Register: List purchase orders and inventory received for the user-specified time frame.
 - 3) Direct Purchase Back-Order Report: List of items ordered as a direct purchase not received by the required delivery date.
 - 4) Standard Purchase Order: A printing of primary purchase order with vendors shipping information, and items purchased.

- 5) Purchase Order Status Report: List of purchase orders whose status has changed during a certain time period.
 - 6) Standard Purchase Requisition: A printing of primary purchase requisition, including vendor name and shipping information.
6. Job Plans:
- a. Include creation of a detailed description of work to be performed by a work order. The job plan shall contain operations, procedures and list of estimated material, labor and tools required for work.
7. Labor:
- a. Store information on employees, contractors, and crafts and include the following functions:
 - 1) Labor: Create, modify and view employee records. Employee records shall contain pay rate, overtime worked, overtime refused, specials skills and certifications.
 - 2) Crafts: Create, modify and view craftspeople records.
 - 3) Labor Reporting: Report labor usage by employee or craft externally from the work orders module.
 - b. Reports:
 - 1) Employee Attendance Analysis: List of planned attendance, actual attendance, vacation and sick time in hours as a percentage of planned attendance for selected employees for specified time period.
 - 2) Labor Productivity Analysis: List of actual labor hours by labor report category showing each by percentage.
 - 3) Labor Availability versus Commitments by Crafts: A graphical report that details available labor hours versus committed work order hours by craft and day.
8. Calendars:
- a. Establish calendar records indicating working time for equipment, location, craft, and labor records.
9. Resources:
- a. Include entry and retrieval of data associated with resources required to maintain facility and to include the following functions:
 - 1) Companies: Establish and update data on vendors and other companies.
 - 2) Tools: Create and maintain information on the tools used on jobs. The information contained within this module shall be available to job plans and work orders.
 - 3) Service Contracts: Specify information on service contracts with vendors or manufacturers.
10. Custom Applications:

- a. Include creation of customized database tables and application screens that supplement functions specified.

11. Setup:

- a. Include configuration of database, security and setup applications.
- b. Perform the following functions:
 - 1) Reports and Other Applications: Register reports and other applications for use within system.
 - 2) Documents: Enter, track and link information from Drawings to equipment and inventory items.
 - 3) Chart of Accounts: Add or modify accounts; set up financial periods; enter inventory accounts, company accounts, and resource recovery accounts; and define tax codes and rates.
 - 4) Signature Security: Establish each user's access rights to modules, applications, screens and options.
 - 5) Database Configuration: Customize database, including adjusting field lengths and modifying data types.
 - 6) Application Setup: Change position of icons and menu items on the main menu screen.
 - 7) Application Launching: Allow for connecting of third-party applications to data fields and push buttons.

12. Utilities:

- a. Include utilities module that allows system administrator to customize system and to maintain database.
- b. Include the following functions:
 - 1) Interactive SQL: Include access to database for database management functions of import/export and backup.
 - 2) Edit Windows: Display a dialog box to customize an application.
 - 3) Archive Data: Remove records from database and store them for future reference.

D. Documentation:

- 1. Include complete documentation for the system consisting of a User Manual and Systems Administrator Guide.
- 2. User Manual shall describe how to use each application module and screen with step-by-step instructions detailing entry and retrieval of data for functions specified.
- 3. Include a step-by-step description of how each report is defined and retrieved.
- 4. Bind documentation and clearly title it indicating volume number and use.

2.13 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS

- A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard option, for integration via a single communication cable. BACnet-controlled plant equipment includes, but is not limited to, boilers, chillers and variable-speed drives.

- B. Include gateways to connect BACnet to legacy systems, existing non-BACnet devices, and existing non-BACnet DDC-controlled equipment, only when specifically requested and approved by Owner.
- C. Include with each gateway an interoperability schedule showing each point or event on legacy side that BACnet "client" will read, and each parameter that BACnet network will write to. Describe this interoperability of BACnet services, or BIBBs, defined in ASHRAE 135, Annex K.
- D. Gateway Minimum Requirements:
 - 1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
 - 2. Write to all writeable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
 - 3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols) translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet and vice versa.
 - 4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property, Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management Communication Control BIBBs according to ASHRAE 135.
 - 5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway communications.
 - 6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media and the ability to modify, download, backup, and restore gateway configuration.

2.14 ASHRAE 135 PROTOCOL ANALYZER

- A. Analyzer and required cables and fittings for connection to ASHRAE 135 network.
- B. Analyzer shall include the following minimum capabilities:
 - 1. Capture and store to a file data traffic on all network levels.
 - 2. Measure bandwidth usage.
 - 3. Filtering options with ability to ignore select traffic.

2.15 DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.
- E. Environment Requirements:
 - 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
 - 2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.
- F. Power and Noise Immunity:
1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
 2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches of enclosure.
- G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:
1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
 - a. Network Controllers: 50 percent.
 - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 60 percent.
 - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 70percent.
 2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:
 - a. Monitoring and control.
 - b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
 - c. Alarm management.
 - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
 - e. Maintenance applications.
 - f. Operator interfaces.
 - g. Monitoring of manual overrides.
- H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:
1. Network Controllers:
 - a. 20 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Two.
 - 2) AOs: Two.
 - 3) BIs: Three.
 - 4) BOs: Three.
 2. Programmable Application Controllers:
 - a. 20 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Two.
 - 2) AOs: Two.
 - 3) BIs: Three.
 - 4) BOs: Three.
 3. Application-Specific Controllers:

- a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
- b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: One.
 - 2) AOs: One.
 - 3) BIs: One.
 - 4) BOs: One >.

I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:

- 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
- 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
- 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
- 4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.

J. Input and Output Point Interface:

- 1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application and application-specific controllers.
- 2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
- 3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.
- 4. AIs:
 - a. AIs shall include monitoring of low-voltage (zero- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA) and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
 - b. AIs shall be compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters installed.
 - c. Controller AIs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 - d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection shall be provided for each AI.
 - e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 - f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from zero to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10000 ohms.
- 5. AOs:
 - a. Controller AOs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 - b. Output signals shall have a range of 4 to 20 mA dc or zero- to 10-V dc as required to include proper control of output device.
 - c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 - d. AOs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
- 6. BIs:
 - a. Controller BIs shall accept contact closures and shall ignore transients of less than 5-ms duration.
 - b. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180-V ac peak.

- c. BIs shall include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against effects of contact bounce and noise.
 - d. BIs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
 - e. Pulse accumulation input points shall comply with all requirements of BIs and accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Buffer shall be provided to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator shall accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value shall be reset to zero on operator's command.
7. BOs:
- a. Controller BOs shall include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices.
 - 1) Relay contact closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression shall be provided on all output lines to limit transients to non-damaging levels. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
 - 2) Triac outputs shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
 - b. BOs shall include for two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-width modulation control.
 - c. BOs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
 - d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point floating-type electronic actuators without feedback.
 - e. Limit use of three-point floating devices to VAV terminal unit control applications, and other applications indicated on Drawings. Control algorithms shall operate actuator to one end of its stroke once every 24 hours for verification of operator tracking.

2.16 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

A. General Network Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system Level one network.
2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable application and application-specific controllers.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation or mobile device.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
 - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.17 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation or mobile device.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.

b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.18 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.

C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation. Connection shall extend to port on space temperature sensor that is connected to controller.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

2.19 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

A. General Controller Software Requirements:

1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
2. I/O points shall be identified by up to 30-character point name and up to 16 -character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.

B. Security:

1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
 2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
 3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
 4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.
- C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
1. Weekly Schedule:
 - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
 - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
 - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
 - d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
 2. Exception Schedules:
 - a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
 - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
 3. Holiday Schedules:
 - a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
 - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
 - c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
 2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
 3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
 2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
 2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- G. Alarm Reporting:
1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.

2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
 3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.
- H. Remote Communication:
1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.
- I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:
1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
 2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
 3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
 - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
 - b. Reset space temperature set points.
 - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
 4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
 5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
 6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
 - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
 - b. Changes in demand intervals.
 - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
 - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
 - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
 - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
 - g. Shed and restore priority.
 7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and annual basis:
 - a. Total electric consumption.
 - b. Peak demand.
 - c. Date and time of peak demand.
 - d. Daily peak demand.
- J. Maintenance Management: System shall monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.
- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.

L. Control Loops:

1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:

- a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
- b. Proportional control.
- c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
- d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
 - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
 - 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
 - 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.
- e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).

M. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.

N. Energy Calculations:

1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60 minutes).
3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-window average with that used by utility.

O. Anti-Short Cycling:

1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.

P. On and Off Control with Differential:

1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.

Q. Run-Time Totalization:

1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI [and BO]points.
2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.

2.20 ENCLOSURES

A. General Enclosure Requirements:

1. House each controller and associated control accessories in a single enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers.
2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
4. Equip doors of enclosures housing controllers and components with analog or digital displays with windows to allow visual observation of displays without opening enclosure door.
5. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall or freestanding support stand as indicated.
6. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door.

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect pneumatic, electric, and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than 20 percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
12. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch-high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least 25 percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.

4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
5. Include temperature-controlled cooling within the enclosure for applications where ventilation fans cannot maintain inside temperature of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
6. Where required by application, include humidity-controlled electric dehumidifier or cooling to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum relative humidity of product with most stringent requirement and to prevent surface condensation within enclosure.

D. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1:

- 1.
2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 50 or UL 50E.
3. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than:
 - a. Enclosure size less than 24 in.: 0.053 in. thick.
 - b. Enclosure size 24 in. and larger: 0.067 in. thick.
4. Finish enclosure inside and out with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Interior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
5. Hinged door full size of front face of enclosure and supported using:
 - a. Enclosures sizes less than 36 in. tall: Multiple butt hinges.
 - b. Enclosures sizes 36 in. tall and larger: Continuous piano hinges.
6. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Size less than 24 in.: Solid or Perforated steel, 0.053 in. thick.
 - b. Size 24 in. and larger: Solid aluminum, 0.10 in. or steel, 0.093 in. thick.
7. Internal panel mounting hardware, grounding hardware and sealing washers.
8. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
9. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

E. Wall Mounted NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:

1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
3. Where recessed enclosures are indicated, include enclosures with face flange for flush mounting.
4. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
5. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 60 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
6. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 36 inches tall by 60 inches wide.
7. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than the following:
 - a. Enclosure size less than 24 in.: 0.053 in. thick.
 - b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: 0.067 inch thick.

8. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Interior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
9. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
 - a. Sizes through 24 Inches Tall: Two hinges.
 - b. Sizes between 24 Inches through 48 Inches Tall: Three hinges.
 - c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches Tall: Four hinges.
10. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width access.
 - a. Single-door enclosures 48 inches and taller, and all double-door enclosures, with three-point (top, middle and bottom) latch system.
11. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Size less than 24 in.: Solid or Perforated steel, 0.053 in. thick.
 - b. Size 24 in. and larger: Solid aluminum, 0.10 in. or steel, 0.093 in. thick.
12. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
13. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
14. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

F. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 4X SS:

1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
3. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
4. Construct enclosure of Type 304 stainless steel, not less than the following:
 - a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: 0.053 inch thick.
 - b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: 0.067 inch thick.
5. Outside body and door of enclosure with brushed No. 4 finish.
6. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
 - a. Sizes through 24 Inches Tall: Two hinges.
 - b. Sizes between 24 Inches through 48 Inches Tall: Three hinges.
 - c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches Tall: Four hinges.
7. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using continuous piano hinge full length of door.
8. Doors fitted with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with single, heavy-duty, liquid-tight Type 316 stainless-steel handle with integral locking mechanism.

9. Removable internal panel shall be 0.093-inch solid steel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
10. Internal panel mounting studs and hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
11. Install corrosion-resistant polyester vent drain in a stainless-steel sleeve at the bottom of enclosure.
12. Include enclosure with stainless-steel mounting brackets.

G. Freestanding, NEMA 250, Type 1:

1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
3. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face.
4. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 84 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
5. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 84 inches tall by 72 inches wide.
6. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than 0.067 inch thick.
7. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Interior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
8. Corner-formed flush door, full size of enclosure face, supported using four concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
9. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width access.
10. Doors with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with single heavy-duty handle and integral locking mechanism.
11. Removable back covers.
12. Removable solid steel internal panel, 0.093 inch thick, with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
13. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
14. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
15. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
16. Nominal 4-inch-tall integral lifting base, not less than 0.123 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment to mounting surface.
17. Each top end of enclosure fitted with lifting tabs, not less than 0.172 inch thick.
18. Internal rack-mount shelves and angles as required by application.

H. Freestanding, NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:

1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
3. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face.
4. Type 12 Enclosure Sizes:
 - a. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 90 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
 - b. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 90 inches tall by 72 inches wide.
5. Type 4 Enclosure Sizes:
 - a. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 72 inches tall by 36 inches wide.

6. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than 0.093 inch thick.
7. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Interior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
8. Corner-formed door with continuous perimeter oil-resistant gasket supported using continuous piano hinge full length of door.
9. Doors fitted with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with latching rod rollers and single, heavy-duty oil-tight handle with integral locking mechanism.
10. Removable solid steel internal panel, 0.093 inch thick, with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
11. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
12. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
13. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
14. Top of enclosure fitted with no fewer than two lifting eyes.
15. Internal rack-mount shelves and angles as required by application.

I. Accessories:

1. Electric Heater:
 - a. Aluminum housing with brushed finish.
 - b. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from zero to 100 deg F.
 - c. Capacity: 100, 200, 400, and 800 W as required by application.
 - d. Fan draws cool air from bottom of enclosure and passes air across thermostat and heating elements before being released into enclosure cavity. Heated air is discharged through the top of heater.
2. Ventilation Fans, Filtered Intake and Exhaust Grilles:
 - a. Number and size of fans, filters and grilles as required by application.
 - b. Compact cooling fans engineered for 50,000 hours of continuous operation without lubrication or service.
 - c. Fans capable of being installed on any surface and in any position within enclosure for spot cooling or air circulation.
 - d. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 32 to 140 deg F.
 - e. Airflow Capacity at Zero Pressure:
 - 1) 4-Inch Fan: 100 cfm.
 - 2) 6-Inch Fan: 240 cfm.
 - 3) 10-Inch Fan: 560 cfm.
 - f. Maximum operating temperature of 158 deg F.
 - g. 4-inch fan thermally protected and provided with permanently lubricated ball-bearings.
 - h. 6- and 10-inch fans with ball-bearing construction and split capacitor motors thermally protected to avoid premature failure.
 - i. Dynamically balanced impellers molded from polycarbonate material.
 - j. Fan furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.
 - k. Fan brackets, finger guards and mounting hardware provided with fans to complete installation.

- l. Removable Intake and Exhaust Grilles: ABS plastic or stainless steel of size to match fan size and suitable for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 enclosures.
 - m. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Washable foam or aluminum, of a size to match intake grille.
 - n. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 12 Enclosures: Disposable, of a size to match intake grille.
3. Air Conditioner:
- a. Electric-powered, self-contained air-conditioning unit specially designed for electrical enclosures to maintain temperature inside enclosure below ambient temperature outside enclosure.
 - b. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 60 to 120 deg F.
 - c. Enclosure side or top mounting with unit capacity as required by application.
 - d. Designed for closed-loop cooling with continuous operation in ambient environments up to 125 deg F.
 - e. HFC refrigerant.
 - f. Reusable and washable air filter.
 - g. High-performance, industrial-grade, and high-efficiency fans.
 - h. Furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.
 - i. Condensate management system with base pan side drain.
 - j. Mounting hardware, gaskets, mounting template and instruction manual furnished with unit.
 - k. Outdoor units equipped with head pressure control for low ambient operation, compressor heater, coated condenser coil and thermostat.
4. Thermoelectric Humidifier:
- a. ABS plastic enclosure.
 - b. Capacity of 8 oz. of water per 24 hours.
 - c. Built-in drain captures moisture and plastic hose directs moisture to outside enclosure through a drain.
 - d. Controlled to maintain enclosure relative humidity at an adjustable set point.
 - e. Unit power supply shall be internally wired to enclosure electrical power source.
5. Framed Fixed Window Kit for NEMA 250, Types 4, 4X, and 12 Enclosures:
- a. 0.25-inch-thick, scratch-resistant acrylic or polycarbonate window mounted in a metal frame matching adjacent door material.
 - b. Enclosure types, except NEMA 250 Type 1, shall have a continuous gasket material around perimeter of window and frame to provide watertight seal.
 - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
6. Frameless Fixed Window Kit for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures:
- a. 0.125-inch-thick, polycarbonate window mounted in enclosure door material.
 - b. Window attached to door with screw fasteners and continuous strip of high-strength double-sided tape around window perimeter.
 - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
7. Frame Fixed or Hinged Window Kit for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 Enclosures:
- a. 0.25-inch-thick, scratch-resistant acrylic or polycarbonate window mounted in a metal frame matching adjacent door material.

- b. Enclosure types, except NEMA 250 Type 1, shall have a continuous gasket material around perimeter of window and frame to provide watertight seal.
 - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
8. Bar handle with keyed cylinder lock set.

2.21 RELAYS

A. General-Purpose Relays:

- 1.
2. Relays shall be heavy duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be either double pole double throw (DPDT) or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with an eight-pin octal plug for DPDT relays and an 11-pin octal plug for three-pole double-throw relays.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
7. Relays shall have LED indication and a manual reset and push-to-test button.
8. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
 - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
 - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
 - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
 - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F.
9. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
10. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
11. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

B. Multifunction Time-Delay Relays:

- 1.
2. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 240-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be DPDT relay with up to eight programmable functions to provide on/off delay, interval and recycle timing functions.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with either an 8- or 11-pin octal plug.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a dust-tight cover.
7. Include knob and dial scale for setting delay time.
8. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Timing Ranges: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
 - d. Repeatability: Within 2 percent.
 - e. Recycle Time: 45 ms.

- f. Minimum Pulse Width Control: 50 ms.
 - g. Power Consumption: 5 VA or less at 120-V ac.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F.
9. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
 10. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
 11. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

C. Latching Relays:

- 1.
2. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be either DPDT or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with a multibladed plug.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
7. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
 - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
 - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
 - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
 - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F.
8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

D. Current Sensing Relay:

- 1.
2. Monitors ac current.
3. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
4. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
5. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
6. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
7. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
8. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.

E. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay:

- 1.
2. Description:
 - a. On-off control and status indication in a single device.

- b. LED status indication of activated relay and current trigger.
 - c. Closed-Open-Auto override switch located on the load side of the relay.
3. Performance:
- a. Ambient Temperature: Minus 30 to 140 deg F.
 - b. Voltage Rating: Single-phase loads rated for 300-V ac. Three-phase loads rated for 600-V ac.
4. Status Indication:
- a. Current Sensor: Integral sensing for single-phase loads up to 20 A and external solid or split sensing ring for three-phase loads up to 150 A.
 - b. Current Sensor Range: As required by application.
 - c. Current Set Point: Fixed or adjustable as required by application.
 - d. Current Sensor Output:
 - 1) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 30-V ac and dc and for 0.4 A.
 - 2) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 120-V ac and 1.0 A.
 - 3) Analog, zero- to 5- or 10-V dc.
 - 4) Analog, 4 to 20 mA, loop powered.
5. Relay: Single-pole double-throw, continuous-duty coil; rated for 10-million mechanical cycles.
6. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.22 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

A. Transformers:

- 1. Transformer shall be sized for the total connected load, plus an additional 25 percent of connected load.
- 2. Transformer shall have both primary and secondary fuses.

B. Power-Line Conditioner:

- 1. General Power-Line Conditioner Requirements:
 - a. Design to ensure maximum reliability, serviceability and performance.
 - b. Overall function of the power-line conditioner is to receive raw, polluted electrical power and purify it for use by electronic equipment. The power-line conditioner shall provide isolated, regulated, transient and noise-free sinusoidal power to loads served.
- 2. Standards: NRTL listed per UL 1012.
- 3. Performance:
 - a. Single phase, continuous, 100 percent duty rated KVA/KW capacity. Design to supply power for linear or nonlinear, high crest factor, resistive and reactive loads.
 - b. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2 percent or better with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 20 percent of nominal when system is loaded 100

percent. Use Variable Range Regulation to obtain improved line voltage regulation when operating under less than full load conditions.

- 1) At 75 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 35 percent of nominal.
 - 2) At 50 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 40 percent of nominal.
 - 3) At 25 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 45 percent of nominal.
- c. With input voltage distortion of up to 40 percent, limit the output voltage sine wave to a maximum harmonic content of 5 percent.
 - d. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2.5 percent when load (resistive) changes from zero percent to 100 percent to zero percent.
 - e. Output voltage returns to 95 percent of nominal level within two cycles and to 100 percent within three cycles when the output is taken from no load to full resistive load or vice-versa. Recovery from partial resistive load changes is corrected in a shorter period of time.
 - f. K Factor: 30, designed to operate with nonlinear, non-sinusoidal, high crest factor loads without overheating.
 - g. Input power factor within 0.95 approaching unity with load power factor as poor as 0.6.
 - h. Attenuate load-generated odd current harmonics 23 dB at the input.
 - i. Electrically isolate the primary from the secondary. Meet isolation criteria as defined in NFPA 70, Article 250-5D.
 - j. Lighting and Surge Protection: Compares to UL 1449 rating of 330 V when subjected to Category B3 (6000 V/3000 A) combination waveform as established by IEEE C62.41.
 - k. Common-mode noise attenuation of 140 dB.
 - l. Transverse-mode noise attenuation of 120 dB.
 - m. With loss of input power for up to 16.6 ms, the output sine wave remains at usable ac voltage levels.
 - n. Reliability of 200,000 hours' MTBF.
 - o. At full load, when measured at 1-m distance, audible noise is not to exceed 54 dB.
 - p. Approximately 92 percent efficient at full load.
4. Transformer Construction:
- a. Ferroresonant, dry type, convection cooled, 600V class. Transformer windings of Class H (220 deg C) insulated copper.
 - b. Use a Class H installation system throughout with operating temperatures not to exceed 150 deg C over a 40-deg C ambient temperature.
 - c. Configure transformer primary for multi-input voltage. Include input terminals for source conductors and ground.
 - d. Manufacture transformer core using M-6 grade, grain-oriented, stress-relieved transformer steel.
 - e. Configure transformer secondary in a 240/120-V split with a 208-V tap or straight 120 V, depending on power output size.
 - f. Electrically isolate the transformer secondary windings from the primary windings. Bond neutral conductor to cabinet enclosure and output neutral terminal.
 - g. Include interface terminals for output power hot, neutral and ground conductors.
 - h. Label leads, wires and terminals to correspond with circuit wiring diagram.
 - i. Vacuum impregnate transformer with epoxy resin.

5. Cabinet Construction:
 - a. Design for panel or floor mounting.
 - b. NEMA 250, Type 1, general-purpose, indoor enclosure.
 - c. Manufacture the cabinet from heavy gauge steel complying with UL 50.
 - d. Include a textured baked-on paint finish.

C. Transient Voltage Suppression and High-Frequency Noise Filter Unit:

1. The maximum continuous operating voltage shall be at least 125 percent.
2. The operating frequency range shall be 47 to 63 Hz.
3. Protection modes according to NEMA LS-1.
4. The rated single-pulse surge current capacity, for each mode of protection, shall be no less than the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 45,000 A.
 - b. Neutral to Ground: 45,000 A.
 - c. Line to Ground: 45,000 A.
 - d. Per Phase: 90,000 A.
5. Clamping voltages shall be in compliance with test and evaluation procedures defined in NEMA LS-1. Maximum clamping voltage shall be as follows:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 360 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 360 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 360 V.
6. Electromagnetic interference and RF interference noise rejection or attenuation values shall comply with test and evaluation procedures defined in NEMA LS-1.
 - a. Line to Neutral:
 - 1) 100 kHz: 42 dB.
 - 2) 1 MHz: 25 dB.
 - 3) 10 MHz: 21 dB.
 - 4) 100 MHz: 36 dB.
 - b. Line to Ground:
 - 1) 100 kHz: 16 dB.
 - 2) 1 MHz: 55 dB.
 - 3) 10 MHz: 81 dB.
 - 4) 100 MHz: 80 dB.
7. Unit shall have LED status indicator that extinguishes to indicate a failure.
8. Unit shall be listed by an NRTL as a transient voltage surge suppressor per UL 1449, and as an electromagnetic interference filter per UL 1283.
9. Unit shall not generate any appreciable magnetic field.
10. Unit shall not generate an audible noise.

D. DC Power Supply:

1. Plug-in style suitable for mating with a standard eight-pin octal socket. Include the power supply with a mating mounting socket.
2. Enclose circuitry in a housing.
3. Include both line and load regulation to ensure a stable output. To protect both the power supply and the load, power supply shall have an automatic current limiting circuit.
4. Performance:
 - a. Output voltage nominally 25-V dc within 5 percent.
 - b. Output current up to 100 mA.
 - c. Input voltage nominally 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Load regulation within 0.5 percent from zero- to 100-mA load.
 - e. Line regulation within 0.5 percent at a 100-mA load for a 10 percent line change.
 - f. Stability within 0.1 percent of rated volts for 24 hours after a 20-minute warmup.

2.23 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS FOR WORKSTATIONS

A. 250 through 1000 VA:

- 1.
2. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
3. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
 - a. Larger-capacity units shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
 - b. UPS shall provide five minutes of battery power.
4. Performance:
 - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120- or 230-V ac, compatible with field power source.
 - b. Load Power Factor Range (Crest Factor): 0.65 to 1.0.
 - c. Output Voltage: 101- to 132-V ac, while input voltage varies between 89 and 152-V ac.
 - d. On Battery Output Voltage: Sine wave.
 - e. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
 - f. Recharge time shall be a maximum of six hours to 90 percent capacity after full discharge to cutoff.
 - g. Transfer Time: 6 ms.
 - h. Surge Voltage Withstand Capacity: IEEE C62.41, Categories A and B; 6 kV/200 and 500 A; 100-kHz ringwave.
5. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
6. Unit with integral line-interactive, power condition topology to eliminate all power contaminants.
7. Include front panel with power switch and visual indication of power, battery, fault and temperature.
8. Unit shall include an audible alarm of faults and front panel silence feature.
9. Unit with four NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles.
10. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure) and connect the points to the DDC system.
11. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free. Battery replacement shall be front accessible by user without dropping load.
12. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets to the particular installation location.

B. 1000 through 3000 VA:

1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
 - a. Larger-capacity units, or multiple units, shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
 - b. UPS shall provide five minutes of battery power.
3. Performance:
 - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, plus 20 to minus 30 percent.
 - b. Power Factor: Minimum 0.97 at full load.
 - c. Output Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, within 3 percent, steady state with rated output current of 10.0 A, 30.0-A peak.
 - d. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
 - e. Recharge time shall be a maximum of eight hours to 90 percent capacity.
4. UPS bypass shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
5. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure) and connect the points to the DDC system.
6. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free.
7. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets or rack models installed on matching racks, as applicable to the particular installation location and space availability/configuration.

2.24 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.

1. Wire size shall be at least No. 16 AWG.
2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C according to UL 83.
4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
5. Furnish wire on spools.

B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 20 AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 20 AWG.
 2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
 3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
 4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
 5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC cable.
 6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
 7. Furnish wire on spools.
- D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.
1. Cable shall be balanced twisted pair.
 2. Comply with the following requirements and for balanced twisted pair cable described in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
 - a. Cable shall be plenum rated.
 - b. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.

2.25 RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

2.26 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pneumatic Pressure Gages:

1. Pressure gages shall a 1.5-inch-diameter face for pressures up through 30 psig and 2.5-inch-diameter face for greater pressures.
2. Include separate gages for branch pressure and main pressure lines.
3. White dial face with black printing.
4. Include 1-psig increment for scale ranges through 30 psig and 2-psig increment for larger ranges.
5. Accuracy: Within 1 percent of full-scale range.

- B. Pressure Electric Switches:

1. Diaphragm-operated snap acting switch.
2. Set point adjustable from 3 to 20 psig.
3. Differential adjustable from 2 to 6 psig.
4. Rated for resistance loads at 120-V ac.
5. Body and switch housing shall be metal.

- C. Damper Blade Limit Switches:

1. Sense positive open and/or closed position of the damper blades.
2. NEMA 250, Type 13, oil-tight construction.
3. Arrange for the mounting application.

4. Additional waterproof enclosure when required by its environment.
5. Arrange to prevent "over-center" operation.

D. I/P and E/P Transducers:

1. Commercial Grade:

- a.
- b. The transducer shall convert an AO signal to a stepped pneumatic signal. Unless otherwise required by the operating sequence, use a 3- to 15-psig pneumatic signal for pneumatic actuation.
- c. Construct the entire assembly so that shock and vibration will neither harm the transducer nor affect its accuracy.
- d. Transducer shall have auto/manual output switch, manual output control and an output pressure gage.
- e. Accuracy: Within 1.0 percent of the output span.
- f. Linearity: Within 0.5 percent of the output span.
- g. Output Capacity: Not less than 550 scim at 15 psig.
- h. Transducer shall have separate zero and span calibration adjustments.
- i. The transducer shall withstand up to 40 psig of supply pressure without damage.
- j. For use on only modulating pneumatic outputs that are associated with terminal units, including fan-coil units, VAV units, unit heaters and <Insert equipment>.

2. Industrial Grade:

- a.
- b. The transducer shall convert an AO signal to a proportional pneumatic signal. Unless otherwise required by the operating sequence, use a 3- to 15-psig pneumatic signal for pneumatic actuation. A stepped pneumatic signal is unacceptable.
- c. Construct the entire assembly so that shock and vibration will neither harm the transducer nor affect its accuracy.
- d. Suitable for operation in an ambient temperature range of minus 40 to 150 deg F.
- e. Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent of the output span.
- f. Linearity: Within 0.5 percent of the output span.
- g. Output Capacity: Not less than 5 scfm.
- h. Transducer shall have zero and span calibration adjustments.
- i. The transducer shall withstand up to 50 psig of supply pressure without damage.
- j. For use on all modulating pneumatic outputs, not requiring a commercial-grade transducer.

E. E/P Switch:

1. Construct the body of cast aluminum or brass; three pipe body (common, normally open, and normally closed).
2. Internal construction of steel, copper or brass.
3. Air Connections: Barb.
4. Rating of 30 psig when installed in systems below 25 psig and of 150 psig when installed in systems above 25 psig.
5. Include coil transient suppression.

F. Instrument Enclosures:

1. Include instrument enclosure for secondary protection to comply with requirements indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. NRTL listed and labeled to UL 50.
3. Sized to include at least 25 percent spare area on subpanel.
4. Instrument(s) mounted within enclosure on internal subpanel(s).
5. Enclosure face with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplate for each instrument within enclosure.
6. Enclosures housing pneumatic instruments shall include main pressure gage and a branch pressure gage for each pneumatic device, installed inside.
7. Enclosures housing multiple instruments shall route tubing and wiring within enclosure in a raceway having a continuous removable cover.
8. Enclosures larger than [12 inches] <Insert dimension> shall have a hinged full-size face cover.
9. Equip enclosure with lock and common key.

G. Manual Valves:

1. Needle Type:
 - a. PTFE packing.
 - b. Construct of brass for use with copper and polyethylene tubing and of stainless steel for use with stainless-steel tubing.
 - c. Aluminum T-bar handle.
 - d. Include tubing connections.
2. Ball Type:
 - a. Body: Bronze ASTM B 62 or ASTM B 61.
 - b. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - c. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - d. Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - e. Packing Ring: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Lever: Stainless steel with a vinyl grip.
 - g. 600 WOG.
 - h. Threaded end connections.

2.27 IDENTIFICATION

A. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:

1. Self-adhesive label bearing unique identification.
 - a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
2. Letter size shall be as follows:
 - a. Operator Workstations: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - b. Servers: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - c. Printers: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - d. DDC Controllers: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.

- e. Gateways: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - f. Repeaters: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - g. Enclosures: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - h. Electrical Power Devices: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
 - i. UPS units: Minimum of 0.5 inch high.
 - j. Accessories: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
 - k. Instruments: Minimum of 0.25 inch high.
 - l. Control Damper and Valve Actuators: Minimum of 0.25 inch> high.
3. Legend shall consist of white lettering on black background.
 4. Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer and shall be fastened with drive pins.
 5. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require additional identification.
- B. Valve Tags:
1. Brass tags and brass chains attached to valve.
 2. Tags shall be at least 1.5 inches in diameter.
 3. Include tag with unique valve identification indicating control influence such as flow, level, pressure, or temperature; followed by location of valve, and followed by three-digit sequential number. For example: TV-1.001.
 4. Valves with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.
- C. Raceway and Boxes:
1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic tag.
 3. For raceways housing pneumatic tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Instrument Air Tubing."
 4. For raceways housing air signal tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Air Signal Tubing."
- D. Equipment Warning Labels:
1. Self-adhesive label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
 2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.
 3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting means to OFF position before servicing."
 4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least 0.25 inch beyond white border.

2.28 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate the following according to industry standards for each product, and to verify DDC system reliability specified in performance requirements:
 - 1. DDC controllers.
 - 2. Gateways.
 - 3. Routers.
 - 4. Operator workstations.
- B. Product(s) and material(s) will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 - 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
 - 1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
 - 2. Equipment to Be Connected: Refer to Contract Drawings
- B. Communication Interface to Other Building Systems:
 - 1. DDC system shall have a communication interface with systems having a communication interface.
 - 2. Systems to Be Connected:

- a. Lighting controls specified in Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards."
- b. Fire-alarm system specified in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."
- c. Access controls specified in Section 281300 "Access Control System Software and Database Management."

3.03 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

- A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identified installers for field installation.
- B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. DDC control dampers, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "DDC Control Dampers."
 - 2. Airflow sensors and switches, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
 - 3. Pressure sensors, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
- C. Deliver the following to plumbing and HVAC piping installers for installation in piping. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. DDC control valves, which are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."
 - 2. Pipe-mounted flow meters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
 - 3. Pipe-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Flow meters are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Liquid temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 - 4. Tank-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments." Liquid temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 - 5. Pipe- and tank-mounted thermowells. Liquid thermowells are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."

3.04 CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- A. Deliver the following to air-handling unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to air-handling unit manufacturer.
 - 1. Programmable application or application-specific controller.
 - 2. Unit-mounted DDC control dampers and actuators, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
 - 3. Unit-mounted airflow sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
 - 4. Unit-mounted gas sensors and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.16 "Gas Instruments."
 - 5. Unit-mounted leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 230923.18 "Leak-Detection Instruments."
 - 6. Unit-mounted speed sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.24 "DDC Speed Instruments."

7. Unit-mounted pressure sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 8. Unit-mounted temperature sensors, switches and transmitters. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 9. Relays.
- B. Deliver the following to terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to terminal unit manufacturer.
1. Programmable application or application-specific controller.
 2. Electric damper actuator. Dampers actuators are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
 3. Unit-mounted flow and pressure sensors, transmitters and transducers. Flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 4. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 5. Relays.
- C. Deliver the following to fan-coil unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to fan-coil unit manufacturer.
1. Programmable application or application-specific controller.
 2. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 3. Flow and pressure switches. Air and liquid flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 4. Leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 230923.18 "Leak-Detection Instruments."
 5. Relays.

3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a <Insert value> force.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop Penetrations Made in Fire-Rated Assemblies: Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
 - 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
 - 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
 - 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.
 - 4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.
- I. Fastening Hardware:
 - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
 - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.
- K. Corrosive Environments:
 - 1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
 - b. Process exhaust-air streams.
 - 2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.06 WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

- A. Desktop Workstations Installation:
 - 1. Install workstation(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
 - 2. Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation components to a single duplex electrical power receptacle.
 - 3. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
 - 4. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
 - 5. Power each workstation through a dedicated UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to workstation.

B. Portable Workstations Installation:

1. Turn over portable workstations to Owner at Substantial Completion.
2. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.

C. Color Graphics Application:

1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's[and 'Engineer's review before creating graphic using graphics software.
5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's and Engineer's review and feedback.
7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

3.07 POT INSTALLATION

- A. Install two portable operator terminal(s).
- B. Turn over POTs to Owner at Substantial Completion.
- C. Install software on each POT and verify that software functions properly.

3.08 SERVER INSTALLATION

- A. Install one server at location directed by Owner.
- B. Install number of servers required to suit requirements indicated. Review Project requirements and indicate layout of proposed location in Shop Drawings.
- C. Install software indicated on server(s) and verify that software functions properly.
- D. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs, and historical database.
- E. Power servers through dedicated UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to server.

3.09 GATEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
- B. Test gateway to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.10 ROUTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install routers if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
- B. Test router to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.11 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Connect controllers to field power supply and to UPS units where indicated.
- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- E. Installation of Network Controllers:
 - 1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 - 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 - 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
 - 1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 - 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 - 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- G. Application-Specific Controllers:
 - 1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 - 2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS ROUTERS FOR OPERATOR INTERFACE

- A. Install wireless routers to achieve optimum performance and best possible coverage.
- B. Mount wireless routers in a protected location that is within 60 inches of floor and easily accessible by operators.
- C. Connect wireless routers to field power supply and to UPS units if network controllers are powered through UPS units.
- D. Install wireless router with latest version of applicable software and configure wireless router with WPA2 security and password protection. Create access password with not less than 12

characters consisting of letters and numbers and at least one special character. Document password in operations and maintenance manuals for reference by operators.

- E. Test and adjust wireless routers for proper operation with portable workstation and other wireless devices intended for use by operators.

3.13 ENCLOSURES INSTALLATION

- A. Install the following items in enclosures, to comply with indicated requirements:

1. Gateways.
2. Routers.
3. Controllers.
4. Electrical power devices.
5. UPS units.
6. Relays.
7. Accessories.
8. Instruments.
9. Actuators

- B. Attach wall-mounted enclosures to wall using the following types of steel struts:

1. For NEMA 250, [Type 1] <Insert type> Enclosures: Use [painted steel] [galvanized-steel] [corrosion-resistant-coated steel] strut and hardware.
2. For NEMA 250, [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type> Enclosures and Enclosures Located Outdoors: Use stainless-steel strut and hardware.
3. Install plastic caps on exposed cut edges of strut.

- C. Align top or bottom of adjacent enclosures.

- D. Install floor-mounted enclosures located on concrete housekeeping pads. Attach enclosure legs using stainless-steel anchors.

- E. Install continuous and fully accessible wireways to connect conduit, wire, and cable to multiple adjacent enclosures. Wireway used for application shall have protection equal to NEMA 250 rating of connected enclosures.

3.14 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.

- B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.

- C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.

- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.

- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

3.15 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.
- B. Install self-adhesive labels with unique identification on face for each of the following:
 - 1. Operator workstation.
 - 2. Server.
 - 3. Printer.
 - 4. Gateway.
 - 5. Router.
 - 6. Protocol analyzer.
 - 7. DDC controller.
 - 8. Enclosure.
 - 9. Electrical power device.
 - 10. UPS unit.
 - 11. Accessory.
- C. Install unique instrument identification on face of each instrument connected to a DDC controller.
- D. Install unique identification on face of each control [damper] [and] [valve] actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install identification on face of access door directly below.
- G. Warning Labels and Signs:
 - 1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
 - 2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

3.16 NETWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Install optical fiber cable when connecting between the following network devices and when located in different buildings on campus.:
 - 1. Operator workstations.
 - 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
 - 3. Network controllers.
- B. Install balanced twisted pair or optical fiber cable when connecting between the following network devices located in same building:
 - 1. Operator workstations.

2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
 3. Network controllers.
- C. Install balanced twisted pair or copper cable (as required by equipment) when connecting between the following:
1. Gateways.
 2. Gateways and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
 3. Routers.
 4. Routers and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
 5. Network controllers and programmable application controllers.
 6. Programmable application controllers.
 7. Programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
 8. Application-specific controllers.
- D. Install cable in continuous raceway.
1. Where indicated on Drawings, cable trays may be used for copper cable in lieu of conduit.

3.17 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

- A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Networks:
1. MAC Address:
 - a. Every network device shall have an assigned and documented MAC address unique to its network.
 - b. Ethernet Networks: Document MAC address assigned at its creation.
 - c. ARCNET or MS/TP networks: Assign from 00 to 64.
 2. Network Numbering:
 - a. Assign unique numbers to each new network.
 - b. Provide ability for changing network number through device switches or operator interface.
 - c. DDC system, with all possible connected LANs, can contain up to 65,534 unique networks.
 3. Device Object Identifier Property Number:
 - a. Assign unique device object identifier property numbers or device instances for each device network.
 - b. Provide for future modification of device instance number by device switches or operator interface.
 - c. LAN shall support up to 4,194,302 unique devices.
 4. Device Object Name Property Text:
 - a. Device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign unique device "Object Name" property names with plain-English descriptive names for each device.

- 1) Example 1: Device object name for device controlling boiler plant at Building 1000 would be "HW System B1000."
 - 2) Example 2: Device object name for a VAV terminal unit controller could be "VAV unit 102".
5. Object Name Property Text for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign object name properties with plain-English names descriptive of application.
 - 1) Example 1: "Zone 1 Temperature."
 - 2) Example 2 "Fan Start and Stop."
6. Object Identifier Property Number for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Assign object identifier property numbers according to [Drawings] [or] [tables] indicated.
 - b. If not indicated, object identifier property numbers may be assigned at Installer's discretion but must be approved by Owner in advance, be documented and be unique for like object types within device.

3.18 CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Comply with installation requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
2. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling."
3. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
4. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
 - a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
5. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
 - a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
 - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
6. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
7. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
8. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
9. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
10. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.

- C. Conduit Installation:
 - 1. Comply with Section "260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control-voltage conductors.
 - 2. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for balanced twisted pair cabling and optical fiber installation.

3.19 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."
- B. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling."

3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Testing:
 - 1. Perform preinstallation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as necessary.
 - 2. Preinstallation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
 - 3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting tests. Submit test results for Project record.
 - 4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum, final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.
 - 5. Test Equipment: Use an optical fiber time domain reflectometer for testing of length and optical connectivity.
 - 6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

3.21 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material and support.
- E. For pneumatic products, verify that air supply for each product is properly installed.
- F. Control Damper Checkout:
 - 1. For pneumatic dampers, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to damper actuator and positioner.
 - 2. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
 - 3. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
 - 4. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 5. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
 - 6. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
 - 7. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.
- G. Control Valve Checkout:
 - 1. For pneumatic valves, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to valve actuator and positioner.
 - 2. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
 - 3. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 4. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
 - 5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
 - 6. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
 - 7. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.
- H. Instrument Checkout:
 - 1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
 - 2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
 - 4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
 - 5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
 - 6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
 - 7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
 - 8. For temperature instruments:
 - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
 - b. Verify length and insertion.

3.22 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:
 - 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 - 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 - 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- K. Digital Signals:
 - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
 - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- L. Control Dampers:
 - 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
 - 2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
 - 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
 - 4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- M. Control Valves:

1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

Q. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

3.23 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

A. Verify power supply.

1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.

B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.

C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

3.24 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

A. Testing:

1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.

7. Operate each analog point at the following:
 - a. Upper quarter of range.
 - b. Lower quarter of range.
 - c. At midpoint of range.
8. Exercise each binary point.
9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

3.25 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
 1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
 2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
 3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
 4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
 5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
 6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
 7. Required surge protection is installed.
 8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
 9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
 10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
 11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
 12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
 13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
 14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
 19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
 20. View trend data where applicable.
 21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
 22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
 23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
 24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
 25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphics are created.

26. Record Drawings are completed.

E. Test Plan:

1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.
4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.
6. Submit test plan documentation 10 business days before start of tests.

F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
 - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
 - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
 - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
 - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
 - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
 - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.
5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
 - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.

G. DDC System Response Time Test:

1. Simulate HLC.
 - a. Heavy load shall be an occurrence of 50 percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, and [50] <Insert number> percent

of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.

2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
3. Measure with a timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
 - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
 - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
 - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than two seconds after the initiation (time zero) of HLC.
 - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
 - c. Compliance with response times specified.
6. Prepare and submit a report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.

H. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:

1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

3.26 DDC SYSTEM WIRELESS NETWORK VERIFICATION

- A. DDC system Installer shall design wireless DDC system networks to comply with performance requirements indicated.
- B. Installer shall verify wireless network performance through field testing and shall document results in a field test report.
- C. Testing and verification of all wireless devices shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 1. Speed.
 2. Online status.
 3. Signal strength.

3.27 FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Architect and Construction Manager when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
 1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.
 2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.

3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
 4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by Architect and Construction Manager shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
 - C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
 - D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.
 - E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals and begin procedures indicated in "Extended Operation Test" Article when no deficiencies are reported.
 - F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
 3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Accuracy and calibration of 10 I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
 - b. HVAC equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to 10 I/O points shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers to discover problems with operation.
 - c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
 - d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and failed positions.
 - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and operator workstations.
 - f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
 - g. For up to three HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including different modes of operations indicated. Show that control loops are stable and operating at set points and respond to changes in set point of 20 percent or more.
 - h. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading and downloading of control programs.
 - i. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
 - j. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.

- k. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
- l. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
- m. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
- n. Online user guide and help functions.
- o. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four quadrants of split screen.
- p. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
- q. For Each Network and Programmable Application Controller:
 - 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
 - 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller with a portable workstation and mobile device. Show that maintenance personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical literature.
 - 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable standalone operation using default values or other method for values normally read over network.
 - 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power source.
 - 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
 - 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
 - 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- r. For Each Operator Workstation:
 - 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
 - 2) Graphics are complete.
 - 3) UPS unit, if applicable, operates.
- s. Communications and Interoperability: Demonstrate proper interoperability of data sharing, alarm and event management, trending, scheduling, and device and network management. Use ASHRAE 135 protocol analyzer to help identify devices, view network traffic, and verify interoperability. Requirements must be met even if only one manufacturer's equipment is installed.
 - 1) Data Presentation: On each operator workstation, demonstrate graphic display capabilities.
 - 2) Reading of Any Property: Demonstrate ability to read and display any used readable object property of any device on network.
 - 3) Set Point and Parameter Modifications: Show ability to modify set points and tuning parameters indicated.
 - 4) Peer-to-Peer Data Exchange: Network devices are installed and configured to perform without need for operator intervention to implement Project sequence of operation and to share global data.
 - 5) Alarm and Event Management: Alarms and events are installed and prioritized according to Owner. Demonstrate that time delays and other logic are set up to avoid nuisance tripping. Show that operators with sufficient privileges are permitted.
 - 6) Schedule Lists: Schedules are configured for start and stop, mode change, occupant overrides, and night setback as defined in sequence of operations.

- 7) Schedule Display and Modification: Ability to display any schedule with start and stop times for calendar year. Show that all calendar entries and schedules are modifiable from any connected operator workstation by an operator with sufficient privilege.
- 8) Archival Storage of Data: Data archiving is handled by operator workstation and server and local trend archiving and display is accomplished.
- 9) Modification of Trend Log Object Parameters: Operator with sufficient privilege can change logged data points, sampling rate, and trend duration.
- 10) Device and Network Management:
 - a) Display of network device status.
 - b) Display of BACnet Object Information.
 - c) Silencing devices transmitting erroneous data.
 - d) Time synchronization.
 - e) Remote device re-initialization.
 - f) Backup and restore network device programming and master database(s).
 - g) Configuration management of routers.

3.28 EXTENDED OPERATION TEST

- A. Extended operation test is intended to simulate normal operation of DDC system by Owner.
- B. Operate DDC system for an operating period of 14 consecutive calendar days following Substantial Completion. Coordinate exact start date of testing with Owner.
- C. Provide an operator familiar with DDC system installed to man an operator workstation during eight hours of each normal business day occurring during operating period.
- D. During operating period, DDC system shall demonstrate correct operation and accuracy of monitored and controlled points as well as operation capabilities of sequences, logs, trends, reports, specialized control algorithms, diagnostics, and other software indicated.
 1. Correct defects of hardware and software when it occurs.
- E. Definition of Failures and Downtime during Operating Period:
 1. Failed I/O point constituting downtime is an I/O point failing to perform its intended function consistently and a point physically failed due to hardware and software.
 2. Downtime is when any I/O point in DDC system is unable to fulfill its' required function.
 3. Downtime shall be calculated as elapsed time between a detected point failure as confirmed by an operator and time point is restored to service.
 4. Maximum time interval allowed between DDC system detection of failure occurrence and operator confirmation shall be 0.5 hours.
 5. Downtime shall be logged in hours to nearest 0.1 hour.
 6. Power outages shall not count as downtime but shall suspend test hours unless systems are provided with UPS and served through a backup power source.
 7. Hardware or software failures caused by power outages shall count as downtime.
- F. During operating period, log downtime and operational problems are encountered.
 1. Identify source of problem.
 2. Provide written description of corrective action taken.

3. Record duration of downtime.
4. Maintain log showing the following:
 - a. Time of occurrence.
 - b. Description of each occurrence and pertinent written comments for reviewer to understand scope and extent of occurrence.
 - c. Downtime for each failed I/O point.
 - d. Running total of downtime and total time of I/O point after each problem has been restored.
5. Log shall be available to Owner for review at any time.

G. For DDC system to pass extended operation test, total downtime shall not exceed [1] [2] <Insert number> percent of total point-hours during operating period.

1. Failure to comply with minimum requirements of passing at end of operating period indicated shall require that operating period be extended one consecutive day at a time until DDC system passes requirement.

H. Evaluation of DDC system passing test shall be based on the following calculation:

1. Downtime shall be counted on a point-hour basis where total number of DDC system point-hours is equal to total number of I/O points in DDC system multiplied by total number of hours during operating period.
2. One point-hour of downtime is one I/O point down for one hour. Three points down for five hours is a total of 15 point-hours of downtime. Four points down for one-half hour is 2 point-hours of downtime.
3. Example Calculation: Maximum allowable downtime for 30-day test when DDC system has 1000 total I/O points (combined analog and binary) and has passing score of 1 percent downtime is computed by 30 days x 24 h/day x 1000 points x 1 percent equals 7200 point-hours of maximum allowable downtime.

I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.29 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.30 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.31 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for one year.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.32 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.
- B. Extent of Training:
 - 1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
 - 2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
 - 3. Minimum Training Requirements:
 - a. Provide not less than five days of training total.
 - b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
 - c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than two separate training classes.
 - d. Each training class shall be not less than one consecutive day(s).

END OF SECTION 230923

SECTION 23 1123 NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions", "Special Requirements" and "General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.02 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.03 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
 - 4. Valves.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig or less.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. All Submittals shall be coordinated and scheduled in accordance with the DGS bidding documents.
- B. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
- C. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- E. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- F. Welding certificates.
- G. Field quality-control reports.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
 - 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
 - 6. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
 - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - b. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.

- e. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - f. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11. (PE site distribution piping installed by PECO, PVC conduit for PECO PE site distribution piping and warning tape installed by site contractor)
1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
 - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
 - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
 - d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
 - b. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
 - c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
 - d. Factory-connected anode.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - 1) Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - 2) Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - 3) Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - b. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Acetal collets.
 - e. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.

6. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - 1) Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - 2) Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - 3) Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - b. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
 - c. PE body tube.
 - d. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - e. Acetal collets.
 - f. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
7. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
 - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - b. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - e. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

2.02 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Appliance Flexible Connectors (gas furnace on AHU-1 only):
 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
 2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
 3. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
 4. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
 5. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 6. Maximum Length: 36 inches.
- B. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.03 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.04 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Lee Brass Company.
 - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - b. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - c. Xomox Corporation; a Crane company.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - b. Milliken Valve Company.
 - c. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.

5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

H. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following or approved equal:
 - a. Kerotest Manufacturing Corp.
 - b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - c. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: PE.
3. Ball: PE.
4. Stem: Acetal.
5. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
7. CWP Rating: 80 psig.
8. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
10. Include plastic valve extension.
11. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

I. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.05 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

C. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly.
4. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or PE bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
5. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
6. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

2.06 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the 2006 International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with the 2006 International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.03 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the 2006 International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 26 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- E. Install pressure gage tap upstream and downstream from each service regulator.

3.04 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the 2015 International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
 - 3. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.

4. Prohibited Locations:

- a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage taps upstream and downstream from each line regulator.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.05 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Service-meter and regulator assembly installation is by PECO.
- B. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.
- C. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies.

3.06 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance. Install ahead of flexible gas connector on AHU-1.

3.07 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:

- 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.

2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

G. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.08 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

3.09 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Equipment" for identification. Paint interior concealed and exposed natural gas piping yellow and install pipe identification labels every 15 feet.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.11 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel semigloss.
 - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (semigloss).
 - d. Color: yellow.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the 2006 International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.14 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
 - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

3.15 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

3.16 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of] the following:
 - 1. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Bronze plug valve.

2. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.

E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231123

SECTION 23 2113 HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Condenser-water piping.
4. Makeup-water piping.
5. Condensate-drain piping.
6. Blowdown-drain piping.
7. Air-vent piping.
8. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
2. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
3. Pressure-seal fittings.
4. Chemical treatment.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Other building services.
3. Structural members.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 125 psigat 200 deg F
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 125 psigat 200 deg F.
3. Condenser-Water Piping: 125 psigat 150 deg F.
4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F
5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F
6. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F
7. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F
8. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L
- B. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Viega
 - b. Victaulic
 - 2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg For use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- C. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Viega
 - b. Victaulic
 - 2. Housing: Copper.
 - 3. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
 - 4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
 - 5. Minimum 200-psigorking-pressure rating at 250 deg F Verify that fittings in "Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option" Paragraph below are available for pipe sizes required for Project.
- D. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Viega
 - b. Victaulic
- E. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.03 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Viega
 - b. Victaulic
 - 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM or nitrile gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Viega
 - b. Victaulic
 - 2. Housing: Steel.
 - 3. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
 - 4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
 - 5. Minimum 300-psigorking-pressure rating at 230 deg F Non-reinforced, welded, in-branch connections weaken a main pipeline; reinforcement is necessary unless wall thickness of both mains and branches is sufficient to sustain pressure required in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.04 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
 - D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
 - E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
 - F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
 - G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.05 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.

- e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F 150 psig
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
- a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig 225 deg F
 - d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Refer to Contract Drawings.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

- P. Install valves according to Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.03 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 6 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.04 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.

3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.

E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.05 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.

2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
 - H. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
 - I. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
 - J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.06 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.

2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 23 2116
HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:
 - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 - 2. Chilled-water piping.
 - 3. Condenser-water piping.
 - 4. Makeup-water piping.
 - 5. Condensate-drain piping.
 - 6. Blowdown-drain piping.
 - 7. Air-vent piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
 - 2. Air-control devices.
 - 3. Hydronic specialties.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 3. Condenser-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
 4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
 5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
 6. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
 7. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
 8. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
- B. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.02 VALVES

- A. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
- B. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps
 - b. Bell & Gossett
 - c. Flow Design, Inc.
 - d. TA Hydronics
 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 4. Plug: Resin.
 5. Seat: PTFE.
 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- C. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
- D. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps

- b. Bell & Gossett
- c. Flow Design, Inc.
- d. TA Hydronics

- 2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
- 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
- 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
- 5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
- 6. Seat: PTFE.
- 7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- 8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
- 9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
- 10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
- 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

E. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Flow Design, Inc.
 - b. TA Hydronics
- 2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
- 3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
- 4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
- 5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
- 6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
- 7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
- 8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig
- 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

2.03 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Air vents aid in system filling. Air removal after initial startup is accomplished by air separator or boiler dip-tube.
- B. Leakage from automatic air vents may cause damage to ceilings and other finished surfaces. Manual air vents may be preferred over automatic air vents in finished spaces.
- C. Manual Air Vents:
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps
 - c. Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - 2. Body: Bronze.
 - 3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.

4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

D. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps
 - c. Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

E. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps
 - c. Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

F. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps
 - c. Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.

4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

G. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps
 - c. Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).

H. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps
 - c. Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.04 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

C. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

D. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

- E. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.02 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Retain one of first two paragraphs below. Leakage from automatic air vents may cause damage to ceilings and other finished surfaces. Air vents aid in system filling. Air removal after initial startup is accomplished by air separator or boiler dip-tube. Manual air vents may be a better solution.
- B. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Retain one of first two paragraphs below according to air separator specified in Part 2.
- E. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- F. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- G. Retain one of two paragraphs below.
- H. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
 - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- I. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 23 2123 HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Separately coupled, vertically mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
 - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
 - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:

- 1) Aurora Pumps
- 2) Bell and Gossett
- 3) Paco Pumps
- 4) Taco Pumps

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally.

C. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to equipment schedules on plans.

D. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and flanged connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Pump Bearings: re-greaseable ball bearings.

E. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing with integral pump support.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.02 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, DOUBLE-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:

- 1) Aurora Pumps
- 2) Bell and Gossett
- 3) Paco Pumps

4) Taco Pumps

- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to equipment schedules on plans.
- D. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Vertically split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and ASME B16.1, Class 250 flanges. Casing supports shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping.]
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. For pumps not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and EPR elastomer bellows and gasket.
 - 5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
 - 6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
- E. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor. EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.
- F. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
- G. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
- H. Motor: Single speed, secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.03 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser:
 - 1. Angle pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
 - 3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
 - 4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.

5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 230500 Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods”
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

3.03 ALIGNMENT

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install [check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install Y-type strainer or suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.05 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.

7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.06 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION 232123

SECTION 23 2300 REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
 - 3. Refrigerants.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty.
 - 1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - b. Solenoid valves.
 - c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - d. Filter dryers.
 - e. Strainers.
 - f. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
 - 2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
 - 3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 4. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.07 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.

4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.03 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
3. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
4. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
5. Seat: Nylon.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
3. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
4. Operator: Rising stem.
5. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
6. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.

- d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - e. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
 3. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
 4. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
 5. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
 6. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
 7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 8. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
 9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- D. Service Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - e. Paul Mueller Company.
 - f. Refrigeration Sales, Inc.
 2. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 3. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. End Connections: Copper spring.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - e. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 3. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. End Connections: Threaded.
 6. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24 115 208-V ac coil.
 7. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 3. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. End Connections: Threaded.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Paul Mueller Company.
 2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 5. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 6. Suction Temperature: Compatible with equipment.
 7. Superheat: Compatible with equipment.
 8. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
 9. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 10. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.
- H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
 2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
 3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 5. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.

6. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
7. Equalizer: Compatible with equipment.
8. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter and 24 115 208-V ac coil.
9. End Connections: Socket.
10. Set Pressure.
11. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
12. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
13. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

I. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
3. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
4. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Forged brass.

3. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
4. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
5. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
6. End Connections: Socket or flare.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
3. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
4. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina charcoal.
5. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
6. End Connections: Socket.
7. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
8. Maximum Pressure Loss: Compatible with equipment.
9. Rated Flow: Compatible with equipment.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
3. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
4. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina charcoal.
5. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
6. End Connections: Socket.
7. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
8. Maximum Pressure Loss: Compatible with equipment.
9. Rated Flow: Compatible with equipment.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

N. Mufflers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Danfoss Inc.
 - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - c. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

O. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
2. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
4. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
5. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
6. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Emerson Climate Technologies.
 - b. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
 - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.04 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-407C: Difluoromethane/Pentafluoroethane/1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:

- a. Arkema Inc.
 - b. DuPont Fluorochemicals Div.
 - c. Genetron Refrigerants; Honeywell International Inc.
 - d. Mexichem Fluor Inc.
- B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. Arkema Inc.
 - b. DuPont Fluorochemicals Div.
 - c. Genetron Refrigerants; Honeywell International Inc.
 - d. Mexichem Fluor Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless packed-angle valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless packed-angle valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.03 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.04 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.07 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core or replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 23 2500 HVAC WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:
 - 1. Manual and automatic chemical-feed equipment and controls.
 - 2. Chemical treatment test equipment.
 - 3. Chemicals.
 - 4. HVAC makeup-water softeners.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. EEPROM: Electrically erasable, programmable read-only memory.
- B. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- C. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
 - 1. Bypass feeders.
 - 2. Water meters.
 - 3. Inhibitor injection timers.
 - 4. pH controllers.
 - 5. TSS controllers.
 - 6. Biocide feeder timers.
 - 7. Chemical solution tanks.
 - 8. Injection pumps.
 - 9. Ozone generators.
 - 10. UV-irradiation units.
 - 11. Chemical test equipment.
 - 12. Chemical material safety data sheets.
 - 13. Water softeners.
 - 14. RO units.
 - 15. Multimedia filters.
 - 16. Self-cleaning strainers.

17. Replaceable bag- or cartridge-type filters.
18. Centrifugal separators.

B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems.

C. 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1. Include diagrams for power and control wiring.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Other Informational Submittals:

1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, water softeners and water filtration units and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or to the environment.

B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water and glycol cooling, shall have the following water qualities:
1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
 2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
 3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
 5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
 6. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
 7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 9. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
- D. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.
1. pH: Maintain a value within [7 to 8] <Insert range>.
 2. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within [100 to 300] <Insert range> ppm.
 3. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within [100 to 300] <Insert range> ppm.

2.02 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
1. Capacity: 5 gal.
 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.

2.03 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TSS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers; and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.
- B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.

2.04 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- B. Water Softener Chemicals:
 - 1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb of salt.
 - 2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are unacceptable.

2.05 HVAC MAKEUP-WATER SOFTENER

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. 3M
 - 2. CSI Water Treatment Systems
 - 3. Marlo Incorporated
 - 4. Parker Boiler
 - 5. Pentair, Inc.
- B. Description: Twin mineral tanks and one brine tank, factory mounted on skid.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Fabricate supports and attachments to tanks with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- E. Mineral Tanks:
 - 1. Fabricate and label steel filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Fabricate and label Fiber Reinforced Plastic filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, if indicated.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
 - 4. Wetted Components: Suitable for water temperatures from 40 to at least 100 deg F.
 - 5. Freeboard: 50 percent, minimum, for backwash expansion above the normal resin bed level.
 - 6. Support Legs or Skirt: Constructed of structural steel, welded, or bonded to tank before testing and labeling.
 - 7. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized on exterior and interior of tank after fabrication.
 - 8. Upper Distribution System: Single-point type, fabricated from galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
 - 9. Lower Distribution System: Hub and radial-arm or header-lateral type; fabricated from PVC pipe and fittings with individual, fine-slotted, nonclogging polyethylene strainers; arranged for even-flow distribution through resin bed.

- F. Controls: Automatic; factory mounted on mineral tanks and factory wired.
 - 1. Adjustable duration of regeneration steps.
 - 2. Push-button start and complete manual operation override.
 - 3. Pointer on pilot-control valve shall indicate cycle of operation.
 - 4. Means of manual operation of pilot-control valve if power fails.
 - 5. Main Operating Valves: Industrial, automatic, multiport, diaphragm type with the following features:
 - a. Slow opening and closing, nonslam operation.
 - b. Diaphragm guiding on full perimeter from fully open to fully closed.
 - c. Isolated dissimilar metals within valve.
 - d. Self-adjusting, internal, automatic brine injector that draws brine and rinses at constant rate independent of pressure.
 - e. Float-operated brine valve to automatically measure the correct amount of brine to the softener and refill with fresh water.
 - f. Sampling cocks for soft water.
 - 6. Flow Control: Automatic control of backwash and flush rates over variations in operating pressures that do not require field adjustments. Equip mineral tanks with automatic-reset-head water meter that electrically activates cycle controller to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons and that automatically resets after regeneration to preset total in gallons for next service run. Include alternator to regenerate one mineral tank with the other in service.
- G. Brine Tank: Combination measuring and wet-salt storing system.
 - 1. Tank and Cover Material: Fiberglass a minimum of 3/16 inch thick; or molded polyethylene a minimum of 3/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Brine Valve: Float operated and plastic fitted for automatic control of brine withdrawn and freshwater refill.
 - 3. Size: Large enough for at least four regenerations at full salting.
- H. Factory-Installed Accessories:
 - 1. Piping, valves, tubing, and drains.
 - 2. Sampling cocks.
 - 3. Main-operating-valve position indicators.
 - 4. Water meters.
- I. Water Test Kit: Include in wall-mounting enclosure for water softener.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install water-testing equipment on wall near water-chemical-application equipment.
- D. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- E. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- F. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating and glycol cooling, and equipped with the following:
 - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
 - 3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
 - 5. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.
- G. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for steam boiler and steam condensate systems and include the following:
 - 1. Install makeup-water softener.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
 - 3. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
 - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval when contacts close at water meter in makeup-water supply connection.
 - 4. Install test equipment and furnish test-kit to Owner.
 - 5. Install RO unit for makeup water.
 - 6. Install TSS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
 - a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TSS concentration.
 - 7. Install inhibitor injection timer with injection pumps and solution tanks.
 - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup-water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into main steam supply header.

3.03 WATER SOFTENER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water softener equipment on concrete bases level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install seismic restraints for tanks and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install brine lines and fittings furnished by equipment manufacturer but not factory installed.
- D. Prepare mineral-tank distribution system and underbed for minerals and place specified mineral into mineral tanks.
- E. Install water-testing sets on wall adjacent to water softeners.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. See Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.

2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC system's startup procedures.
 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Sample boiler water at one-week intervals after boiler startup for a period of five weeks, and prepare test report advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article for each required characteristic. Sample boiler water at four-week intervals following the testing noted above to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section.
- F. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
 2. Steam System: ASTM D 1066.
 3. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
 4. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
 5. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.06 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion, scale formation, and biological growth for cooling, chilled-water piping and heating, hot-water piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:
1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
 2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
 3. Periodic field service and consultation.
 4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
 5. Laboratory technical analysis.
 6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232500

SECTION 23 2923
VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CE: Conformance Europeene (European Compliance).
- B. CPT: Control power transformer.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- E. NC: Normally closed.
- F. NO: Normally open.
- G. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- H. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- I. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- J. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.
 - 1. Include dimensions and finishes for VFCs.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.

1. Include mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Required working clearances and required area above and around VFCs.
 2. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
 3. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
 4. Indicate field measurements.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For each VFC, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Certificate of compliance.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based, and their installation requirements.
- D. Product Certificates: For each VFC from manufacturer.
- E. Harmonic Analysis Report: Provide Project-specific calculations and manufacturer's statement of compliance with IEEE 519.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 01700 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and motor-circuit protector trip settings.
 - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.

- c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
- d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
- e. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.
- f. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 - 3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
 - 5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. ABB, Inc.
- B. Danfoss, Inc.
- C. Yasakawa Electric America, Inc.
- D. Or approved equal.

2.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General Requirements for VFCs:
 - 1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508A UL 508C.
- B. Application: variable torque.
- C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
 - 1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors, as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."
 - 2. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
 - 3. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
- E. All VFDs must be equipped with bypass.
- F. Input (460VAC) 480VAC +/- 10%, # phase, 48-63Hz.
- G. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range or higher; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
- H. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - 1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 10 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
 - 2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 percent.

3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
 4. Minimum Efficiency: 97 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 98 percent under any load or speed condition.
 6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 65 kA.
 7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
 8. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
 9. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet.
 10. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.
 11. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
 12. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
 13. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 14. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 1 to 300 or better +0.5 kHz.
 15. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.
 16. Must have the option to operate multiple motors with single VFD, to start, accelerate and decelerate all motors simultaneously.
- I. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 32 bit, isolated from all power circuits.
- J. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.
1. Signal: Electrical.
- K. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 1000 seconds.
 4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 1000 seconds.
 5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 125 percent of maximum rating.
- L. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
 2. Surge Suppression: Field-mounted surge suppressors complying with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," UL 1449 SPD, Type 2.
 3. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
 4. Under- and overvoltage trips.
 5. Inverter overcurrent trips.
 6. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
 7. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
 8. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 9. Loss-of-phase protection and to detect a phase imbalance.
 10. Current sensors to detect and report phase loss to the motor.
 11. Reverse-phase protection.
 12. Short-circuit protection.

- 13. Motor-overtemperature fault.
- 14. No flow detection

- M. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

- N. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.

- O. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.

- P. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

- Q. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

- R. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: UL 489, thermal magnetic circuit breaker with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
 - 1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
 - 2. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
 - 3. Auxiliary Contacts: NO or NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
 - 4. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
 - 5. NC & NO alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

2.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: VFCs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7. The designated VFCs shall be tested and certified by an NRTL as meeting the ICC-ES AC 156 test procedure requirements.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.04 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

- A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
 - 1. Power on.
 - 2. Run.
 - 3. Overvoltage.
 - 4. Line fault.
 - 5. Overcurrent.
 - 6. External fault.

- B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
 2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
 - a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.
- C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
 2. Running log of total power versus time.
 3. Total run time.
 4. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.
- D. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:
1. Output frequency (Hz).
 2. Motor speed (rpm).
 3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 4. Motor current (amperes).
 5. Motor torque (percent).
 6. Fault or alarming status (code).
 7. PID feedback signal (percent).
 8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
 9. Set point frequency (Hz).
 10. Motor output voltage (V ac).
- E. Control Signal Interfaces:
1. Electric Input Signal Interface:
 - a. A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA dc.
 - b. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
 2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the direct digital control system for HVAC or other control systems:
 - a. 0- to 10-V dc.
 - b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
 - c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
 - d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
 3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA dc), which can be configured for any of the following:
 - a. Output frequency (Hz).
 - b. Output current (load).

- c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
 - d. Motor torque (percent).
 - e. Motor speed (rpm).
 - f. Set point frequency (Hz).
4. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
- a. Motor running.
 - b. Set point speed reached.
 - c. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
 - d. PID high- or low-speed limits reached.
- F. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.
1. Number of Loops: One
- G. Interface with Direct Digital Control System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software shall interface with Direct Digital Control system for HVAC to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports. VFC settings shall be retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.
1. Hardwired Points:
- a. Monitoring: On-off status.
 - b. Control: On-off operation.
2. Communication Interface: Comply with ASHRAE 135. Communication shall interface with direct digital control system for HVAC to remotely control and monitor lighting from a direct digital control system for HVAC operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through the direct digital control system for HVAC.

2.05 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING

- A. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the manufacturer's harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit total demand (harmonic current) distortion and total harmonic voltage demand at the defined point of common coupling to meet IEEE 519 recommendations.
- B. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

2.06 BYPASS SYSTEMS

- A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.

- B. Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or automatic-control system feedback.

- C. Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
 - 1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
 - 2. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, NEMA-rated contactors.
 - 3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

- D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) type.
 - 1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
 - 2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
 - 3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
 - 4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.
 - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
 - b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
 - 5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
 - a. CPT Spare Capacity: 100 VA.
 - b. Solid-State Overload Relays:
 - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
 - 2) Sensors in each phase.
 - 3) Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
 - 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
 - 5) Analog communication module.
 - c. NO isolated overload alarm contact.
 - d. External overload, reset push button.

2.07 OPTIONAL FEATURES

- A. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications when overload protection activates.
 - 1. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
 - 2. Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.
 - 3. Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
- B. Damper control circuit with end-of-travel feedback capability.
- C. Sleep Function: Senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal and stops the motor. On an increase in speed-command signal deviation, VFC resumes normal operation.
- D. Motor Preheat Function: Preheats motor when idle to prevent moisture accumulation in the motor.
- E. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.
- F. Remote digital operator kit.
- G. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.

2.08 ENCLOSURES

- A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Plenum Rating: UL 1995; NRTL certification label on enclosure, clearly identifying VFC as "Plenum Rated."

2.09 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Push Buttons: Covered.
 - 2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
 - 3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.
 - 4. Stop and Lockout Push-Button Station: Momentary-break, push-button station with a factory-applied hasp arranged so padlock can be used to lock push button in depressed position with control circuit open.
- B. Reversible NC/NO bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).
- C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

- D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
 - 1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.
- E. Supplemental Digital Meters:
 - 1. Elapsed-time meter.
 - 2. Kilowatt meter.
 - 3. Kilowatt-hour meter.
- F. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks; unwired.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.
 - 1. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor.
 - 2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.
- B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.
- E. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed.
- F. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors are installed.
- G. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
- H. Comply with NECA 1.

3.03 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices and facility's central-control system.
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control devices where applicable.
 - 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
 - 2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor-overload protectors.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
 - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

- B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
 - 2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
 - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify-Engineer and Owner before starting the motor(s).
 - 5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
 - 6. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.06 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.07 ADJUSTING

- A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Engineer and Owner before increasing settings.
- D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.
- E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

3.08 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
- B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.09 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 232923

SECTION 23 3113 METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 1. Adhesives.
 2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations for selecting hangers and supports.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 - 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.02 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. Lindab Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.03 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.04 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 2. Tape Width: 3 inches.
 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.05 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- D. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.02 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
 - 3. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
 - 4. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
 - 7. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
 - 8. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 9. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.03 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.

4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.05 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Engineer from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Engineer from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Engineer from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated duct. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Coils and related components.
4. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
5. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.

6. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, or duct accessories.
4. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
5. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
6. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.08 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.09 DUCT SCHEDULE:

- A. See Contract Drawings

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 23 3300
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Smoke dampers.
7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
8. Turning vanes.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233723 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.

- d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
- e. Duct security bars.
- f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

233300 - 2

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

- C. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.03 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 2. Nailor Industries
 - 3. Pottorf
 - 4. Ruskin Company
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inchthick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, off-center pivoted, or end pivoted, maximum 6-inchwidth, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material: Stainless steel.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
 - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 - 3. Electric actuators.
 - 4. Chain pulls.
 - 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.

- a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gauge minimum.
 - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
- 6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
 - 7. Screen Material: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
 - 8. Screen Type: Bird.
 - 9. 90-degree stops.

2.04 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 2. Nailor Industries
 - 3. Pottorf
 - 4. Ruskin Company
- B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades:
 - 1. Multiple, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum.
 - 2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
 - 3. Action: Parallel.
 - 4. Balance: Gravity.
 - 5. Eccentrically pivoted, Off-center pivoted, End pivoted.
- G. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- H. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
- I. Tie Bars and Brackets:
 - 1. Material: Aluminum.
 - 2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.
- J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- K. Bearings: Synthetic, Stainless steel, or Bronze.
- L. Accessories:
 - 1. Flange on intake.
 - 2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

2.05 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - b. Nailor Industries
 - c. Pottorf
 - d. Ruskin Company
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve, or Stainless-steel sleeve].
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - b. Nailor Industries
 - c. Pottorf
 - d. Ruskin Company
- 2.
3. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:

- a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
 - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
7. Blade Axles: Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.
8. Bearings:
- a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

2.06 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
- 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 2. Nailor Industries
 - 3. Pottorf
 - 4. Ruskin Company
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
- 1. Hat shaped.
 - 2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
 - 3. Mitered and welded corners.
- D. Blades:
- 1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
 - 2. Parallel- and opposed -blade design.
 - 3. Galvanized-steel, Stainless steel, or Aluminum.
 - 4. AirfoilA
 - 5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene .
 - 6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; stainless steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
- 1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve, or Stainless-steel sleeve.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.07 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Pottorf
 4. Ruskin Company
- B. If both types of dampers are required in "Type" Paragraph below, indicate location of each on Drawings.
- C. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- D. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- E. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- F. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- H. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- I. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- J. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- K. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.08 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Pottorf
 4. Ruskin Company
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel, with welded interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable device and switch package, factory installed, rated.
- G. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- I. Leakage: Class I.
- J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone caulking; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- M. Damper Motors: two-position action.
- N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
 - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
 - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
 - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
 - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
 - 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- O. Accessories:
 - 1. Auxiliary switches for signaling, fan control or position indication.
 - 2. Test and reset switches, damper mounted.

2.09 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. DuroDyne Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Ductmate, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Double wall.
- F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. DuroDyne Industries,, Inc.
 - 2. Ductmate, Inc.
 - 3. Ruskin Company
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.

- b. Access Doors up to [18 Inches] Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
- c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.11 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. DuroDyne Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Ductmate, Inc.
 - 3. Ruskin Company
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. DuroDyne Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Ductmate, Inc.
 - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 - 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
 - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- J. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- N. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- O. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 23 3416 CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: For each product.

- 1. Airfoil centrifugal fans.
- 2. Plenum fans.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

- 1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
- 2. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
- 3. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
- 4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
- 5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
- 6. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- 4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
- 5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AMCA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with AMCA performance requirements and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
 - 2. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- B. Unusual Service Conditions:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: 70 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: 0 feet above sea level.
 - c. Humidity: 63 deg F.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 AIRFOIL CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Carnes Company
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 3. Loren Cook Company
 - 4. Penn Barry
- B. Description:
 - 1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
 - 2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
 - 3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.
- C. Housings:
 - 1. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
 - 2. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.

3. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
4. Spun inlet cone with flange.
5. Outlet flange.

D. Airfoil Wheels:

1. Single-width-single-inlet and double-width-double-inlet construction with curved inlet flange.
2. Heavy backplate.
3. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

E. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

F. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L10 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L10 at 120,000 hours.

G. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
1. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L10 at 120,000 hours.
2. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L10 at 120,000 hours.

H. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.5.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

I. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Variable Inlet Vanes: With blades supported at both ends with two permanently lubricated bearings of same material as housing. Variable mechanism terminating in single control lever with control shaft for double-width fans.
5. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with parallel blades constructed of two plates formed around and to shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
6. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
7. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
8. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
9. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
10. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.

2.03 PLENUM FANS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Carnes Company
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Loren Cook Company
 4. Penn Barry
- B. Description:
 1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
 2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
 3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.
- C. Airfoil Wheels:
 1. Single-width-single-inlet construction with smooth-curved inlet flange.
 2. Heavy backplate.
 3. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
 4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- D. Shafts:
 1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
 2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
 3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- E. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L10 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L10 at 120,000 hours.

F. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings:

1. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L10 at 120,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L10 at 120,000 hours.

G. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.5.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements of diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

H. Accessories:

1. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
2. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
3. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

2.04 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Section, Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install and secure centrifugal fans on curbs, and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction.
- F. Unit Support: Install centrifugal fans level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction.
- G. Isolation Curb Support: Install centrifugal fans on isolation curbs and install flexible duct connectors and vibration isolation and seismic-control devices.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for flexible duct connectors.
 - 2. Comply with requirements in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
- H. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- I. Label fans according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Adjust belt tension.
 - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 9. See Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing For HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
 - 10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.04 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233416

SECTION 23 3423 HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Axial roof ventilators.
 - 2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
 - 3. Centrifugal ventilators - roof downblast.
 - 4. Centrifugal ventilators - roof upblast and sidewall.
 - 5. Sidewall propeller fans.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 8. Prefabricated roof curbs.
 - 9. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For fans, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Unusual Service Conditions
 - 1. Base fan-performance ratings on the following:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: 70 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: 0 feet above sea level.
 - c. Humidity: 63 deg F.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

2.02 AXIAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

23 3423 - 2

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

1. Carnes Company
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Loren Cook Company
 4. Penn Barry
- B. Housing: Heavy-gauge, removable, spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, hinged, aluminum base.
- C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum or Steel hub and blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
- E. Accessories:
1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 4. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
 5. Stack hood with built-in backdraft dampers.
 6. Extended lubrication lines.
- F. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
 4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
 6. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

2.03 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
- B.
1. Carnes Company
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Loren Cook Company

- 4. Penn Barry
- C. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- D. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel removable for service.
- E. Back-draft damper: Integral.
- F. Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew or spring retainer attachment to fan housing.
- G. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
 - 3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
 - 4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
 - 5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless steel springs, and fusible link.
 - 6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
 - 7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
 - 8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

2.04 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF DOWNBLAST

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Carnes Company
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 3. Loren Cook Company
 - 4. Penn Barry
- B. Consult manufacturers if AMCA-certified fans are required; not all manufacturers are AMCA members.
- C. Housing: Downblast; removable spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
- D. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- E. Belt Drives:
 - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 - 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.

5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

F. Accessories:

1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
6. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

G. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

2.05 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF UPBLAST OR SIDEWALL

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Carnes Company
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Loren Cook Company
 4. Penn Barry
- B. Consult manufacturers if AMCA-certified fans are required; not all manufacturers are AMCA members.
- C. Configuration: Per design documents and details
- D. Housing: Removable spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
 1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
 2. Provide grease collector where identified on design documents
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades; sparkproof construction where identified on design documents.

F. Belt Drives:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings; minimum ABMA9, L(10) of 100,000 hours.
4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

G. Accessories:

1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
6. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
8. Wall Mount Adapter: Attach wall-mounted fan to wall.
9. Restaurant Kitchen Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air exhaust.

H. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

I. Prefabricated Kitchen Exhaust Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; ventilation openings on all sides to ventilate curb interstitial space. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
7. Vented Curb: For kitchen exhaust; 12-inch-high galvanized steel; unlined, with louvered vents in vertical sides.
8. NFPA 96 code requirements for commercial cooking operations.

9. Kitchen Hood Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air.

2.06 SIDEWALL PROPELLER FANS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Carnes Company
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 3. Loren Cook Company
 4. Penn Barry
- B. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring, with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.
- C. Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gauge steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.
- D. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.
- E. Fan Drive: Direct-drive motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- F. Fan Drive:
 1. Belt drive.
 2. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 3. Statically and dynamically balanced.
 4. Selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
 5. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.
 6. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
 7. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 8. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) of 100,000 hours.
 9. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 10. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
 11. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
 12. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.
- G. Accessories:
 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 2. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers factory set to close when fan stops.
 3. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers with electric actuator wired to close when fan stops.
 4. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.

5. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
6. Weathershield Hood: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
7. Weathershield Front Guard: Galvanized steel with expanded metal screen.

2.07 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311, and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- F. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

- D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- G. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.02 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 6. Adjust belt tension.
 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- F. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 3713.13 AIR DIFFUSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Louver face diffusers.
4. Linear slot diffusers.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.
3. Section 233713.43 "Security Registers and Grilles" for security registers and security grilles.
4. Section 233716 "Fabric Air-Diffusion Devices" for continuous tubular diffusers.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers with factory-applied color finishes. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

- D. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ROUND CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Kruger
 - 2. Nailor Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Price Industries
 - 4. Titus
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: per Air Device Schedule.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Face Style: per Air Device Schedule.
- F. Mounting: Duct connection.
- G. Pattern: Fully adjustable.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Equalizing grid.
 - 2. Plaster ring.
 - 3. Safety chain.
 - 4. Wire guard.
 - 5. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 6. Operating rod extension.

2.02 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Kruger
 - 2. Nailor Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Price Industries
 - 4. Titus
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: per Air Device Schedule.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Face Size: Air Device Schedule.
- F. Face Style: Plaque.
- G. Mounting: per Design Documents.
- H. Pattern: Adjustable.
- I. Accessories:
 - 1. Equalizing grid.
 - 2. Plaster ring.
 - 3. Safety chain.
 - 4. Wire guard.
 - 5. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 6. Operating rod extension.

2.03 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Kruger
 - 2. Nailor Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Price Industries
 - 4. Titus
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: per Air Device Schedule.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Mounting: per Design Documents.
- F. Pattern: Adjustable core style.

- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Square to round neck adaptor.
 - 2. Adjustable pattern vanes.
 - 3. Throw reducing vanes.
 - 4. Equalizing grid.
 - 5. Plaster ring.
 - 6. Safety chain.
 - 7. Wire guard.
 - 8. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 9. Operating rod extension.

2.04 LINEAR BAR DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Kruger
 - 2. Nailor Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Price Industries
 - 4. Titus
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: per Air Device Schedule.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Frame: 1 inch (25 mm) wide.
- F. Mounting: Concealed bracket.
- G. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed-blade assembly.
- H. Accessories: Plaster frame, Directional vanes, Alignment pins, Core clips, Blank-off strips.

2.05 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Kruger
 - 2. Nailor Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Price Industries
 - 4. Titus
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material - Shell: per Air Device Schedule.
- D. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.

- E. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
- F. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
- G. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, white.
- H. Accessories: Plaster frame, T-bar slot, Center notch, T-bar on inlet side, T-bar on both sides, T-bar clip on one side, T-bar clips on both sides.

2.06 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

SECTION 23 3713.23 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
2. Fixed face registers and grilles.
3. Linear bar grilles.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Smallest size register and grille indicated.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For registers and grilles with factory-applied color finishes. Smallest size register and grille indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For registers and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Smallest size register and grille indicated.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.

2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 REGISTERS

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Carnes Company.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Krueger
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Frame: 1 inch wide.
6. Mounting: Concealed or Lay in.
7. Damper Type: Multishutter or Adjustable opposed blade.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Front-blade gang operator.

B. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Carnes Company.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Krueger
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
7. Mounting: Concealed Lay in.
8. Damper Type: Multishutter or Adjustable opposed blade.
9. Accessory: Filter.

2.02 GRILLES

A. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Carnes Company.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Krueger
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Frame: 1 inch wide.
6. Mounting: Countersunk screw or Concealed Lay in.

B. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Carnes Company.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Krueger
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
7. Mounting: Concealed or Lay in.

C. Linear Bar Grilles

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Air Distribution; Anemostat, Inc.; Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Carnes Company.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Krueger
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Distribution plenum.

- a. Internal insulation.
 - b. Inlet damper.
- 7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
 - 8. Mounting: Concealed or Lay in.
 - 9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

SECTION 23 5216 CONDENSING BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired, fire-tube, floor-mounted condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each boiler.
 - 1. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and sections, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for boiler, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- F. Product Certificates:
 - 1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.
 - 2. CSA B51 pressure vessel Canadian Registration Number (CRN).

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Where "prorated" is indicated, the boiler manufacturer will cover the indicated percentage of cost of replacement parts. With "prorated" type, covered cost decreases as age of equipment increases.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Floor-Mounted Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
 - a. Heat Exchanger and Tank: Free from defects in material and workmanship.
 - b. Warranty Coverage: Prorated Year 0 to 5 - 100 percent; Year 6 to 7 - 50 percent; Year 8 to 9 - 30 percent; Year 10 - 10 percent for 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 6.8.1-6 and other requirements in Ch. 6 of ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Mounting Base: For securing boiler to concrete base.
 - 1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

2.02 FLOOR-MOUNTED, FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Aerco
 - 2. Cleaver Brooks
 - 3. Fulton Boiler Works
 - 4. Lochinvar, LLC
 - 5. Weil McClain
 - 6. Veissman Boilers
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube, forced-draft, condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Units are to be for water-heating service only.
- C. Primary Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant Type 316 stainless steel.
- D. Secondary Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant Type 316 stainless steel.
- E. Combustion Chamber and Flue Pipes: Corrosion-resistant stainless steel or aluminum.
- F. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.
- G. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft.
- H. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner-firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
 - 1. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Motor Sizes: Large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- I. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- J. Ignition: Direct-spark ignition or silicone carbide hot-surface ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff and electronic flame supervision.

K. Casing:

1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
3. Finish: Baked-enamel or Powder-coated protective finish.
4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch-thick, mineral-fiber or polyurethane-foam insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.

2.03 TRIM - FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.1.
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit with automatic reset.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gauge: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gauge. Gauges shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. High and low gas-pressure switches.
- F. Alarm bell with silence switch.
- G. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- H. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.
- I. Circulation Pump: Nonoverloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

2.04 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
 1. Control transformer.
 2. Set-Point Adjust: All set points shall be adjustable.
 3. Electric, factory-fabricated and factory-installed panel to control burner-firing rate, to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature.
 - a. Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.
- C. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.

1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be automatic-reset type.
 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch factory mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- D. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
1. Hardwired Points:
 - a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm and low-water-level alarm.
 - b. Control: On/off operation and hot-water-supply temperature set-point adjustment.
 2. A BACnet communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. All monitoring and control features, which are available at the local boiler control panel, shall also be available at the remote operator workstation through the building automation system.

2.05 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
 1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
 4. Field power interface shall be to fused disconnect switch.
 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.06 VENTING KITS

- A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A959, Type 29-4C stainless steel pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.
- B. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

2.07 CONDENSATE-NEUTRALIZATION UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled condensate-neutralizing capsule or tank assembly of corrosion-resistant plastic material with threaded or flanged inlet and outlet pipe connections. Device functions to prevent acidic condensate from damaging grain system. It is to be piped to receive acidic condensate discharged from condensing boiler and neutralize it by chemical reaction with replaceable neutralizing agent. Neutralized condensate is then piped to suitable drain.
- B. Capsule or Tank features:
1. All corrosion-resistant material.
 2. Suitable for use on all natural gas and propane boilers.
 3. Includes initial charge of neutralizing agent.
 4. Neutralizing agent to be easily replaceable when exhausted.
 5. Inlet and outlet pipe connections.
- C. Capsule Configuration:
1. Low-profile design for applications where boiler condensate drain is close to the floor.
 2. Easily removed and opened for neutralizing agent replacement.
 3. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.
- D. Tank Configuration:
1. Utilized where boiler is elevated or where tank is installed in a pit with tank top flush with floor.
 2. Top easily removed for neutralizing agent replacement.
 3. Internal baffles to channel flow for complete neutralization.
 4. Integral bypass to prevent condensate backflow into appliance.
 5. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.

2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. CSA Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with ANSI Z21.13-2017/CSA 4.9.
- D. Performance Testing: Test and label boilers for efficiency to comply with AHRI 1500.
- E. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.

- F. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, in accordance with 2017 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Factory test boilers for safety and functionality; fill boiler with water, and fire throughout firing range, to prove operation of all safety components.
- G. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install floor-mounted boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.
- E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- F. Install condensate piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- G. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- H. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapplings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.
- I. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

3.04 DUCT CONNECTIONS

A. Boiler Venting:

1. Install flue-venting kit and combustion-air intake.
2. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Field fabricate and install boiler vent and combustion-air intake.
4. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
5. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
6. Connect boiler vent full size to boiler connections.
7. Comply with requirements in Section 235123 "Gas Vents."
8. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.05 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.06 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency, Owner: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency, Contractor: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
 - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- F. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
 2. Provide not less than two hours of training.
 3. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
 4. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
 5. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
 6. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 235216

SECTION 237213
HEAT WHEEL AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes heat wheels.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 233119 "HVAC Casings" for customized housings used for air-to-air energy recovery units.
 - 2. Section 237313.19 "Indoor, Custom Air-Handling Units" for custom housings used for air-to-air energy recovery units.
 - 3. Section 237343.19 "Outdoor, Custom Air-Handling Units" for custom housings used for air-to-air energy recovery units.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of air-to-air energy recovery equipment.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 3. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
 - 2. Support location, type, and weight.
 - 3. Field measurements.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for air-to-air energy recovery equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment to include in maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Wheel Belts: One set(s) of belts for each heat wheel.

1.07 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air-to-air energy recovery equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of unit components.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
 - 2. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ASHRAE 84, "Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat/Energy Exchangers."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

2.02 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS: REFER to CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

2.03 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Daiken
- B. Greenheck
- C. Simco

2.04 HEAT WHEELS

- A. Casing:
 - 1. Galvanized steel, stainless steel, or aluminum with standard factory finish.
 - 2. Integral purge section limiting carryover of exhaust air to between 0.05 percent at 1.6-inch wg and 0.20 percent at 4-inch wg differential pressure.
 - 3. Casing seals on periphery of rotor and on duct divider and purge section.
 - 4. Support vertical rotors on grease-lubricated ball bearings having extended grease fittings or permanently lubricated bearings with an L-10 400,000 hours. Support horizontal rotors on tapered roller bearing.
- B. Rotor: Aluminum or polymer segmented wheel strengthened with radial spokes.

- C. Rotor: Aluminum, metallic, or polymer segmented wheel strengthened with radial spokes impregnated with nonmigrating, water-selective, 3-angstrom, molecular-sieve desiccant coating.
- D. Drive: Fractional horsepower motor and gear reducer, with speed changed by ECM motor and self-adjusting multilink belt around outside of rotor.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- E. Controls:
 - 1. Starting relay, factory mounted and wired, and manual motor starter for field wiring.
 - 2. Variable-Frequency Controller: Factory mounted and wired, permitting input of field-connected 4- to 20-mA or 1- to 10-V control signal.
 - 3. Variable-Frequency Controller with Exhaust-Air Sensor: Factory mounted and wired, with exhaust-air sensor to vary rotor speed and maintain exhaust temperature above freezing.
 - 4. Variable-Frequency Controller with Exhaust- and Outdoor-Air Sensors: Factory mounted and wired, with exhaust- and outdoor-air sensors, automatic changeover thermostat and set-point adjuster, to vary rotor speed and maintain exhaust temperature above freezing and air differential temperature above set point. Rotor speed shall increase to maximum when exhaust-air temperature is less than outdoor-air temperature.
 - 5. Pilot-Light Indicator: Display rotor rotation and speed.
 - 6. Speed Settings: Adjustable settings for maximum and minimum rotor speed limits.

2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 1060 Certification: Testing according to AHRI 1060 and listed and labeled by AHRI.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF HEAT WHEELS

- A. Install heat wheels so supply and exhaust airstreams flow in opposite directions and rotation is away from exhaust side to purge section to supply side.

1. Install access doors in both supply and exhaust ducts, both upstream and downstream, for access to wheel surfaces, drive motor, and seals.
2. Install removable panels or access doors between supply and exhaust ducts on building side for bypass during startup.
3. Access doors and panels are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install seismic restraints according to manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

E. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Condensate Drain Piping: Pipe drains from drain pans to nearest floor drain; use ASTM B88, Type L, drawn-temper copper water tubing with soldered joints, same size as condensate drain connection.

E. Condensate Drain Piping: Pipe drains from drain pans to nearest floor drain; use ASTM D1785, Schedule 40 PVC pipe and solvent-welded fittings, same size as condensate drain connection.

F. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

3.04 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

237213 - 5

HEAT WHEEL AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.05 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:
 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 2. Adjust seals and purge.
 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 4. Set initial temperature and humidity set points.
 5. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- E. Air-to-air energy recovery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect motor drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.

3.08 ADJUSTING

- A. Comply with requirements for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.09 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-to-air energy recovery units.

END OF SECTION 237213

SECTION 23 7313.13
INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-assembled, indoor air-handling units with limited features, including the following components and accessories:
 - 1. Casings.
 - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
 - 3. Coils.
 - 4. Air filtration.
 - 5. Dampers.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
 - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
 - 5. Fans:
 - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
 - 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
 - 8. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, basic, air-handling unit.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, basic air-handling units, as well as procedures and diagrams.
 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation, supports, indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators, supports, and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for indoor, basic air-handling units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 4. Restraint of internal components.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Startup service reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, basic, air-handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- F. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding positive/negative 4-inch wg of internal static pressure, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.005 inches/inch of panel span.

2.02 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS: REFER to CONTRACT DRAWINGS

- 1. Type: SWSI, airfoil unhooded centrifugal plenum fan.

2.03 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Carrier
- B. Daiken
- C. JCI/York
- D. Trane

2.04 UNIT CASINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings;

1. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
2. Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
3. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant. Hermetically seal at each corner and around entire perimeter.
4. Base Rail:
 - a. Material: Galvanized steel.
 - b. Height: 4 inches.

B. Double-Wall Construction:

1. Outside Casing Wall: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick, with manufacturer's standard finish.
2. Inside Casing Wall: G90 galvanized steel, solid, minimum 18 gauge thick.
3. Floor Plate: G90 galvanized steel, treadplate, minimum 18 gauge thick.
4. Casing Insulation:
 - a. Materials: injected polyurethane foam insulation.
 - b. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R13.
 - c. Insulation Thickness: 2 inch.
 - d. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Static-Pressure Classifications:

1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 3-inch wg.
2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 4-inch wg.

E. Panels and Doors:

1. Panels:
 - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.
 - b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against airflow.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
 - d. Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches.
2. Doors:
 - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.

- b. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do not open uncontrollably.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of frame.
 - d. Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches.
 - 3. Locations and Applications:
 - a. Fan Section: Doors.
 - b. Coil Section: Panels.
 - c. Access Section: Doors.
 - d. Access Sections Immediately Upstream and Downstream of Coil Sections: Doors.
 - e. Damper Section: Doors.
 - f. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
 - g. Mixing Section: Doors.
- F. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - 1. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 3. Drain Connection:
 - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
 - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - 4. Slope: Minimum 0.125 in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 5. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
 - 6. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

2.05 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- B. Fans: Centrifugal, galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
 - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
 - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
 - 2. Shaft Bearings:

- a. Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of minimum 100,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
- 3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
 - a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
- 4. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
- 5. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels (Plenum Fan Wheels): Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
- 6. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch.
- 7. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
- 8. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- D. Drive, Belt: Factory-mounted, V-belt drive, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.
 - 1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing, dynamically balanced at the factory.
 - 2. Belts: Oil resistant, non-sparking and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
 - 3. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146-inch-thick, 3/4 inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
- E. Motors:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- F. Comply with Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."

2.06 COIL SECTION

- A. General Requirements for Coil Section:
 - 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
 - 2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).

3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
4. Hot-Water Coils: Continuous circuit.
 - a. Piping Connections: Threaded, same end of coil.
 - b. Tube Material: Copper.
 - c. Fin Type: Plate.
 - d. Fin Material: Aluminum.
 - e. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond or Silver brazed.
 - f. Headers:
 - 1) Cast iron with drain and air vent tappings.
 - 2) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
 - 3) Fabricated steel, with brazed joints, prime coated.
 - 4) Provide insulated cover to conceal exposed outside casings of headers.
 - g. Frames: Channel frame, minimum 0.052-inch-thick galvanized steel.
 - h. Coil Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.
 - i. Coating: None.

B. Cooling Coils:

1. Refrigerant Coil:

- a. Tubes: Copper.
- b. Fins:
 - 1) Material: Aluminum.
- c. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
- d. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
- e. Frames: Galvanized steel.
- f. Coatings: None.
- g. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
 - 1) Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

2.07 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

A. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 234100 "Particulate Air Filtration."

B. Panel Filters:

1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filters with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic, or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
4. Filter-Media Frame: High wet-strength beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.

- C. Adhesive, Sustainability Projects: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- D. Side-Access Filter Mounting Frames:
 - 1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Match inner casing and outer casing material, and insulation thickness. Galvanized steel track.
 - a. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing device to ensure seal between gasketed material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.

2.08 DAMPERS

- A. Dampers: Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
- B. Combination Filter and Mixing Section:
 - 1. Cabinet support members shall hold 2-inch- thick, pleated, flat, permanent or throwaway filters.

2.09 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
 - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.010 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units and their components in accordance with AHRI 430.
- B. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Sound Performance Rating Certification: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA 311.
- C. Fan Aerodynamic Performance Rating: Factory test and rate fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency in accordance with AMCA 210.

- D. Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test in accordance with AMCA 210 and rate in accordance with AMCA 99, AMCA 207, and AMCA 208.
- E. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.
- F. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- G. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig internal pressure, and to minimum 300-psig internal pressure while underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Replace with new insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- E. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 , ASTM B88, Type L copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- F. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

3.04 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.05 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.06 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
9. Install new, clean filters.
10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.07 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.08 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling unit and air-distribution systems, and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Air-handling unit and components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.010 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313.13

SECTION 23 8126
SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.08 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 2. Daikin

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

238126 - 2

SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

3. Lennox Industries, Inc.; Lennox International.
4. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
5. SANYO North America Corporation.
6. Trane.
7. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.02 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
 - c. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

- f. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with [one] [two] percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.
 - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
 - c. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
8. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.

- 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

b. Disposable Panel Filters:

- 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
- 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
- 3) Dust-Holding Capacity.
- 4) Initial Resistance: 0.10 inches wg.
- 5) Recommended Final Resistance: 0.20 inches wg.
- 6) Arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1: 80.
- 7) Merv according to ASHRAE 52.2: 8.
- 8) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial agent.
- 9) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.

c. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:

- 1) Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
- 2) Thickness: 1 inch 2 inches.
- 3) Dust-Holding Capacity.
- 4) Initial Resistance: 0.10 inches wg.
- 5) Recommended Final Resistance: 0.20 inches wg.
- 6) Arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1: 90.
- 7) Merv according to ASHRAE 52.2: 8.
- 8) Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with antimicrobial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.
- 9) Media-Grid Frame: Nonflammable cardboard Galvanized steel Fire-retardant, 3/4-inch particleboard with gaskets.

2.03 INDOOR UNITS (6 TONS OR MORE)

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
7. Fan Motors:

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Three-phase, permanently lubricated, ball-bearing motors with built-in thermal-overload protection.
 - d. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: 1 inch thick, in fiberboard frames Permanent, cleanable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
- a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
 - c. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
 - f. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Variable-Frequency Controllers:

- 1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFC; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of an NEMA MG 1, Design B, three-phase induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
- 2. Output Rating: Three-phase; 6 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.
- 3. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - a. Input ac voltage tolerance of 208 V, plus or minus 5 percent.
 - b. Input-frequency tolerance of 06/11 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
 - c. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 - d. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent.
 - e. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds.
 - f. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
 - g. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- 4. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
- 5. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

- a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 - b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 - c. Acceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - d. Deceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - e. Current Limit: 50 percent to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.
6. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
- a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors.
 - b. Undervoltage and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
 - c. Adjustable motor overload relays capable of NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 Class 20 Class 30 performance.
 - d. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
 - e. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 - f. Loss-of-phase protection.
 - g. Reverse-phase protection.
 - h. Short-circuit protection.
 - i. Motor overtemperature fault.
7. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempts three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional autospeed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads, spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.
8. Power-Interruption Protection: Prevents motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.
9. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
10. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back, based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
11. Door-mounted, digital status lights shall indicate the following conditions:
- a. Power on.
 - b. Run.
 - c. Overvoltage.
 - d. Line fault.
 - e. Overcurrent.
 - f. External fault.
12. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual-speed-control potentiometer and elapsed-time meter.
13. Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected, to indicate the following controller parameters:
- a. Output frequency (Hertz).
 - b. Motor speed (rpm).
 - c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 - d. Motor current (amperes).
 - e. Motor torque (percent).
 - f. Fault or alarming status (code).
 - g. Proportional-integral-derivative feedback signal (percent).

- h. DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - i. Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - j. Motor output voltage (volts).
14. Control Signal Interface:
- a. Electric Input Signal Interface: A minimum of two analog inputs (0 to 10 V or 0/4-20 mA) and six programmable digital inputs.
 - b. Remote signal inputs capable of accepting any of the following speed-setting input signals from the control system:
 - 1) 0 to 10-V dc.
 - 2) 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
 - 3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
 - 4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
 - 5) RS485.
 - 6) Keypad display for local hand operation.
 - c. Output signal interface with a minimum of one analog output signal (0/4-20 mA), which can be programmed to any of the following:
 - 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Output current (load).
 - 3) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - 4) Motor torque (percent).
 - 5) Motor speed (rpm).
 - 6) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - d. Remote indication interface with a minimum of two dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
 - 1) Motor running.
 - 2) Set-point speed reached.
 - 3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
 - 4) High- or low-speed limits reached.
15. Communications: RS485 interface allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration. Interface shall allow all parameter settings of VFC to be programmed via BMS control. Provide capability for VFC to retain these settings within the nonvolatile memory.
16. Integral Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker NEMA AB 1, molded-case switch NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch NEMA KS 1, fusible switch with lockable handle.
17. Accessories:
- a. Devices shall be factory installed in controller enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Push-Button Stations, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy-duty type.
 - c. Standard Displays:
 - 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - 3) Motor current (amperes).

- 4) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
- 5) Motor torque (percent).
- 6) Motor speed (rpm).
- 7) Motor output voltage (volts).

2.04 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.05 OUTDOOR UNITS (6 TONS OR MORE)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- C. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
 - 1. Compressor time delay.
 - 2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
 - 3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
 - 4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
- D. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- E. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- F. Drain Hose: For condensate.
- G. Additional Monitoring:
 - 1. Monitor constant and variable motor loads.
 - 2. Monitor variable-frequency-drive operation.
 - 3. Monitor economizer cycle.
 - 4. Monitor cooling load.
 - 5. Monitor air distribution static pressure and ventilation air volumes.

2.07 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS: See Contract Drawings

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations.

2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 4. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
1. Water Coil Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return coil connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
 2. Remote, Water-Cooled Condenser Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.04 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

SECTION 238129
VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes complete VRF HVAC system(s) including, but not limited to, delegated design and the following components to make a complete operating system(s) according to requirements indicated:
 1. Indoor, exposed, floor-mounted units.
 2. Indoor, exposed, wall-mounted units.
 3. Indoor, recessed, ceiling-mounted units.
 4. Heat recovery control units.
 5. System controls.
 6. System refrigerant and oil.
 7. System refrigerant piping.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Conditioning System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in cooling only.
- B. Heat-Pump System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in either heating or cooling, but not with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.
- C. Heat Recovery System Operation: System capable of operation with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.
- D. HRCU: Heat Recovery Control Unit. HRCUs are used in heat recovery VRF HVAC systems to manage and control refrigerant between indoor units to provide simultaneous heating and cooling zones. "Heat Recovery Control Unit" is the term used by ASHRAE for what different manufacturers term as branch circuit controller, branch selector box, changeover box, flow selector unit, mode change unit, and other such terms.
- E. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- F. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- G. Three-Pipe System Design: One high pressure refrigerant vapor line, one low pressure refrigerant vapor line, and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units.

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

23 8129 - 1

VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

- H. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units. HRCUs used in two pipe systems act as an intermediate heat exchanger and include diverting valves and gas/liquid separators to move high and low pressure refrigerant between indoor units.
- I. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units and for HRCUs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor- and outdoor-unit and HRCU control.
6. Include description of control software features.
7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.
9. For system design software.
10. Indicate location and type of service access.

- B. Shop Drawings: For VRF HVAC systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittals:

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

2. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
3. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, sections, and details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Structural floors, roofs and associated members to which equipment, piping, ductwork, cables, and conduit will be attached.
 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 4. Wall-mounted controllers located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices, and other installed devices.
 5. Size and location of access doors and panels installed behind walls and inaccessible ceilings for products installed behind walls and requiring access.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Service access panels.
- B. Qualification Data:
1. For Installer: Certificate from VRF HVAC system manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
 - a. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
 2. For VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 3. For VRF HVAC system provider.
- C. Product Test Reports: Where tests are required, for each product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or a qualified testing agency.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On CD or DVD, USB media, or approved cloud storage platform, complete with data files.
 - 3. Device address list.
 - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters:
 - a. One set(s) for each unit with replaceable filters.
 - b. One set(s) for each unit type and unique size of washable filters.
 - 2. Controllers for Indoor Units: One for each unique controller type installed.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
 - 1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of VRF HVAC systems and products.
 - 2. Shipped VRF HVAC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of five years within time of bid.
 - 3. VRF HVAC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least five completed projects.
 - 4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, and operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
 - 5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
 - a. Product research and development.
 - b. Product and application engineering.
 - c. Product manufacturing, testing, and quality control.
 - d. Technical support for system installation training, startup, commissioning, and troubleshooting of installations.
 - e. Owner training.
- B. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:
 - 1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 - 2. In-place facility located within 100 miles of Project.
 - 3. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
 - 4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.

- a. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
 - 5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
 - 6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
 - 7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
 - 8. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
- 1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
 - 2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
 - 3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
 - 4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
 - a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
 - b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.

1.010 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.
- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
 - 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

1.011 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures.
 - b. Faulty operation.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Warranty Period:
- a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts, Including Controls: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier
 - 2. Daiken
 - 3. LG
 - 4. Mitsubishi
 - 5. Samsung
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single source from single manufacturer including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Indoor and outdoor units, including accessories.
 - 2. Controls and software.
 - 3. HRCUs.
 - 4. Refrigerant isolation valves.
 - 5. Specialty refrigerant pipe fittings.

2.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC system(s) with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, HRCUs, outdoor unit(s), piping, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system(s) complying with requirements indicated.
 - 1. Two-pipe or three-pipe system design.
 - 2. System(s) operation, heat pump or heat recovery as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230 and products listed in AHRI directory.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.
4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

2.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional specialist, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design complete and operational VRF HVAC system(s) complying with requirements indicated.

1. Provide system refrigerant calculations.
 - a. Refrigerant concentration limits shall be within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
 - b. Indicate compliance with manufacturer's maximum vertical and horizontal travel distances. Prepare a comparison table for each system showing calculated distances compared to manufacturer's maximum allowed distances.
2. Include a mechanical ventilation system and gas detection system as required to comply with ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
3. System Refrigerant Piping and Tubing:
 - a. Arrangement: Arrange piping to interconnect indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor unit(s) in compliance with manufacturer requirements and requirements indicated.
 - b. Routing: Conceal piping above ceilings and behind walls to maximum extent possible.
 - c. Sizing: Size piping system, using a software program acceptable to manufacturer, to provide performance requirements indicated. Consider requirements to accommodate future change requirements.
4. System Controls:
 - a. Network arrangement.
 - b. Network interface with other building systems.
 - c. Product selection.
 - d. Sizing.

B. Service Access:

1. Provide and document service access requirements.
2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.
3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.

6. Comply with OSHA regulations.
- C. System Design and Installation Requirements:
1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
 2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.
- D. System Adaptability to Future Changes: Arrange and size system refrigerant piping to accommodate future changes to system without having to resize and replace existing refrigerant piping.
1. Future changes to system(s) indicated on Drawings.
 2. Each branch circuit shall accommodate addition of one indoor unit(s) with unit capacity equal to average indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.
 3. Each branch circuit shall accommodate deletion of one indoor unit(s) with unit capacity equal to average indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.
- E. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each HRCU, indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.
- F. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be within the following range of outdoor-unit rated capacity:
1. Not less than 50 percent.
 2. Not more than 150 percent.
 3. Range acceptable to manufacturer.
- G. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.
- H. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.
- I. Outdoor Conditions:
1. Suitable for outdoor ambient conditions encountered.
 - a. Design equipment and supports to withstand wind loads of governing code and ASCE/SEI 7.
 - b. Design equipment and supports to withstand snow and ice loads of governing code and ASCE/SEI 7.
 - c. Provide corrosion-resistant coating for components and supports where located in coastal or industrial climates that are known to be harmful to materials and finishes.
 2. Maximum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: See Drawings.
 3. Minimum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: See Drawings.
- J. Sound Performance: Sound levels generated by operating HVAC equipment shall be within requirements indicated.
1. Indoor: See Drawings.

- 2. Outdoor: See Drawings.
- K. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.
- L. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

2.04 INDOOR, CONCEALED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS FOR DUCTING

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.
- B. Cabinet:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or painted steel.
 - 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
 - 3. Duct Connections: Extended collar or flange, or designated exterior cabinet surface, designed for attaching field-installed ductwork.
 - 4. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
 - 5. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.
- C. DX Coil Assembly:
 - 1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
 - 2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
 - 3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
 - 4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
 - 5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
 - 6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
 - 7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
 - 9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.
- D. Drain Assembly:
 - 1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
 - 2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
 - 3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material with threaded NPT.
- E. Fan and Motor Assembly:
 - 1. Fan(s):
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
 - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion-resistant finish.

- d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
 - 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
 - 3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
 - 4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
 - 5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
- 1. Access: Bottom, side, or rear to accommodate field installation without removing ductwork and to accommodate filter replacement without need for tools.
 - 2. Efficiency: See drawings.
 - 3. Media:
 - a. Replaceable: Extended surface, panel, or cartridge with antimicrobial treatment fiber media.
 - b. Washable: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.
- G. Unit Accessories:
- 1. Provide integral condensate pump.
- H. Unit Controls:
- 1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
 - 2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
 - 3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
 - a. Unit inlet air temperature.
 - b. Coil entering refrigerant temperature.
 - c. Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
 - 4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
 - a. Analog Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
 - b. Digital Inputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 - c. Digital Outputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 - 5. Features and Functions:
 - a. Self-diagnostics.
 - b. Time delay.
 - c. Auto-restart.
 - d. External static pressure control.
 - e. Auto operation mode.
 - f. Manual operation mode.
 - g. Filter service notification.
 - h. Power consumption display.
 - i. Drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
 - j. Run test switch.
 - 6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor and outdoor units.

7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

I. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways.

2.05 INDOOR, EXPOSED, WALL-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Gravity.
 - a. If a floor drain is not available at unit, provide unit with field-installed condensate pump accessory.

3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material with threaded NPT.
- E. Fan and Motor Assembly:
1. Fan(s):
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
 - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
 - d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
 3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
 4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of at least 50 percent.
 5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
1. Access: Front, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
 2. Efficiency: See drawings.
 3. Washable Media: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.
- G. Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard discharge grille with field-adjustable air pattern mounted in top or front face of unit cabinet.
- H. Unit Accessories:
1. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.
 2. Condensate Pump: Integral reservoir and control with electrical power connection through unit power.
- I. Unit Controls:
1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
 2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
 3. Factory-Installed Sensors: Unit inlet air temperature Coil entering refrigerant temperature Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
 4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
 - a. Analog Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
 - b. Digital Inputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 - c. Digital Outputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 5. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, power consumption display, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification, run test switch.
 6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
 7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

J. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

2.06 INDOOR, RECESSED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material with threaded NPT.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
 - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
 - d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
 3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
 4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
 5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
1. Access: Bottom, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
 2. Efficiency: See drawings.
 3. Media:
 - a. Replaceable: Extended surface, panel, or cartridge with antimicrobial treatment fiber media.
- G. Discharge-Air Grille Assembly: Mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.
1. Discharge Pattern: One-, two-, three-, or four-way throw as indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Discharge Pattern Adjustment: Field-adjustable limits for up and down range of motion.
 - b. Discharge Pattern Closure: Ability to close individual discharges of units with multiple patterns.
 2. Motorized Vanes: Modulating up and down flow pattern for uniform room air distribution.
 3. Additional Branch Supply Duct Connection: Sheet metal knockout for optional connection to one additional supply branch duct.
- H. Return-Air Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard grille mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.
- I. Unit Accessories:
1. Outdoor Air Ventilation Kit: Connection, motorized damper, and control to satisfy unit control sequence of operation indicated on Drawings.
 2. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.
 3. Integral coil condensate pump.
- J. Unit Controls:
1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
 2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
 3. Factory-Installed Sensors: Unit inlet air temperature Coil entering refrigerant temperature Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
 4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:

- a. Analog Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
 - b. Digital Inputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 - c. Digital Outputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
- 5. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, power consumption display, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification, run test switch
 - 6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
 - 7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
 - 8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

K. Unit Electrical:

- 1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
- 2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
- 3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
- 4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
- 5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- 6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

2.07 HEAT RECOVERY CONTROL UNITS (HRCUs)

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

- 1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
- 2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.

B. Cabinet:

- 1. Galvanized-steel construction.
- 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
- 3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
- 4. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.

D. Refrigeration Assemblies and Specialties:

- 1. Specially designed by manufacturer for type of VRF HVAC system being installed, either two or three pipe.
- 2. Each refrigerant branch circuit shall have refrigerant control valve(s) to control refrigerant flow.

3. Spares: Each heat recovery control unit shall include at least two branch circuit port(s) for future use.
4. Each system piping connection upstream of heat recovery unit shall be fitted with an isolation valve to allow for service to any heat recovery control unit in the system without interrupting operation of the system.
5. Each branch circuit connection shall be fitted with an isolation valve and capped service port to allow for service to any individual branch circuit without interrupting operation of the system.
 - a. If not available as an integral part of the heat recovery control unit, isolation valves shall be field installed adjacent to the unit pipe connection.

E. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, fuse protection.
4. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
5. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

F. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

G. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.08 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a TIA-485A or manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: open control communication between interconnected units.

3. Integration with Building Automation System: ASHRAE 135, BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:
 - a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
 - b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
 - c. Integration shall include control monitoring scheduling and change of value notifications.
 - d. Insert requirements.

4. Operator Interface:
 - a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:
 - 1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
 - 2) Owner-furnished PC connected to central controller(s).
 - 3) Web interface through web browser software.
 - 4) Integration with Building Automation System.

 - b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:
 - 1) On/off control.
 - 2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. VRF HVAC System Operator Software for PC:

1. Software offered by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall provide system operators with ability to monitor and control VRF HVAC system(s) from a single dedicated Owner-furnished PC.
2. Software shall provide operator with a graphic user interface to allow monitoring and control of multiple central controllers from a single device location through point-and-click mouse exchange.
3. Plan views shall show building plans with location of indoor units and identification superimposed on plans.
4. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
5. Schedules operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Schedules daily, weekly, and annual events.
6. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
7. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
8. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
9. Supports Multiple Languages: English.
10. Supports Imperial and Metric Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
11. Displays service notifications and error codes.
12. Monitors and displays up to 3000 item error history and 10000 item operation history for regular reporting and further archiving.
13. Monitors and displays cumulative operating time of indoor units.

14. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
15. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display.
16. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures percent capacity.

C. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.
2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. Multiple Language: English.
4. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
5. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
6. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
7. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
8. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
9. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between.
10. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
11. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments between 20% to 80% RH.
12. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
13. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
14. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to eight events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
15. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
16. Occupancy detection.
17. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
18. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
19. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
20. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
21. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
22. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

D. Wireless Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Wireless Communication:
 - a. Controller communicates to remote-mounted receiver that is wired to indoor unit(s).
 - 1) Include receivers with wireless controllers as required to complete installation.
 - 2) Low-voltage power required for receivers shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.
 - b. One wireless controller shall be capable of communicating with one or multiple receivers to control one or multiple indoor units as a group.
2. Controller Battery Life: Three years.

3. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
4. Multiple Language: English.
5. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
6. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
7. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
8. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
9. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
10. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between
11. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
12. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments between 20% - 80% RH.
13. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
14. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
15. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to eight events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
16. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
17. Occupancy detection.
18. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
19. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
20. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
21. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
22. Setting stored in non-volatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery for date and time only.
23. .

2.09 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT AND OIL

A. Refrigerant:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.
2. ASHRAE 34, Class A1 refrigerant classification.
3. R-410a.

B. Oil:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.

2.010 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for system piping requirements.

2.011 PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation" for system piping insulation requirements.

2.012 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect factory-assembled equipment.
- B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- D. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- E. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- F. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and outdoor pads for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed.
- G. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Clearance:
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
 - 2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.
- B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.
 - 1. Loose components shall be installed by manufacturer's service representative or system Installer under supervision of manufacturer's service representative.
- C. Equipment Restraint Installation: Install equipment with seismic-restraint device. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.03 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch.
- C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.
- D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.
- E. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.
- F. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.
- G. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.
- H. For floor- and wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within walls.
- I. Floor-mounted units located in mechanical rooms.
- J. Install floor-mounted units on support structure indicated on Drawings.
- K. Install floor-mounted units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- L. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- M. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Install outdoor units on support structures indicated on Drawings.
- C. Pad-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Attachment: Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 2. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.
- D. Roof-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, stainless-steel fasteners.

3.05 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping and tubing free of sags.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.
- K. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- L. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.06 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:
 - 1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.
 - 2. Install an adjustable stainless-steel hose clamp with adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide a leak-free installation.
 - 3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:
 - a. Details indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Manufacturer's requirements.
 - c. Governing codes.
 - d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.

4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.

B. Gravity Drains:

1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than one percent.

C. Pumped Drains:

1. If unit condensate pump or lift mechanism is not included with an integral check valve, install a full-size check valve in each branch pipe near unit connection to prevent backflow into unit.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet. Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.

C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.

E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in protective conduit where installed belowground.

G. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.

H. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

- I. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.
- J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
- K. Joint Construction:
 - 1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
 - 3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
 - a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
 - b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- B. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners, for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick, in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel.
 - 1. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Piping and Tubing Insulation:
 - 1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - 2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
- N. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 4. Multiple horizontal pipes located indoors may use metal framing systems with split clamp attachment for each pipe in lieu of individual clevis hangers.
 - 5. Pipe stands for horizontal pipes located outdoors.
 - 6. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 7. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- O. Horizontal Piping Hanger Spacing and Rod Size: Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. Sizes through NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- P. Plastic Pipe Hanger and Support Spacing:

1. Space hangers and supports according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions.
 2. Maximum spacing, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
- Q. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): If longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- R. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at midpoint intervals between floors, not to exceed 10 feet.
- S. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified.
- T. Use hangers, supports, and attachments with galvanized coatings unless otherwise indicated.
- U. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- V. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1 inch.
- W. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 4. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- X. Building Attachments: Install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

- a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
- 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

3.09 INSTALLATION OF PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated. Installation to maintain a continuous vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed valve covers are unavailable, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- E. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.010 INSTALLATION OF DUCT, ACCESSORIES, AND AIR OUTLETS

- A. Where installing ductwork adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Comply with requirements for metal ducts specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- C. Comply with requirements for nonmetal ducts specified in Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts."
- D. Comply with requirements for air duct accessories specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

- E. Comply with requirements for flexible ducts specified in Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts."
- F. Comply with requirements for air diffusers specified in Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers."
- G. Comply with requirements for registers and grilles specified in Section 233713.23 "Registers and Grilles."

3.011 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.
- B. To extent electrical power is required for system equipment, components, and controls, and is not indicated on Drawings and addressed in the Specifications, the design for such electrical power shall be delegated to VRF HVAC system provider.
 - 1. Delegated design of electrical power to equipment, components and controls, and associated installation shall be included at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. Connect field electrical power source to each separate electrical device requiring field electrical power. Coordinate termination point and connection type with Installer.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding connections.
- F. Install nameplate or acrylic label with self-adhesive back for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters. Letters at least 1/2 inch high.
 - 2. Locate nameplate or label where easily visible.
- G. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or revised in this Section.
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
 - 2. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- H. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- I. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- J. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.012 SOFTWARE

A. Cybersecurity:

1. Software:

- a. Coordinate security requirements with IT department.
- b. Ensure that latest stable software release is installed and properly operating.
- c. Disable or change default passwords to password using a combination of uppercase and lower letters, numbers, and symbols at least eight characters in length. Record passwords and turn over to party responsible for system operation and administration.

2. Hardware:

- a. Coordinate location and access requirements with IT department.
- b. Enable highest level of wireless encryption that is compatible with Owner's ICT network.
- c. Disable dual network connections.

3.013 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Installation Method:

1. Install cables in raceways except as follows:

- a. Within equipment and associated control enclosures.
- b. In accessible ceiling spaces where open cable installation method may be used.
- c. In gypsum board partitions where cable may be enclosed within wall cavity.

2. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.

9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.
16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

D. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

3.014 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.015 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.016 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system equipment, piping, tubing, and valves. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Identify system electrical and controls components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify each control cable on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each cable shall have a unique tag.

3.017 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.
 - 1. Field service shall be performed by an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.
 - a. Additional factory-authorized representatives may assist with completion of certain activities only if supervised by manufacturer's employee. A factory-authorized representative shall not provide assistance without manufacturer's employee supervision.
 - 2. Manufacturer shall provide on-site visits during the course of construction at installation milestones indicated. System Installer shall coordinate each visit in advance to give manufacturer sufficient notice to plan the visit.
 - a. First Visit: Kick-off meeting.
 - b. Second Visit: At approximately 50 percent completion of system(s).
 - c. Fifth Visit: Final inspection before system startup.
 - 3. Kick-off Meeting:
 - a. Meeting shall include system Installer and other related trades with sole purpose of reviewing VRF HVAC system installation requirements and close coordination required to make a successful installation.
 - b. Meeting shall be held at Project site and scheduled at a mutually agreed to time that occurs before the start of any part of system installation.
 - c. Meeting shall cover the following as a minimum requirement:
 - 1) Review of latest issue of Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications, relevant to VRF HVAC systems.
 - 2) Manufacturer's installation requirements specific to systems being installed.
 - 3) Review of all relevant VRF HVAC system submittals, including delegated-design submittals.
 - 4) Required field activities related installation of VRF HVAC system.
 - 5) Project team communication protocol, contact information, and exchange of responsibilities for each party involved, including manufacturer, supplier, system Installer, and other related trades.

4. Site Visits: Activities for each site visit shall include the following:
 - a. Meet with VRF HVAC system Installer to discuss field activities, issues, and suggested methods to result in a successful installation.
 - b. Offer technical support to Installer and related trades as related to VRF system(s) being installed.
 - c. Review progress of VRF HVAC system(s) installation for strict compliance with manufacturer's requirements.
 - d. Advise and if necessary assist Installer with updating related refrigerant calculations and system documentation.
 - e. Issue a report for each visit, documenting the visit.
 - 1) Report to include name and contact information of individual making the visit.
 - 2) Date(s) and time frames while on-site.
 - 3) Names and contact information of people meeting with while on-site.
 - 4) Clearly identify and list each separate issue that requires resolution. For each issue, provide a unique identification number, relevant importance, specific location or equipment identification, description of issue, recommended corrective action, and follow-up requirements needed. Include a digital photo for clarification if deemed to be beneficial.

5. Final Inspection before Startup:
 - a. Before inspection, Installer to provide written request to manufacturer stating the system is fully installed according manufacturer's requirements and ready for final inspection.
 - b. All system equipment and operating components shall be inspected. If components are inaccessible for inspection, they shall be made accessible before the final inspection can be completed.
 - c. Manufacturer shall provide a comprehensive inspection of all equipment and each operating component that comprise the complete system(s). Inspection shall follow a detailed checklist specific to each equipment and operating component.
 - d. Inspection reports for indoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
 - 2) Manufacturer model number.
 - 3) Serial number.
 - 4) Network address, if applicable.
 - 5) Each equipment setting.
 - 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
 - 7) Proper service clearance provided.
 - 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
 - 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
 - 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
 - 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
 - 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
 - 13) Controller location.
 - 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
 - 15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
 - 16) Condensate removal acceptable.
 - 17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
 - 18) Unit airflow direction within an acceptable range.
 - 19) If applicable, fan external static pressure setting.

- 20) Filter type and condition acceptable.
- 21) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 22) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 23) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 24) If applicable, ductwork properly connected.
- 25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
- 26) Remarks.

e. Inspection reports for outdoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
- 2) Manufacturer model number.
- 3) Serial number.
- 4) Network address, if applicable.
- 5) Each equipment setting.
- 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
- 7) Proper service clearance provided.
- 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 13) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 14) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 15) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 16) Remarks.

f. Inspection reports for indoor, dedicated outdoor air ventilation units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
- 2) Manufacturer model number.
- 3) Serial number.
- 4) Network address, if applicable.
- 5) Each equipment setting.
- 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
- 7) Proper service clearance provided.
- 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
- 13) Controller location.
- 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 16) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 18) Fan external static pressure setting.
- 19) Filter type and condition acceptable.
- 20) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 21) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 22) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 23) Automatic dampers properly installed and operating.
- 24) Ductwork properly connected.

- 25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
- 26) Remarks.

g. Inspection reports for energy recovery ventilators shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
- 2) Manufacturer model number.
- 3) Serial number.
- 4) Network address, if applicable.
- 5) Each equipment setting.
- 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
- 7) Proper service clearance provided.
- 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
- 13) Controller location.
- 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 15) Humidity readings.
- 16) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 18) Fan external static pressure setting.
- 19) Filter type and condition acceptable.
- 20) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 21) Automatic dampers properly installed and operating.
- 22) Ductwork properly connected.
- 23) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
- 24) Remarks.

h. Inspection reports for hydronic units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
- 2) Manufacturer model number.
- 3) Serial number.
- 4) Network address, if applicable.
- 5) Each equipment setting.
- 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
- 7) Proper service clearance provided.
- 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
- 13) Controller location.
- 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 15) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 16) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 17) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 18) Hydronic piping properly connected and insulated.
- 19) Proof of water flow checked for proper operation.
- 20) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 21) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.

22) Remarks.

- i. Installer shall provide manufacturer with the requested documentation and technical support during inspection.
- j. Installer shall correct observed deficiencies found by the inspection.
- k. Upon completing the on-site inspection, manufacturer shall provide a written report with complete documentation describing each inspection step, the result, and any corrective action required.
- l. If corrective action is required by Installer that cannot be completed during the same visit, provide additional visits, as required, until deficiencies are resolved and systems are deemed ready for startup.
- m. Final report shall indicate the system(s) inspected are installed according to manufacturer's requirements and are ready for startup.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:

- 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
- 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:

- 1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
- 2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure of not less than 1.5 times VRF HVAC system operating pressure, but not less than 600 psig, using dry nitrogen.
- 3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
- 4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
 - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
 - d. Date and time at start of test.
 - e. Test pressure at start of test.
 - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
 - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - h. Date and time at end of test.
 - i. Test pressure at end of test.
 - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
 - k. Remarks:
- 5. Submit test reports for Project record.

D. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
 - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
 - d. Date and time at start of test.
 - e. Test pressure at start of test.
 - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
 - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - h. Date and time at end of test.
 - i. Test pressure at end of test.
 - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
 - k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.
6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.

E. System Refrigerant Charge:

1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.
2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.

F. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.018 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.
1. Service representative shall be an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
 3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
4. Check each indoor unit, HRCU, and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
5. Check sound levels of each indoor and outdoor unit.

C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.

1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.

D. System Operation Report:

1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.
2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than two hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.
 - a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.

E. Witness:

1. Invite Engineer, Owner and Commissioning Agent to witness startup service procedures.
2. Provide written notice not less than 20 business days before start of startup service.

3.019 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.020 PROTECTION

- A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

- B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.
- C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.
- D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

3.021 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of system Installer who are manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include two service visits for preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper equipment and system operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.022 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.023 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's employed training instructor or factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.
- B. Instructor:
 - 1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified by VRF HVAC system manufacturer with current training on the system(s), equipment, and controls that are installed.
 - 2. Instructor's credentials shall be submitted for review by Engineer before scheduling training.
 - 3. Instructor(s) primary job responsibility shall be Owner training.
 - 4. Instructor(s) shall have not less than three years of training experience with VRF HVAC system manufacturer and past training experience on at least three projects of comparable size and complexity.
- C. Schedule and Duration:
 - 1. Schedule training with Owner at least 20 business days before first training session.

2. Training shall occur before Owner occupancy.
 3. Training shall be held at mutually agreed date and time during normal business hours.
 4. Each training day shall not exceed eight hours of training. Daily training schedule shall allow time for one-hour lunch period and 15-minute break after every two hours of training.
 5. Perform not less than eight total hours of training.
- D. Location: Owner shall provide a suitable on-site location to host classroom training.
- E. Training Attendees: Assume three people.
- F. Training Attendance: For record purposes, document training attendees at the start of each new training session. Record attendee's name, signature, phone number, and e-mail address.
- G. Training Format: Individual training modules shall include classroom training followed by hands-on field demonstration and training.
- H. Training Materials: Provide training materials in electronic format to each attendee.
1. Include instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
 2. Video record each classroom training session and submit an electronic copy to Owner before requesting Owner acceptance of training.
- I. Acceptance: Obtain Engineer, Commissioning Agent or Owner written acceptance that training is complete and requirements indicated have been satisfied.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260500
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Related Documents:

1. Drawings and general provisions of the Subcontract apply to this Section.
2. Review these documents for coordination with additional requirements and information that apply to work under this Section.

B. Section Includes:

1. The Subcontractor shall furnish services, skilled and common labor, and apparatus and materials required for the complete installation as shown and within the intent of the drawings and these Specifications.
2. Work includes, but not limited to, the following and shall be completed in accordance with the project construction drawings and specifications:
 - a. Installation of transformer, and cable/conduit from the existing service and to the electrical room of the new addition.
 - b. Installation of all lighting, devices, wiring, conduit, disconnects, distribution, etc. in the new addition, including supply to all HVAC and mechanical equipment.
 - c. Removal/relocation of existing feeds to window air conditioners and existing fan coil units, to supply new fan coil units with integral compressors.
 - d. Relocation and/or addition of power and lighting to renovated sections of the existing building.
 - e. Installation of additional devices and circuits to renovated labs and classrooms.

C. Related Sections:

1. This section applies to Division 26 Sections.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. General:

1. The following documents form part of the Specifications to the extent stated. Where differences exist between codes and standards, the one affording the greatest protection shall apply.
2. Unless otherwise noted, the referenced standard edition is the current one at the time of commencement of the Work.

B. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

C. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

D. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IES)

E. National Electrical Safety Code (NESEC)

F. NFPA 70E- Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

G. NETA ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems, latest edition.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: The Subcontractor shall submit for approval Shop Drawings prepared in accordance with Drawings and sections of the Specifications.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. If the Drawings or Specifications may not appear clear or definite, the Subcontractor shall request the Project Manager through 'Request for Information' (RFI) process for an interpretation and decision of same and shall have such questions decided before proceeding with the Work.
- B. Manufacturer's Directions: Follow manufacturer's directions covering points not shown on the drawings or specified herein. Manufacturer's directions do not take precedence over drawings and Specifications. Where these are in conflict with the Drawings and Specifications, notify the Project Manager for clarification before installing the work.
- C. Protection of Equipment:
 - 1. Care shall be exercised during construction to avoid damage or disfigurement. Equipment shall be protected from dust and moisture prior to and during construction. The Subcontractor is cautioned that concrete finishing, painting, etc. in electrical rooms shall not proceed if unprotected equipment is installed.
 - 2. Where required or directed, construct temporary protection for equipment and installations so as to protect same from dust and debris caused by construction.
 - 3. All protection shall be substantially constructed with the use of clean canvas, heavy plastic, and/or plywood as required, and made rain tight and/or dust resistant as directed or appropriate for conditions.
 - 4. The Subcontractor shall repair by spray or brush painting, after properly preparing the surface, scratches or defects in the finish of the equipment. Only identical paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer shall be used for such purposes.
 - 5. Failure of the Subcontractor to protect the equipment as outlined herein shall be grounds for rejection of the equipment and its installation.
- D. Removed Equipment and Material: Coordinate removal of the materials and debris with the project construction officer - Owner owned Materials to be turned over to District.
- E. Shutdown: Provide request to the owner representative to shut down the power to any equipment to be removed. The request shall be submitted not less than 5 working days before scheduled work. The power shall not be shut down to any equipment for which the approval was not obtained.
- F. Cleaning: All material shall be protected from dust and the construction debris. All material shall be cleaned before installation in accordance with manufacturer specification. Clean area of work after every working shift.
- G. Qualifications and License Requirements:
 - 1. Prime, Sub, or Sub-Sub contractor performing electrical construction work on the project shall be Licensed in the state of Pennsylvania.
 - 2. Subcontractor performing electrical construction work shall provide details of the project experience addresses and references with names and phone numbers.
 - 3. Certified electricians shall have evidence of certification in their possession at all times. Non-certified personnel shall perform electrical work under the continuous supervision of a certified electrician.

- H. Materials and Equipment: Materials and equipment shall be new. Materials and equipment for which tests have been established by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. shall be approved by that body and shall bear its label of approval or the label of an OSHA approved nationally recognized testing laboratory [NRTL].
 - 1. All equipment shall comply with requirements of the applicable Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. standards.
 - 2. The materials to be furnished under this Specification shall be the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such equipment equal to or superior to material specified and shall be the manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the Specification requirements.
- I. Approval of Materials:
 - 1. A complete list of materials and equipment proposed shall be submitted to the Project Manager for approval. The list shall include for each item: the manufacturer, the manufacturer's catalog number, type or class, the rating, capacity, size, etc.
 - 2. The Subcontractor shall submit a brochure containing catalog cuts or drawings and data for every all equipment installed under this project.
 - 3. Before installation of the equipment, the Subcontractor shall submit for approval detailed construction drawings for each item of fabricated equipment required for the electrical installation. Drawings shall be to scale and fully dimensioned and shall provide sufficient detail to clearly indicate the arrangement of equipment and its components.
 - 4. Installation of approved substituted equipment is the Subcontractor's responsibility, and changes required to work included under other divisions for installations of approved substituted equipment must be made to the satisfaction of the Architect-Engineer and without change in contract price. Approval by the Architect-Engineer of substituted equipment and/or dimension drawings does not waive these requirements.

1.05 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. The Subcontractor shall examine the site and become familiar with conditions that may affect the work covered by this division of the Specifications in order to obtain a conclusive bid. Failure to do so shall not lessen the subcontractor's responsibility or entitle him to additional compensation for work not included in the bid.
- B. The electrical prime, sub or sub-sub contractor shall list separately in the bid quote exceptions taken from the construction documents and specifications. If none are specified in the bid quote, it shall be understood that the prime, sub or sub-sub contractor shall comply with the requirements of the construction documents and specifications in their entirety.

1.06 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintenance and Operating Instructions:
 - 1. At time of occupancy, arrange for manufacturer's representatives to instruct building, operating and maintenance personnel in the use of equipment requiring operating and maintenance. Arrange for personnel to be instructed at one time. Pay the costs for such service.
 - 2. Maintenance and Operation manuals and operating instructions shall be provided training agenda a minimum 5 days before training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

- A. In addition to material and equipment specified, the Subcontractor shall also provide incidental materials required to effect a complete installation. Such incidental materials include solders, tapes, caulking, mastics, gaskets and similar items that are approved for the purpose.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be uniform throughout the installation. Equipment of the same type shall be of the same manufacturer. Materials and equipment shall be new. Materials and equipment for which tests have been established by the Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. shall bare a UL label.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 TESTS

- A. Upon completion of the electrical construction work, perform tests and provide test reports as specified in this and other sections. Testing will include, but not limited, to:
 - 1. Verify no circuit is grounded or contains a short circuit
 - 2. All devices work smoothly and operate the equipment shown on the plans.
 - 3. No removable or openable cover is restricted by any other equipment whether electrical or installed under a different contract.
 - 4. All connections are tight and are not causing a high resistance connection.
- B. Tests of equipment shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer recommendations. The application or interruption of power shall be programmed and directed by the Project Manager.
- C. The Subcontractor shall submit to the Project Manager three (3) copies of test results, certified in writing, witnessed, signed and dated, immediately upon completion of work. Unsatisfactory condition revealed by these test results, or unsatisfactory methods of tests and/or testing apparatus and instruments, shall be corrected by the Subcontractor to the satisfaction of the Project Manager.
- D. The Project Manager reserves the right to require that the Subcontractor perform and repeat tests that are deemed necessary to complete or check the tests or the certified records of the Subcontractor at any time during the course of the work. The Subcontractor shall correct unsatisfactory portion of his work that is revealed by the tests or that may be due to progressive deterioration during this period, unless the item in question was a direct specification.

3.02 ARC FLASH HAZARD WARNING LABELING

- A. Switchgear, switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and meter panels/enclosures shall be labeled to warn qualified persons of potential electric shock.
- B. Labels shall, as a minimum, display the following:
 - 1. Incident energy in Calories/cm² at the working distance.
 - 2. Flash hazard boundary distance.
 - 3. Shock hazard voltage when covers are removed.
 - 4. Limited approach boundary.
 - 5. Restricted approach boundary.
 - 6. Prohibited approach boundary.

3.03 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Transformers: Transformers shall be identified by one-inch-high white characters giving bank number and circuit feeding the transformer in agreement with the Drawings. Labeling may be black writing on white background applied sticker (emergency panels shall be a red background), or engraved nameplate with 1" high lettering, white letters on Black background.
- B. Panelboards: Panelboards shall be identified with the name listed on the drawings and panel schedule by one-inch-high black writing on white background applied sticker (emergency panels shall be a red background). Voltage and phase shall be describe on Arc Flash label.
- C. Schedules: Panelboards shall be furnished with a complete 8-1/2" x 11" typewritten schedule mounted on the inside of the inner door with a protective cover. If field changes are necessary, new schedules shall be provided by the Subcontractor. Forms will be provided by the Project Manager.
- D. Receptacles and Light Switches: Receptacles and light switches shall be identified by a circuit number as indicated on the drawings with 1/4 inches (6 mm) high white characters on 1/2 inch (12 mm) wide dark contrasting stick-on embossing tape placed directly above the device on the reverse side of the cover.
- E. Equipment: Properly identify circuit breakers and other devices on switchboards, motor disconnect switches, starters, time clocks, and other apparatus used for operation of, or control of circuits, appliances or equipment by means of 1" high lettering in black on white background applied sticker.
- F. Conductors: The main incoming power will be delivered to the building site with the A phase, B phase, C phase and Neutral phase (if applicable) cables positively identified. The phase sequence rotation shall be A-B-C clockwise and standard left to right.
 - 1. Conductors shall be identified using factory colored wires or by using color bands or tape intended for the purpose and approved for wet, outdoor applications at terminations, junctions and wherever the conductors are accessible in pull boxes. Conductors shall be color coded, identified as "A Phase", "B Phase", and "C Phase".
 - 2. For color coding of low voltage conductors, see Division 26 Section "600 Volt Conductors and Cable", Paragraph 2.1.
 - 3. Branch circuit identification shall be by use of wrap-around labels such as manufactured by Brady, Thomas and Betts, or equal. Labels shall be placed on conductors at all loads not identified under other sections of this specification. This includes, but not limited, to: junction boxes, relays, disconnect switches, motor starters, and controls.

3.04 NOISE AND VIBRATION

- A. The Subcontractor shall cooperate in reducing objectionable noise or vibration. If noise or vibration is a result of improper material or installation, these conditions shall be corrected at no cost to the School District.

3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION METHODS

- A. Carpentry, Cutting, Patching, and Core Drilling:
 - 1. Provide carpentry, cutting, patching, and core drilling required for installation of material and equipment specified in the scope of work.
 - 2. Do not cut, core, or drill structural members without consent of the Project Manager.

3. Seismic Mounting: Electrical material and equipment, including floor mounted equipment, suspended raceways and light fixtures, shall be installed with bracing, cabling, or anchoring to comply with the latest edition of the CBC and Standard and Division 01 Section "Lateral Force Provisions." See 031500 – Concrete Accessories for approved anchors.
- B. Waterproof Construction:
1. Maintain waterproof integrity of penetrations of materials intended to be waterproof. Provide flashings at exterior roof penetrations. Caulk penetrations of foundation walls and floors watertight. Provide membrane clamps at penetrations of waterproof membranes.
 2. Provide waterproof NEMA 3R enclosures for equipment or devices mounted outside or otherwise exposed to the weather.
 3. Leave drip loop at all cable to conduit entry points, and penetrate building at an upward angle going into the building with any conduit penetrations.
- C. Sleeves, Conduit Stubs, and Slab Penetrations: See Division 09 Section "Painting".
- D. Painting of Electrical Equipment and Hardware:
1. Provide moisture resistant paint for exterior painting.
 2. Colors shall be as shown on the drawings unless specified.
 3. Refer to individual Sections and Construction Drawings for painting requirements of electrical equipment.
- E. Equipment Concrete Pads:
1. Equipment located on concrete floors inside the building or on grade outside the building, shall be mounted on a concrete base. The concrete base shall be four inches high and shall extend four inches (4") beyond the edge of equipment base unless indicated otherwise on drawings. All pads shall have 1" chamfered or rounded edge.
- F. Demolition and Removal:
1. Refer to construction documents for demolition and removal details.
 2. The approval shall be obtained from the owner representative/ construction manager prior to disposal of electrical equipment and materials.
 3. Disconnected wiring shall be removed from raceway systems, panels, enclosures pull boxes, junction boxes etc. irrespective of whether the removal is specified in the construction documents or not. The empty raceway systems shall be tagged spare on both ends of each termination.
 4. All removed products are considered property of the School District and shall be turned over to their representative, or he shall provide direction of an alternative.

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 26 0519
LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
- 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260500 "Common Work Result for Electrical".
- 2. Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems"
- 3. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. VFD: Variable Frequency Drive.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following, or approved equal:

1. Alpha Wire Company.
 2. Belden Inc.
 3. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 4. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
- B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN/THWN-2
- D. Multi-conductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for metal-clad cable, Type TC shielded with ground wire.
- E. VFD Cable:
1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
 2. Type TC-ER with oversized cross-linked polyethylene insulation, dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.02 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
1. 3M.
 2. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 3. Gardner Bender.
 4. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, marked for intended location and application, and installed per the listed application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger. Aluminum cable may be substituted for circuits over 100A if ampacity of the alternate is equal to or greater than the design, and all terminations are crimp-on then bolted to device terminal.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.02 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single circuits in metallic raceway.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single circuits in metallic raceway and Metal-clad assembled cable.
- C. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type TC-ER
- D. Exposed Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, single circuits in raceway.
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single circuits in metallic raceway and Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables/conduits parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible. Flexible metallic conduit, in lengths not exceeding 4', may be used to offset or go around structural blockages.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.

2. Use crimp terminals with bolted lugs for each permitted use of Aluminum wire.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.
- D. Receptacles shall be side wired per Exhibit 110.3 of NEC Handbook.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.
- C. Identify each spare conduit with a tag listing size and number of bends. Attach tag to both the pull string and anchor inside box or at stub-up. Tags exposed to elements shall be waterproof and non-degrading with permanent markings

3.06 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies.

3.07 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Firestopping shall be intumescent caulk/putty listed for use and installed in quantity required to maintain wall rating.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test feeder conductors and conductors feeding all other supplemental and supporting equipment for compliance with project requirements.
 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 8 AWG and larger. Immediately before scan (not sooner), remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. All tested circuits shall be operating under full load for a minimum of 10 minutes prior to testing. Any splice showing a temperature rise of 10 degrees Centigrade over ambient will be considered deficient. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan at no cost to owner.

- a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 1 month after failed initial inspection. Any second failures shall be pointed out to the owner and the offending equipment replaced at no cost to the owner.
 - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken and observations after remedial action.
- B. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
- 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 26 0526
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.
 - 4. Grounding and bonding conductors.
 - 5. Grounding (earthing) electrodes
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
 - 2. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
 - 3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 - 4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.

2.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.03 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare copper conductors, solid if #8 and smaller, stranded if larger. Aluminum shall not be used for grounding electrode conductors or at/below grade but may be used for grounding feeders or branch circuits if terminated as described in Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and phase conductors are Aluminum.

2.04 ROD ELECTRODE

- A. Copper-clad steel, 5/8 inch by 8 feet.

2.05 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.02 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Transformer: Connect grounding terminal to the equipment ground at the transformer location. The conductor shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor terminal and to the frame of the transformer.

3.03 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- C. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- C. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- D. Bond all other metallic systems, such as gas piping and sprinkler piping as required in NFPA 70, National Electrical Code

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds 20 Ohms, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 26 0529
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Hangers.
 - b. Steel slotted support systems.
 - c. Trapeze hangers.
 - d. Clamps.
 - e. Turnbuckles.
 - f. Sockets.
 - g. Eye nuts.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.
 - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
 - 2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
 - 3. Equipment supports.
 - 4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.02 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

- a. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - c. GS Metals Corp.
 - d. G-Strut.
 - e. Haydon Corporation.
 - f. Metal Ties Innovation.
 - g. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Material: Galvanized steel.
3. Channel Width: 1-1/4 inches (31.75 mm)
4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
5. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
- 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.

4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.03 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems unless requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/2 inch (12 mm) in diameter.
- D. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.
- E. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.02 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69 and/or Spring-tension clamps].
 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.04 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.05 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 26 0533
RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of

Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - 2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
 - 3. Electri-Flex Company.
 - 4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - 5. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
 - 6. Republic Conduit.
 - 7. Robroy Industries.
 - 8. Southwire Company.
 - 9. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS - PACKAGE #2

26 0533 - 2

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- D. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit or IMC.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- H. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel
- I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- J. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
 - 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel
 - b. Type: compression.
 - 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- K. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.02 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 and Type 12 where required, unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

- D. Wireway Covers: Flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.03 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. MonoSystems, Inc.

2.04 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
 - 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 - 3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
 - 4. FSR Inc.
 - 5. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
 - 6. Hubbell Incorporated.
 - 7. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
 - 8. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - 9. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
 - 10. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - 11. RACO; Hubbell.
 - 12. Robroy Industries.
 - 13. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

- G. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb (32 kg).
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep) and 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm by 60 mm by 60 mm deep)
- K. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 and Type 12 where required with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- M. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 and Type 12 where required galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT with compression fittings.
 - 2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Mechanical rooms.
 - 3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT with compression fittings.
 - 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 - 5. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC or IMC.

- 6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, Type 12 where required.
- B. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.
- C. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealants recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. EMT: Use compression fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- D. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

- J. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- K. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- L. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- M. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- N. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- O. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- P. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- Q. Surface Raceways:
 - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
 - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- R. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- S. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- T. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- U. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
 - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.

- 2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
 - V. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
 - W. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
 - X. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
 - Y. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
 - Z. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- 3.03 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS
- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- 3.04 FIRESTOPPING
- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.05 PROTECTION
- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260543
UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EPEC raceways and fittings.
2. Type ERMC-SS raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
3. Type ERMC-S raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
4. Type IMC raceways.
5. Type PVC raceways and fittings.
6. Type RTRC-BG raceways and fittings.
7. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
8. Threaded metal joint compound.
9. Solvent cements.
10. Duct accessories.
11. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground wiring.
12. Manholes for exterior underground wiring.
13. Utility structure accessories.
14. Duct sealing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (Type NUCC).

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Duct: A single raceway or multiple raceways, installed singly or as components of a duct bank.
- B. Duct Bank: Two or more ducts installed in parallel, direct buried or with additional casing materials such as concrete.
- C. Handhole: An underground chamber containing electrical cables, sized such that personnel are not required to enter in order to access the cables.
- D. Manhole: An underground chamber containing electrical cables and equipment, sized to provide access with working space clearances.
- E. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference:
- B. Preinstallation Coordination Meeting(s):

1. Attendees: Installers, fabricators, representatives of manufacturers, and administrators for field tests and inspections. Notify Construction Manager and Owner's representative of scheduled meeting dates.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
2. Ducts, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes and other utility structures.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning planks.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Electric Utility Duct Banks and Structures:

- a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including attachments to other Work.
- b. Indicate locations of private property boundaries and utility easements.
- c. Include information required for approval by electric utility and for obtaining public space utility work permits.

2. Precast or Factory-Fabricated Concrete Structures:

- a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including attachments to other Work.
- b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes, and methods and materials for waterproofing duct entry locations.
- c. Include reinforcement details.
- d. Include frame and cover design and manhole chimneys.
- e. Include ladder or step details.
- f. Include grounding details.
- g. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, sumps, and other accessories.
- h. Include joint details.

3. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:

- a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
- b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes, and methods and materials for waterproofing duct entry locations.
- c. Include cover design.
- d. Include grounding details.
- e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and other accessories.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates:

1. For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes as required by ASTM C858.

B. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation and testing instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. For Type ERMC-S-PVC.

C. Source Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Source quality-control reports.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- ### A. Spare Parts: Furnish to Owner spare parts necessary for repairing or adding more cables to manholes or handholes that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.07 REGULATORY AGENCY APPROVALS

- ### A. Shop Drawing submittals for electric utility duct banks and structures must be signed and sealed by qualified electrical professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Obtain approval by electric utility prior to submitting for action by Architect.

- ### B. Submit Shop Drawings for electric utility duct banks and structures for action by Architect prior to submitting for approval by electric utility.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 TYPE EPEC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 651A and UL CCN EAZX.

B. Schedule 40 Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-40):

1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

C. Schedule 80 Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-80):

1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)

D. Type A Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-A):

1. Dimensional Specifications: Type A.
2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)

E. Type B Electrical HDPE Underground Conduit (EPEC-B):

1. Dimensional Specifications: Type B.
2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)

2.02 TYPE ERMC-SS RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 6A and UL CCN DYWV.

B. Stainless Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-SS), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:

1. Material: Stainless steel.
2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)
 - b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.03 TYPE ERMC-S RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 6 and UL CCN DYIX.

B. Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:

1. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
2. Options:
 - a. Interior Coating: Zinc
 - b. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)
 - c. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

- C. PVC-Coated-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-PVC), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
1. Additional Characteristics:
 2. Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit:
 - a. Minimum coating thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
 - b. Conduit bodies must be Form 8 with effective seal and positive placement feature to ease and assure proper installation. Certified results confirming seal performance at 15 psig (positive) and 25 inch Hg (vacuum) for 72 hours must be available. Conduit bodies must be supplied with plastic-encapsulated stainless steel cover screws.
 - c. Form 2 inch long or one pipe diameter long, whichever is less, PVC sleeve at openings of female fittings, except unions. Inside sleeve diameter must be matched to outside diameter of metal conduit.
 - d. PVC coating on outside of conduit couplings must be protected from tool damage during installation.
 - e. Female threads on fittings and couplings must be protected by urethane coating.
 - f. Fittings must be from same manufacturer as conduit.
 - g. Beam clamps and U bolts must be formed and sized to fit outside diameter of coated conduit. Plastic-encapsulated nuts must cover exposed portions of threads.
 3. Options:
 - a. Exterior Coating: PVC complying with NEMA RN 1
 - b. Interior Coating: Zinc
 - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)
 - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.
 - e. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - f. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

2.04 TYPE IMC RACEWAYS

- A. Performance Criteria:
1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 2. General Characteristics: UL 1242 and UL CCN DYBY.
- B. Steel Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):
1. Options:
 - a. Exterior Coating: Alternative corrosion-resistant coating.
 - b. Interior Coating: Zinc.
 - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)
 - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.05 TYPE PVC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. General Characteristics: UL 651 and UL CCN DZYR.

- B. Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:
 - 1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)
 - b. Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire.

- C. Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:
 - 1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)
 - b. Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire.

- D. Type A Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Conduit (PVC-A) and Fittings:
 - 1. Dimensional Specifications: Type A.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2)

- E. Type EB Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Underground Conduit (PVC-EB) and Fittings:
 - 1. Dimensional Specifications: Type EB.

2.06 TYPE RTRC-BG RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. General Characteristics: UL 2420 and UL CCN DZKT, for Type BG.

- B. Low-Halogen, Belowground Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC-BG) and Fittings:

2.07 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.

- B. Metallic Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Raceways:

1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL CCN DWTT.
2. Options:
 - a. Material: Steel
 - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling, Raintight compression coupling with distinctive color gland nut Setscrew coupling. Setscrew couplings with only single screw per conduit are unacceptable.
 - c. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - d. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

2.08 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL Subject 2419 and UL CCN FOIZ.

2.09 SOLVENT CEMENTS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: As recommended by conduit manufacturer in accordance with UL 514B and UL CCN DWTT.
3. Sustainability Characteristics:

B. Solvent Cements for Type PVC Raceways and Fittings:

2.010 DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.

B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: In accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inch in size, manufactured from 6000 psi concrete.

1. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
2. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2 inch high, 3/8 inch deep letters.

2.011 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. ASTM C858 for design and manufacturing processes.
 - b. SCTE 77.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Precast Concrete Utility Structures: Test and inspect in accordance with ASTM C1037.
2. Polymer Concrete and Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototypes: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests must be for specified tier ratings of products supplied. Testing machine pressure gages must have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.
 - a. Tests of materials must be performed by independent testing agency.
 - b. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers must be by independent testing agency or manufacturer. Qualified registered professional engineer must certify tests by manufacturer.

C. Precast Concrete Handholes and Boxes

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover must form top of enclosure and must have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
2. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.⁸
3. Frame and Cover:
 - a. Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 - b. Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 - c. Weatherproof steel frame, with concealed-hinge steel access door assembly; tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts; hold-open ratchet assembly; and recessed cover handle.
 - d. Weatherproof aluminum frame, with concealed-hinge aluminum access door assembly; tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts; hold-open ratchet assembly; and recessed cover handle.
 - e. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - f. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, ELECTRIC
4. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
 - a. Extension must provide increased depth of 12 inch
 - b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.

5. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at installation location with ground-water level at grade.
6. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus additional 12 inch vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - a. Knockout panels must be located no less than 6 inch from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - b. Knockout panel opening must have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct.
 - c. Knockout panels must be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 - d. Knockout panels must be 1-1/2 to 2 inch thick.
7. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - a. Type and size: Match fittings to duct to be terminated.
 - b. Fittings must align with elevations of approaching duct and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
 - c. Provide minimum of one cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting of each size provided in each wall
8. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

D. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover:

1. Description: Molded of sand, concrete, and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or combination.
2. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and installed location.
 - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - b. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC"
4. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings must mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
5. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
6. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings must mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
8. Options:
 - a. Color: Gray or Green.

E. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Frame and Cover:

1. Description: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
2. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
 - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - b. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC".
4. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
5. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings must mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
6. Handholes 12 inch wide by 24 inch long and larger must have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
7. Options:
 - a. Color: Gray or Green.

F. High-Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Boxes:

1. Description: Injection molded of HDPE or copolymer-polypropylene. Cover must be made of polymer concrete.
2. Configuration: Units must be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
 - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - b. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC"
4. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
5. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings must be installed perpendicular to box wall and mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall without putting stress on box wall or fitting.
6. Options:
 - a. Color: Gray or Green.

2.012 MANHOLES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics:

- a. ASTM C858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- b. SCTE 77.

B. Precast Concrete Manholes:

- 1. Description: One-piece units and units with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
- 2. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus additional 12 inch vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - a. Knockout panels must be located no less than 6 inch from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or roofs of manholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - b. Knockout panel opening must have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct.
 - c. Knockout panel must be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 - d. Knockout panels must be 1-1/2 to 2 inch thick.
- 3. Duct Entrances in Manhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - a. Type and size: Match fittings to duct to be terminated.
 - b. Fittings must align with elevations of approaching duct and be located near interior corners of manholes to facilitate racking of cable.
 - c. Provide minimum of one cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting of each size provided in each wall.
- 4. Ground Rod Sleeve: Provide 3 inch PVC sleeve in manhole floors 2 inch from wall adjacent to, but not underneath, duct entering structure.
- 5. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at installation location with ground-water level at grade.
- 6. Source Quality Control: Test and inspect in accordance with ASTM C1037.

C. Cast-In-Place Concrete Manholes:

- 1. Description: Underground utility structures, constructed in place, complete with accessories, hardware, and features. Include concrete knockout panels for duct entrance and sleeve for ground rod.

2.013 UTILITY STRUCTURE ACCESSORIES

- A. Description: Utility equipment and accessory items used for utility structure access and utility support, listed and labeled for intended use and application complying with the following local utility company requirements.
- B. Manhole Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for manhole.

1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, gray cast iron complying with ASTM A48/A48M, Class 30B with milled cover-to-frame bearing surfaces; diameter, 26 inch.
 - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish must have minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - b. Special Covers: Recess in face of cover designed to accept finish material in paved areas.
 2. Cover Legend: Cast in; selected to suit system.
 - a. Legend:
 - 1) "ELECTRIC-LV" for duct systems with power wires and cables for systems operating at 600 V and less.
 - 2) "ELECTRIC-HV" for duct systems with medium-voltage cables.
 3. Manhole Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
 - a. Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft where packaged mix complying with ASTM C387/C387M, Type M, may be used.
 - b. Seal joints watertight using preformed plastic or rubber complying with ASTM C990. Install sealing material in accordance with sealant manufacturers' published instructions.
- C. Manhole Sump Frame and Grate: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 30B, gray cast iron.
- D. Pulling Eyes in Concrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing-bar fastening insert, 2 inch diameter eye, and 1-by-4 inch bolt.
1. Working Load Embedded in 6 inch, 4000 psi Concrete: 13,000 lbf minimum tension.
- E. Pulling Eyes in Nonconcrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforced fastening, 1-1/4 inch diameter eye, rated 2500 lbf minimum tension.
- F. Pulling-in and Lifting Irons in Concrete Floors: 7/8 inch diameter, hot-dip galvanized, bent steel rod; stress relieved after forming; fastened to reinforcing rod; and with exposed triangular opening.
1. Ultimate Yield Strength: 40,000 lbf shear and 60,000 lbf tension.
- G. Bolting Inserts for Concrete Utility Structure Cable Racks and Other Attachments: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical-resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; 1/2 inch ID by 2-3/4 inch deep, flared to 1-1/4 inch minimum at base.
1. Tested Ultimate Pullout Strength: 12,000 lbf minimum.
- H. Ground Rod Sleeve: 3 inch PVC sleeve in manhole floors 2 inch from wall adjacent to, but not underneath, ducts routed from facility.
- I. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless steel expander clip with 1/2 inch bolt, 5300 lbf rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800 lbf rated shear strength.

- J. Steel Cable Rack Assembly: Hot-rolled galvanized, except insulators.
 - 1. Stanchions: T-section or channel with provisions to connect to other sections or channels to form continuous unit; 1-1/2 inch in width by nominal 24 inch long; punched with 14 hook holes on 1-1/2 inch centers for cable-arm attachment.
 - 2. Arms: 1-1/2 inch wide, lengths ranging from 3 inch with 450 lb minimum capacity to 18 inch with 250 lb minimum capacity. Arms must have slots along full length for cable ties and be arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at vertical locations on stanchions.
 - 3. Insulators: High-glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.
- K. Nonmetallic Cable Rack Assembly: Components fabricated from nonconductive, fiberglass-reinforced polymer.
 - 1. Stanchions: Nominal 36 inch high by 4 inch wide, with provisions to connect to other sections to form continuous unit, with minimum of nine holes for arm attachment.
 - 2. Arms: Arranged for secure, drop-in attachment in horizontal position at locations on cable stanchions, and capable of being locked in position. Arms must be available in lengths ranging from 3 inch with 450 lb minimum capacity to 20 inch with 250 lb minimum capacity. Top of arm must be nominally 4 inch wide, and arm must have slots along full length for cable ties.
- L. Portable Manhole Ladders: UL-listed, heavy-duty fiberglass specifically designed for portable use for access to electrical manholes. Length must be not less than distance from deepest manhole floor to grade plus 36 inch. Two ladder(s) are required.

2.014 DUCT SEALING

- A. Duct-Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F. Compound must be capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduit, conduit and duct coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals. Duct sealing compound must be removable without damaging ducts or cables.
- B. Inflatable Duct-Sealing System: Wraparound inflatable bladder that seals ducts that are empty or containing conductors against air and water infiltration. System is suitable for use in steel, plastic, or concrete ducts and penetrations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in field. Notify Architect if there is conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as

required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

3.02 SELECTION OF UNDERGROUND DUCTS

- A. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: PVC-40 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Bored Underground Duct: EPEC-40 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths, Walks: PVC-40.

3.03 SELECTION OF UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handholes and Boxes:
 - 1. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 structural load rating.
 - 2. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading
 - 3. Cover design load must not exceed load rating of handhole or box.
- B. Manholes: Precast concrete.
 - 1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating in accordance with AASHTO HB 17.
 - 2. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating in accordance with AASHTO HB 17.

3.04 EARTHWORK

- A. Restoration: Restore area immediately after backfilling is completed.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching.
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF DUCTS AND DUCT BANKS

- A. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NEMA TCB 2 for installation of underground ducts and duct banks.

2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Special Techniques:

1. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
2. Steel raceway, bends, and fittings in single duct run or duct bank must be of same type.
3. Slope: Pitch duct minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from high point between two manholes to drain in both directions.
4. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole.
5. Install expansion fitting near center of straight line duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch.
6. Curves and Bends:
 - a. Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with minimum radius of 48 inch both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements, except bends over 45 degrees must be made with minimum radius of 48 inch. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved. Use PVC heating bender for bending PVC conduit.
 - c. Duct must have maximum of 180 degrees of bends between pull points.
7. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in nonmetallic duct and fittings and make watertight in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with minimum 3 inch of concrete for minimum of 12 inch on each side of coupling.
 - a. Install insulated grounding bushings on steel raceway terminations that are less than 12 inch below grade or floor level and do not terminate in hubs.
8. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing duct will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 104 deg F. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 104 deg F, and anywhere duct crosses above underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate duct bank from steam line to maintain maximum environmental temperature of 104 deg F.
9. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inch o.c. for 5 inch duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
 - a. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 ft from end bell, without reducing duct slope and without forming trap in line.
 - b. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
10. Duct Terminators for Entrances to Cast-in-Place Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced approximately 6 inch o.c. for 4 inch duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
 - a. Begin change from regular spacing to terminator spacing 10 ft from terminator, without reducing duct line slope and without forming trap in line.

11. Building Wall Penetrations: Make transition from underground duct to steel raceway at least 10 ft outside building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from building and without forming trap in line. Use fittings manufactured for transition to steel raceway type installed. Install steel raceway penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
12. Install manufactured steel raceway elbows for stub-ups at poles unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 - a. Couple steel elbows to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with minimum 3 inch of concrete for minimum of 12 inch on each side of coupling.
13. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15 psig hydrostatic pressure.
14. Pulling Cord: Install 200 lbf test nylon cord in empty ducts.
15. Concrete-Encased Ducts and Duct Bank:
 - a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct.
 - b. Width: Excavate trench 12 inch wider than duct on each side.
 - c. Depth: Install so top of duct envelope is at least 24 inch below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inch below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated. Install so top of duct envelope is below local frost line.
 - d. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 - e. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than five spacers per 20 ft of duct. Place spacers within 24 inch of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inch between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 - f. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inch between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, 2 inch between ducts for like services, and 4 inch between power and communications ducts.
 - g. Elbows:
 - 1) Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups and at changes of direction in duct unless otherwise indicated. Extend encasement throughout length of elbow.
 - 2) Use manufactured steel elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - h. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally minimum of 60 inch from edge of equipment base.
 - 1) Stub-ups must terminate in coupling installed flush with finished floor and minimum 3 inch from conduit side to edge of slab.
 - i. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally minimum of 60 inch from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

- 1) Stub-ups must be minimum 4 inch above finished floor and no less than 3 inch from conduit side to edge of slab.
- j. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct where crossing disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
- k. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
- l. Concrete Cover: Install minimum of 3 inch of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, 2 inch between duct of like services, and 4 inch between power and communications ducts.
- m. Place minimum 6 inch of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct.
- n. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - 1) Start at one end and finish at other, allowing for expansion and contraction of duct as its temperature changes during and after pour. Use expansion fittings installed in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - 2) If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in vertical plane and install 3/4 inch reinforcing-rod dowels extending minimum of 18 inch into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
- o. Pouring Concrete: Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between duct and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow around duct and rise up in middle, uniformly filling open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-installation application.

16. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:

- a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct.
- b. Width: Excavate trench 12 inch wider than duct on each side.
- c. Depth: Install top of duct at least 36 inch below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Set elevation of top of duct bank below frost line.
- e. Place minimum 3 inch of sand as bed for duct. Place sand to minimum of 6 inch above top level of duct.
- f. Support ducts on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
- g. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 ft of duct. Place spacers within 24 inch of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inch between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
- h. Install duct with minimum of 3 inch between ducts for like services and 6 inch between power and communications duct.
- i. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct direction unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
- j. Install manufactured steel elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct.

- 1) Couple RNC duct to steel raceway with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with minimum 3 inch of concrete.
 - 2) Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally minimum of 60 inch from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - a) Stub-ups must terminate in coupling installed flush with] [be minimum 4 inch above finished base and minimum 3 inch from conduit side to edge of base.
 - 3) Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased steel raceway horizontally on exterior of wall minimum of 60 inch from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 4) Stub-ups through interior floors must minimum 4 inch above finished floor and no less than 3 inch from conduit side to edge of equipment pad or floor slab.
- k. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inch over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction.
17. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inch above direct-buried duct, placing them 36 inch o.c. Align planks along width and along centerline of duct or duct bank. Provide additional plank for each 12 inch increment of duct-bank width over nominal 18 inch. Space additional planks 12 inch apart, horizontally across width of ducts.
 18. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury nonconducting underground line specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than 12 inch above concrete-encased duct and duct banks and approximately 12 inch below grade. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inch of centerline of duct bank. Provide additional warning tape for each 12 inch increment of duct-bank width over nominal 18 inch. Space additional tapes 12 inch apart, horizontally across width of ducts.
 19. Ground ducts and duct banks in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.06 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Reference Standards:

1. Precast Concrete Handholes: Comply with ASTM C891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Special Techniques:

1. Cast-in-Place Manholes:
 - a. Finish interior surfaces with smooth-troweled finish.

- b. Knockouts for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels 1-1/2 to 2 inch thick, arranged as indicated.
- 2. Precast Concrete Handholes and Manholes:
 - a. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
 - b. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on level bed of crushed stone or gravel graded from 1 inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
 - c. Field-cut openings for conduits in accordance with enclosure manufacturer's published instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- 3. Elevations:
 - a. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inch below finished grade.
 - b. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch above finished grade.
 - c. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
 - d. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
 - e. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
- 4. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
- 5. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.
 - a. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
 - b. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings, and cast-iron frame to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight joints and waterproof grouting for frame and chimney.
- 6. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes after concrete has cured at least three days. After duct has been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- 7. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes after concrete has cured at least three days. After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- 8. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
- 9. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.
- 10. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inch for manholes and 2 inch for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in field. Use minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.
- 11. Ground manholes, handholes, and boxes in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.07 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Reference Standards:

1. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Special Techniques:

1. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2 inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
3. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
4. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line below grade.
5. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
6. Field cut openings for duct in accordance with enclosure manufacturer's published instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
7. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour concrete ring encircling, and in contact with enclosure entry, and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring must rest on compacted earth.
 - a. Concrete: 3000 psi, 28-day strength with troweled finish.
 - b. Dimensions: 10 inch wide by 12 inch deep
8. Ground handholes and boxes in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Retain first paragraph below to require that field quality-control tests be witnessed. Local ordinance or custom may require that authorities having jurisdiction witness the testing.

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide minimum 12 inch long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- D. Nonconforming Work:
 - 1. Underground ducts, raceways, and structures will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - 2. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.
- E. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.
- F. Manufacturer Services:
 - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support field tests and inspections.

3.09 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump, and building interiors affected by Work.
 - 1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
 - 2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0553
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Identification for raceways.
- 2. Identification of power and control cables.
- 3. Identification for conductors.
- 4. Underground-line warning tape.
- 5. Warning labels and signs.
- 6. Instruction signs.
- 7. Equipment identification labels, including arc-flash warning labels.
- 8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 90 deg F (32 deg C), ambient; 176 deg F (80 deg C), material surfaces.

2.02 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES. " (for 120/208 equipment and) 42 INCHES (for 277/480V equipment).
 - 3. Ark Flash Hazard label per NFPA 70E.

2.03 LABELS

- A. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceways they identify, and that stay in place by gripping action.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Marking Services, Inc.
- B. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. A'n D Cable Products.
 - b. Brady Corporation.
 - c. Brother International Corporation.
 - d. Emedco.
 - e. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - f. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - g. LEM Products Inc.

- h. Marking Services, Inc.
- 2. Preprinted 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - a. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the cable or raceway diameter, such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
- 3. Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Nominal Size: 3.5-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm).
- 4. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
- 5. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.04 BANDS AND TUBES:

- A. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameters of and shrunk to fit firmly around cables they identify. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. The contractor to select the manufacturer.

2.05 TAPES AND STENCILS:

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Champion America.
 - c. Ideal Industries, Inc.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) thick; compounded for outdoor use.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.

- C. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

2.06 TAGS

- A. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.023 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. Emedco.
 - d. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - e. LEM Products Inc.
 - f. Marking Services, Inc.
- B. Write-On Tags:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - 2. Polyester Tags: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to raceway, conductor, or cable.
 - 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.07 SIGNS

- A. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Engraved legend.
 - 2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16-inch.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
 - 3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.

2.08 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. Ideal Industries, Inc.
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

2.09 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

- F. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- G. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- H. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
 - 1. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- I. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- J. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 25-foot (15-m) maximum intervals.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 20 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label. Install labels at [10-foot (3-m)] [30-foot (10-m)] maximum intervals.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. Indicate a power source and load
 - 2. Circuit number
- C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in pull and junction boxes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
 - 1. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - a. Color shall be factory applied for wire size #10 and smaller, field applied for sizes No. 8 AWG and larger if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.
 - 3) Phase C: Blue.
 - c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Brown.
 - 2) Phase B: Orange.
 - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
 - d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

- D. Install instructional sign, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels. Coordinate with building existing standards.
- E. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, use write-on tags and self-adhesive vinyl labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- F. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with the conductor designation.
- G. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
 - 2. Use system of marker-tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- H. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- I. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels
 - 1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
 - 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
 - 3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power transformers.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
 - c. Panels.
 - d. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers
 - e. VFD
- J. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive thermal transfer vinyl labels.
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 70E and ANSI Z535.4.
 - 2. Comply with Section 260574 "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- K. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
 - 1. Labeling Instructions:

- a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic label] Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
 - b. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
 - c. Unless labels are provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten them with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
2. Equipment To Be Labeled:
- a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
 - e. Motor-control centers.
 - f. Enclosed switches.
 - g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - h. Enclosed controllers.
 - i. Variable-speed controllers.
 - j. Push-button stations.
 - k. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
 - l. Monitoring and control equipment.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260573 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Computer-based, fault-current study to determine minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies" for overcurrent protective device coordination studies.
3. Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" for arc-flash studies.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items must remain functional throughout construction period.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- F. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For power system analysis software to be used for studies.

B. Short-Circuit Study Report:

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

26 0573 - 1

SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

1. Submit the following after approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals must be in digital form.
 - a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
 - c. Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study must be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms must comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE

- A. Software
 1. ETAP
 2. SKM
 3. EZPower
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
- C. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program must have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program must be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.
- E. Computer program must be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.
- F. Computer program must be developed under supervision of licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

KINGSESSING RECREATION CENTER BUILDING AND SITE IMPROVEMENTS – PACKAGE #2

26 0573 - 2

SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

2.02 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kVA and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations and ratings.
 - 6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
 - 7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by study.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in written document, separate from one-line diagram.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
 - 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
 - 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 - 3. For 600 V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
 - 1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
 - 2. Power sources available.
 - 3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
 - 4. Conductors.
 - 5. Transformer data.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:
 - 1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.

2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
 - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.

3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain data necessary for conduct of study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

- B. Gather and tabulate required input data to support short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to amount of detail that is required to be acquired in field. Field data gathering must be by, or under supervision of, qualified electrical professional engineer. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.

5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
10. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
11. Derating factors.

3.02 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 5 kA or less.
 2. Exclude equipment supplied by single transformer smaller than 75 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Include ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
 1. For grounded systems, provide bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- I. Include in report identification of protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260573.16 COORDINATION STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Retain terms that remain after this Section has been edited for a project.
- B. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.
- C. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- D. Definition of "One-Line Diagram" Paragraph below is from NEMA ICS 19.
- E. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- F. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- G. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- H. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- I. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- J. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- K. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Coordination Study Report

1. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals in printed and in digital form.
 - a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
 - c. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final protective device coordination study.
 - c. Coordination study data files.
 - d. List of all protective device settings.
 - e. Time-current coordination curves.
 - f. Power system data.
 - g. Short circuit calculation data

B. Electronic Files

1. Provide all native coordination study model files.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

E. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:

1. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Software:

1. EasyPower
2. ETAP
3. SKM

B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.

C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

1. Optional Features:

- a. Arcing faults.
- b. Simultaneous faults.
- c. Explicit negative sequence.
- d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.02 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. In this article, retain only paragraphs that are needed to achieve objectives of the overcurrent protective device coordination. If study objective is to also evaluate SCCR of overcurrent protective devices, then retain relevant paragraphs below.

B. Executive summary of study findings.

C. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

D. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Distribution equipment, and panelboard designations.
5. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
6. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
 - a. Short-Circuit Study Output Report.

E. Protective Device Coordination Study:

1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
 - a. Circuit Breakers:
 - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
 - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
 - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
 - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
 - b. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.

F. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:

1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
 - a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
 - b. Medium (utility)- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
 - c. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
 - d. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
 - e. Cables and conductors damage curves.
 - f. Ground-fault protective devices.
5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
6. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.02 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Owner's attention.
2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use data/characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
3. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
4. Full-load current of all loads.
5. Voltage level at each bus.
6. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
7. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
8. Maximum demands from service meters.
9. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
10. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
11. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, cable construction, metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic) to the point of utility primary protection.
12. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
 - a. Transformer characteristics (Utility), including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
 - b. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.

- c. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
- d. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
- e. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
- f. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
- g. Switchboards and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.

3.03 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on the drawings. It shall include all new circuiting, switching and protection devices added to the power distribution system dedicated for Owner use and including all primary protections ahead of Owner's power distribution to the point of primary utility protection. (Ahead of utility service transformer).
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - 1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
 - 2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- H. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.
- I. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.

J. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

K. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

L. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchboards, motor-control, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.
4. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

3.04 FIELD ADJUSTING

A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under the "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.

B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:

1. Acquaint personnel in fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
2. Hand-out and explain the coordination study objectives, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting time-current coordination curves.
3. For Owner's maintenance staff certified as NETA ETT-Certified Technicians Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III Technicians, teach how to adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260573.19
ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Computer-based, arc-flash study to determine arc-flash hazard distance and incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies" for fault-current studies.

2. Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies" for overcurrent protective device coordination studies.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

D. p.u.: Per unit. The reference unit, established as a calculating convenience, for expressing all power system electrical parameters on a common reference base.

E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

F. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

G. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For power system analysis software to be used for studies.

B. Study Submittals:

1. Submit the following after approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals must be in digital form:

- a. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
- b. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
- c. Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of arc-flash study.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study must be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms must comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COMPUTER SOFTWARE

- A. Manufacturers
 1. EasyPower
 2. ETAP
 3. SKM
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program must have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer program must be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
- E. Computer program must be developed under supervision of licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

2.02 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kVA and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:
 - 1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in report:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on total basis.
- H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
 - 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
 - 2. Protective device clearing time.
 - 3. Duration of arc.
 - 4. Arc-flash boundary.
 - 5. Restricted approach boundary.
 - 6. Limited approach boundary.
 - 7. Working distance.
 - 8. Incident energy.
 - 9. Hazard risk category.
 - 10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

2.03 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce 3.5 by 5 inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in analysis.
- B. Label must have orange header with wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and must include the following information taken directly from arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - 1. Location designation.
 - 2. Nominal voltage.
 - 3. Protection boundaries.
 - a. Arc-flash boundary.
 - b. Restricted approach boundary.
 - c. Limited approach boundary.
 - 4. Arc flash PPE category.
 - 5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
 - 6. Available incident energy.
 - 7. Working distance.
 - 8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels must be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.02 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Preparatory Studies: Perform Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.
 - 1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
 - 2. Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
 - 1. Maximum calculation must assume maximum contribution from utility and must assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.

2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current in accordance with IEEE 1584 recommendations.
 3. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current in accordance with NFPA 70E recommendations.
 4. Calculate arc-flash energy with utility contribution at minimum and assume no motor contribution.
- D. Calculate arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
 - E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment fed from transformers smaller than 75 kVA.
 - F. Calculate limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
 - G. Incident energy calculations must consider accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations must take into account changing current contributions, as sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators must be decremented as follows:
 1. Fault contribution from induction motors must not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators must be decayed to match actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 p.u. to 3 p.u. after 10 cycles).
 - H. Arc-flash energy must generally be reported for maximum of line or load side of circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation must be performed and reported for both line and load side of circuit breaker as follows:
 1. When circuit breaker is in separate enclosure.
 2. When line terminals of circuit breaker are separate from work location.
 - I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.03 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain data necessary for conduct of arc-flash hazard analysis.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

3.04 LABELING

- A. Apply one arc-flash label on front cover of each section of equipment and on side or rear covers with accessible live parts and hinged doors or removable plates for each equipment included in study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.

- B. Each piece of equipment listed below not fed by single transformer smaller than 75 kVA must have arc-flash label applied to it:
 - 1. Medium-voltage switchgear.
 - 2. Medium-voltage switches.
 - 3. Medium voltage transformers.
 - 4. Low-voltage switchgear.
 - 5. Switchboards.
 - 6. Panelboards.
 - 7. Low voltage transformers.
 - 8. Safety switches.
 - 9. Control panels.

- C. Note on record Drawings location of equipment where personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.
 - 1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
 - 2. Indicate protection level required.

3.05 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- A. Install arc-flash warning labels under direct supervision and control of qualified electrical professional engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 0500
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Electronic time switches.
 2. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 3. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
 4. Digital timer light switch.
 5. Conductors and cables.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
1. For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Show installation details for the following:
 - a. Occupancy sensors.
 - b. Vacancy sensors.
 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. HUBBELL NX
- B. Acuity NDTC
- C. Approved Equal

2.02 ELECTRONIC TIME SWITCHES

- A. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
 2. 120V AC.
 3. Programs:
 - a. Eight channels; each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week, and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 4. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
 5. Astronomic Time: All channels.
 6. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
 7. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.03 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors:
1. Wall or Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 2. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
 3. Operation:
 - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor must be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 4. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 5. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 6. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lx); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- B. Dual-Technology Type: Wall and Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.

2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch (150 mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch (23 200 sq. mm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inch (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inch/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96 inch (2440 mm) high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of [1000 sq. ft. (110 sq. m)] [2000 sq. ft. (220 sq. m)] [3000 sq. ft. (330 sq. m)] when mounted 48 inch (1200 mm) above finished floor.

2.04 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA LED load at 120 V, 1200 VA or LED load at 277 V, and 800 W incandescent.

2.05 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

- A. Description: Combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting control unit. Switchbox-mounted, backlit LCD display, with selectable time interval in [**10**] [**20**] minute increments.
 1. Rated 960 W at 120 V(ac) for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V(ac) or 10 A at 277 V(ac) for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V(ac).
 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
 3. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
 4. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.

2.06 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 26 0943
PERFORMANCE LIGHTING CONTROLS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 Summary

- A. Section includes a networked lighting control system comprised of the following components:
 - 1. System Software Interfaces
 - a. Management and Visualization Interface
 - b. Historical Database and Analytics Interface
 - c. Personal Control Applications
 - d. Smartphone Programming Interface for wired devices
 - 2. System Backbone and Integration Equipment
 - a. System Controller
 - b. OpenADR Interface
 - 3. Wired Networked Devices
 - a. Wall Switches, Dimmers and Scene Controllers
 - b. Graphic Wall Stations
 - c. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices
 - d. Occupancy and Photocell Sensors
 - e. Power Packs and Secondary Packs
 - f. Networked Luminaires
 - g. Relay and Dimming Panel
 - 4. Wireless Networked Devices
 - a. Sensor Interface
 - b. Light Controllers
 - c. Digital Sensor Attachments
 - d. Networked Luminaires
 - e. Communication Bridge
- B. The networked lighting control system shall meet all of the characteristics and performance requirements specified herein.
- C. The contractor shall provide, install and verify proper operation of all equipment necessary for proper operation of the system as specified herein and as shown on applicable drawings.

1.02. Related Documents

- A. Section 262726 Wiring Devices
- B. Section 260923 Lighting Control Devices
- C. Section 265113 Interior Lighting Fixtures

1.03 Submittals

- A. Submittal shall be provided including the following items.
 - 1. Bill of Materials necessary to install the networked lighting control system.

2. Product Specification Sheets indicating general device descriptions, dimensions, electrical specifications, wiring details, and nomenclature.
3. Riser Diagrams showing device wiring connections of system backbone and also typical per room/area type.
4. Information Technology (IT) connection information pertaining to interconnection with facility IT networking equipment and third-party systems.
5. Other Diagrams and Operational Descriptions – as needed to indicate system operation or interaction with other system(s).
6. Contractor Startup/Commissioning Worksheet (must be completed prior to factory start-up).
7. Service Specification Sheets indicating general service descriptions, including startup, training, post-startup support, and service contract terms.
8. Hardware and Software Operation Manuals.

1.04 Approvals

- A. Prior approval from owner's representative is required for products or systems manufactured by companies not specified in the Network Lighting Controls section of this specification.
- B. Any alternate product or system that has not received prior approval from the owner's representative at least 10 days prior to submission of a proposal package shall be rejected.
- C. Alternate products or systems require submission of catalog datasheets, system overview documents and installation manuals to owner's representative.
- D. For any alternate system that does not support any form of wireless communication to networked luminaires, networked control devices, networked sensors, or networked input devices, bidders shall provide a total installed cost including itemized labor costs for installing network wiring to luminaires, control devices, sensors, input devices and other required system peripherals.

1.05 Quality Assurance

- A. Product Qualifications
 1. System electrical components shall be listed or recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (e.g., UL, ETL, or CSA) and shall be labeled with required markings as applicable.
 2. System shall be listed as qualified under DesignLights Consortium Networked Lighting Control System Specification V2.0.
 3. System luminaires and controls are certified by manufacturer to have been designed, manufactured and tested for interoperability.
 4. All components shall be subjected to 100% end of line testing prior to shipment to the project site to ensure proper device operation.
 5. All components and the manufacturing facility where product was manufactured must be RoHS compliant.
- B. Installation and Startup Qualifications
 1. System startup shall be performed by qualified personnel approved or certified by the manufacturer.
- C. Service and Support Requirements
 1. Phone Support: Toll free technical support shall be available.
 2. Remote Support: The bidder shall offer a remote support capability.
 3. Onsite Support: The bidder shall offer onsite support that is billable at whole day rates.
 4. Service Contract: The bidder shall offer a Service Contract that packages phone, remote, and onsite support calls for the project. Response times for each type of support call shall be indicated in the terms of the service contract included in the bid package.

1.06 Warranty

- A. The manufacturer shall provide a minimum five-year warranty on all hardware devices supplied and installed. Warranty coverage shall begin on the date of shipment.
- B. The hardware warranty shall cover repair or replacement any defective products within the warranty period.

1.7 Maintenance & Sustainability

- A. The manufacturer shall make available to the owner new parts, upgrades, and/or replacements available for a minimum of 5 years following installation.

PART 2 – EQUIPMENT

2.01 Manufacturers

- A. Manufacturers that are listed with DesignLights Consortium Networked Lighting Control System Specification V2.0.

2.02 System Performance Requirements

A. System Architecture

1. System shall have an architecture that is based upon three main concepts: (a) networkable intelligent lighting control devices, (b) standalone lighting control zones using distributed intelligence, (c) optional system backbone for remote, time based and global operation between control zones.
 - a. Intelligent lighting control devices shall have individually addressable network communication capability and consist of one or more basic lighting control components: occupancy sensor, photocell sensor, relay, dimming output, contact closure input, analog 0-10V input, and manual wall station capable of indicating switching, dimming, and/or scene control. Combining one or more of these components into a single device enclosure shall be permissible so as to minimize overall device count of system.
 - b. Lighting control zones consisting of one or more networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices and shall be capable of providing automatic control from sensors (occupancy and/or photocell) and manual control from local wallstations without requiring connection to a higher level system backbone; this capability is referred to as “distributed intelligence.”
 - c. System must be capable of interfacing directly with networked luminaires such that either low voltage network cabling or wireless RF communication is used to interconnect networked luminaires with control components such as sensors, switches and system backbone (see *Control Zone Characteristics* sections for each type of network connection, wired or wireless).
2. The system shall be capable of providing individually addressable switching and dimming control of the following: networked luminaires, control zones to include multiple switch legs or circuits, and relay and dimming outputs from centralized panels to provide design flexibility appropriate with sequence of operations required in each project area or typical space type. A single platform shall be used for both indoor and outdoor lighting controls.

3. Lighting control zones shall be capable of being networked with a higher level system backbone to provide time based control, remote control from inputs and/or systems external to the control zone, and remote configuration and monitoring through a software.
4. All system devices shall support remote firmware update, such that physical access to each device is not necessary, for purposes of upgrading functionality at a later date.
5. System shall be capable of “out of box” sequence of operation for each control zone. Standard sequence is:
 - a. All switches control all fixtures in a zone
 - b. All occupancy sensors automatically control all fixtures in the control zone with a default timeout.

B. Wired Networked Control Zone Characteristics

1. Following proper installation and provision of power, all networked devices connected together with low voltage network cable shall automatically form a functional lighting control zone without requiring any type of programming, regardless of the programming mechanism (e.g., software application, handheld remote, pushbutton). The “out of box” default sequence of operation is intended to provide typical sequence of operation so as to minimize the system startup and programming requirements and to also have functional lighting control operation prior to system startup and programming.
2. System shall be able to automatically discover all connected devices without requiring any provisioning of system or zone addresses.
3. The following types of wired networked control devices shall be provided for egress and/or emergency light fixtures:
 - a. Low-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall automatically provide 100% light level upon detection of loss of power sensed via the low voltage network cable connection.
 - b. UL924 Listed Line-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall be listed as emergency relays under the UL924 standard, and shall automatically close the load control relay(s) and provide 100% light output upon detection of loss of power sensed via line voltage connections.
 - c. Emergency egress devices shall be provided and UL labeled by the lighting control manufacturer.

C. Wireless Networked Control Zone Characteristics

1. Following proper installation and provision of power, all wireless networked devices paired, meshed or grouped together shall automatically follow the “out of box” default sequence of operations.
2. Wireless network communication shall support uniform and instant response such that all luminaires in a lighting control zone respond immediately and synchronously in response to a sensor or wallstation signal.
3. To support the system architecture requirement for distributed intelligence, wireless network communication shall support communication of control signals from sensors and wallstations to networked luminaires and wireless load control devices, without requiring any communication, interpretation, or translation of information through a backbone device such as a wireless access point, communication bridge or gateway.
4. All wireless communication shall be encrypted using at least 128-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).

5. The following types of wired networked control devices shall be provided for egress and/or emergency light fixtures:
 - a. UL924 Listed Line-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall be listed as emergency relays under the UL924 standard, and shall automatically close the load control relay(s) and provide 100% light output upon detection of loss or interruption of power sensed via line voltage connections.

D. System Integration Capabilities

1. The system shall interface with third party building management systems (BMS) to support two-way communication using the industry standard BACnet/IP or BACnet/MSTP protocols.

2.03 System Software Interfaces

A. Management Interface

1. System shall provide a web-based management interface that provides remote system control, live status monitoring, and configuration capabilities of lighting control settings and schedules.
2. Management interface must be compatible with industry-standard web browser clients, including, but not limited to, Microsoft Internet Explorer®, Apple Safari®, Google Chrome®, Mozilla Firefox®.
3. All system software updates must be available for automatic download and installation via the internet.

B. Historical Database and Analytics Interface

1. System shall provide a browser-based trending and monitoring interface that stores historical data for all occupancy/daylight sensors and lighting loads. Additionally, the system shall optionally upload that data to a cloud based server.

C. Visualization Interfaces

1. System shall provide an optional web-based visualization interface that displays a graphical floorplan. System data, to include status of occupancy sensors, daylight sensors and light output shall be overlaid to the floorplan to provide a graphical status page.

D. Portable Programming Interface for Standalone Control Zones

1. Portable handheld application interface for standalone control zones shall be provided for systems that allows configuration of lighting control settings.
2. Programming capabilities through the application shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Switch/occupancy/photosensor group configuration
 - b. Manual/automatic on modes
 - c. Turn-on dim level
 - d. Occupancy sensor time delays
 - e. Dual technology occupancy sensors sensitivity
 - f. Photosensor calibration adjustment and auto-setpoint
 - g. Trim level settings

2.4 System Backbone and System Integration Equipment

A. System Controller

1. System Controller shall be a multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, and power supplies.
2. System Controller shall perform the following functions:
 - a. Facilitation of global network communication between different areas and control zones.
 - b. Time-based control of downstream wired and wireless network devices.
 - c. Linking into an Ethernet network.
 - d. Integration with Building Management Systems (BMS) and Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) equipment.
 - e. Connection to various software interfaces, including management interface, historical database and analytics interface, visualization interface, and personal control applications.
3. System Controller shall not require a dedicated PC or a dedicated cloud connection.
4. Device shall automatically detect all networked devices connected to it, including those connected to wired and wireless communication bridges.
5. Device shall have a standard and astronomical internal time clock.
6. Shall be capable of connecting to the customers Local Area Network (LAN) via IEEE 802.11.x Wireless and IEEE 802.3 Wired connection.
7. System Controller shall support BACnet/IP and BACnet/MSTP protocols to directly interface with BMS and HVAC equipment without the need for additional protocol translation gateways.
 - a. BACnet/MSTP shall support a minimum of 50 additional BACnet MS/TP controllers in addition to the Expansion I/O modules.
 - b. BACnet/MSTP shall support 9600 to 115200 baud.
 - c. System Controller shall be BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL listed) using Device Profile BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) with outlined enhanced features.
 - d. System controller must support BACnet/IP Broadcast Management Device (BBMD) and Foreign Device Registration (FDR).

B. OpenADR Interface

1. System shall provide an interface to OpenADR protocol Demand Response Automation Servers (DRAS) typically provided by local electrical utility.
2. OpenADR interface shall meet all of the requirements of Open ADR 2.0a Virtual End Nodes (VEN), including:
 - a. Programmable with the account information of the end-user's electrical utility DRAS account credentials.

2.05 Wired Networked Devices

A. Wired Networked Wall Switches, Dimmers, Scene Controllers

1. Wall switches & dimmers shall support the following device options:
 - a. Number of control zones: 1, 2 or 4
 - b. Control Types Supported: On/Off or On/Off/Dimming

2. Scene controllers shall support the following device options:
 - a. Number of scenes: 1, 2 or 4
 - b. Control Types Supported:
 - 1) On/Off or On/Off/Dimming
 - 2) Preset Level Scene Type
 - 3) Reprogramming of other devices within daisy-chained zone so as to implement user selected lighting scene
 - 4) Selecting a lighting profile to be run by the system's upstream controller so as to implement a selected lighting profile across multiple zones
- B. Wired Networked Graphic Wall Stations
 1. Device shall have a full color touch screen.
 2. Device shall enable configuration of all switches, dimmers, and lighting preset scenes via password protected setup screens.
 3. Graphic wall stations shall support the following device options:
 - a. Number of control zones: Minimum of 16
 - b. Number of scenes: Minimum of 16
 - c. Optional password protection for setup screens.
- C. Wired Networked Auxiliary Input / Output (I/O) Devices
 1. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices shall be specified as an input or output device with the following options:
 - a. Contact closure input
 - 1) Input shall be programmable to support maintained or momentary inputs that can activate local or global scenes and profiles, ramp light level up or down, or toggle lights on/off.
 - b. 0-10V analog input
 - 1) Input shall be programmable to function as a daylight sensor.
 - c. RS-232/RS-485 digital input
 - 1) Input supports activation of up to 4 local or global scenes and profiles, and on/off/dimming control of up to 16 local control zones.
 - d. 0-10V dimming control output, capable of sinking a minimum of 20mA of current
 - 1) Output shall be programmable to support all standard sequence of operations supported by system.
- D. Wired Networked Occupancy and Photosensors
 1. Sensors shall utilize passive infrared (PIR) or passive dual technology (PDT) to detect both major and minor motion as defined by NEMA WD-7 standard.
 2. Sensing technologies that are acoustically passive, meaning they do not transmit sound waves of any frequency do not require additional commissioning. Ultrasonic or Microwave based sensing technologies may require commissioning due to the active nature of their technology, if factory required.
 3. Sensor programming parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device.

4. Sensor mounting type shall match project design requirements as shown on plans.
 - a. Sensors shall have optional features for photosensor/daylight override, dimming control, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
 2. The system shall support the following types of photocell-based control:
 - a. On/Off: The control zone is automatically turned off if the photocell reading exceeds the defined setpoint and automatically turned on if the photocell reading is below the defined setpoint. A time delay or adaptive setpoint adjustable behavior may be used to prevent the system from exhibiting nuisance on/off switching.
 - b. Continuous Dimming: The control zone automatically adjusts its dimming output in response to photocell readings, such that a minimum light level consisting of both electric light and daylight sources is maintained at the task. The photocell response shall be configurable to adjust the photocell setpoint and dimming rates.
- E. Wired Networked Wall Switch Sensors
1. Wall switches sensors shall support the following device options:
 - a. User Input Control Types Supported: On/Off or On/Off/Dimming
 - b. Occupancy Sensing Technology: PIR only or Dual Tech
 - c. Daylight Sensing Option: Inhibit Photosensor
- F. Wired Networked Embedded Sensors
1. Embedded sensors shall support the following device options:
 - a. Occupancy Sensing technology: PIR only or Dual Tech
 - b. Daylight Sensing Option: Occupancy only, Daylight only, or combination Occupancy/Daylight sensor
- G. Distributed System Power, Switching and Dimming Controls
1. Devices shall incorporate one optional Class 1 relay, optional 0-10 VDC dimming output, and contribute low voltage Class 2 power to the rest of the system.
 2. Device programming parameters shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
 3. Device shall be plenum rated.
 4. Devices shall be UL Listed for load and load type as specified on the plans.
- H. Wired Networked Luminaires
1. Networked luminaire shall have a factory installed mechanically integrated control device and carry a UL Listing as required.
 2. Networked LED luminaire shall provide low voltage power to other networked control devices.
 3. System shall be able to maintain constant lumen output over the specified life of the LED luminaire (also called lumen compensation) by automatically varying the dimming control signal to account for lumen depreciation.
 4. System shall be able to provide control of network luminaire intensity, in addition to correlated color temperature of specific LED luminaires.
 5. Controls manufacturer is responsible for primary troubleshooting and tech support of complete fixture.
- I. Wired Networked Relay and Dimming Panel

1. Relay and dimming panel(s) shall be capable of providing the required amount of relay capacity, as required per panel schedules shown on drawings, with an equal number of individual 0-10V dimming outputs.
2. Standard relays used shall have the following required properties:
 - a. Configurable in the field to operate with normally closed or normally open behavior.
 - b. Provides visual status of current state and manual override control of each relay.
 - c. Be individually programmable
3. 0-10 dimming outputs shall support a minimum of 100mA sink current per output.
4. Panel shall be UL924 listed for control of emergency lighting circuits.
5. Panel shall provide a contact closure input that acts as a panel override to activate the normally configured state of all relays (i.e., normally open or normally closed) in the panel.

2.06 Wireless Networked Devices

Wireless Networked Sensor Interface

1. The device shall be capable of broadcasting the following manual wall control commands: on, off, and adjust dim level.

Wireless Networked Light Controllers (No Sensor)

1. The wireless light controller shall be capable of providing continuous dimming and on/off control of one commercial light fixture including fluorescent, HID, induction and LEDs.
2. An external antenna attached to the luminaire shall not be allowed.
 - a. Each wireless light controller shall provide measurement capability of the amperage, voltage, wattage, and watt-hours of its controlled lighting.

Wireless Networked Digital Sensors

1. In addition to providing Wireless Networked Light Controllers functionality, also provides:
 - a. Integrated digital occupancy sensing and digital photocell sensor.
 - b. Sensor shall connect directly to the wireless light controller and shall be suitable for embedding into the enclosure of a luminaire.
 - c. Sensor shall have software-adjustable settings
 - d. Photocell shall be suitable for closed and open loop applications.

Wireless Network Communication Bridge

1. A communication bridge device shall be provided that interfaces with the System Controller via Owner's LAN connection and interfaces with wireless network.
2. Device shall be capable of communicating with a group of a minimum of 250 wireless networked devices and luminaires, so as to reduce the amount of communication bridges required in the system.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 Installation Requirements

A. Installation Procedures and Verification

1. The successful bidder shall review all required installation and pre-startup procedures with the manufacturer's representative through pre-construction meetings.

2. The successful bidder shall install and connect the networked lighting control system components according to the manufacturer's installation instructions, wiring diagrams, the project submittals and plans specifications.
 3. The successful bidder shall be responsible for testing of all low voltage network cable included in the bid. Bidder is responsible for verification of the following minimum parameters:
 - a. Wire Map (continuity, pin termination, shorts and open connections, etc.)
 - b. Length
 - c. Insertion Loss
- B. Coordination with Owner's IT Network Infrastructure
1. The successful bidder is required to coordinate with the owner's representative to secure all required network connections to the owner's IT network infrastructure.
 - a. The bidder shall provide to the owner's representative all network infrastructure requirements of the networked lighting control system.
 - b. The bidder shall provide, to the manufacturer's representative, all necessary contacts pertaining to the owner's IT infrastructure, to ensure that the system is properly connected and started up.
- C. Coordination with Mechanical Division
1. The successful bidder shall provide all integration equipment detailed in Division 260943.
 2. The successful bidder to verify integration scope with the Mechanical Contractor prior to submittal phase and provide all necessary schedules to the Lighting Control manufacturer.
- D. Documentation and Deliverables
1. The installing contractor shall be responsible for documenting installed location of all networked devices, including networked luminaires. This includes responsibility to provide as-built plan drawing showing device addresses corresponding to locations of installed equipment.
 2. The installing contractor is also responsible for the following additional documentation to the manufacturer's representative if visualization / graphical floorplan software is provided as part of bid package:
 - a. As-Built floor plan drawings showing wired network control zones outlined, in addition to device address locations required above. All documentation shall remain legible when reproducing\scanning drawing files for electronic submission.
 - b. As-Built electrical lighting drawings (reflected ceiling plan) in PDF and CAD format. Architectural floor plans shall be based on as-built conditions.
 - 1) CAD files shall have layers already turned on/off as desired to be shown in the graphical floorplan background images. The following CAD elements are recommended to be hidden to produce an ideal background graphical image:
 Titleblock
 Text- Inclusive of room names and numbers, fixture tags and drawings notes
 Fixture wiring and homeruns
 Control devices
 Hatching or poché of light fixtures or architectural elements
 - 2) CAD files shall be of AutoCAD 2013 or earlier. Revit file overall floor plan views shall be exported to AutoCAD 2013.

3.02 System

- A. Upon completion of installation by the installer, including completion of all required verification and documentation required by the manufacturer, the system shall be started up and programmed by an authorized representative of the manufacturer.
 - 1. Low voltage network cable testing shall be performed prior to system startup at the discretion of the manufacturer.
- B. System start-up and programming shall include:
 - 1. Verifying operational communication to all system devices.
 - 2. Programming the network devices into functional control zones to meet the required sequence of operation.
 - 3. Programming and verifying all sequence of operations.
 - 4. Customization of owner's software interfaces and applications.
- C. Initial start-up and programming is to occur on-site. Additional programming may occur on-site or remotely over the Internet as necessary.

3.03 Project Turnover

- A. System Documentation
 - 1. Submit software database file with desired device labels and notes completed.
- B. Owner Training
 - 1. Provisions for onsite training for owner and designated attendees to be included in submittal package.

End of Section

SECTION 26 2200 LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Distribution dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 500 kVA. Refer to drawings for transformer rating.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type and size of transformer.
 - 2. Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For transformers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Acme Electric Corporation.
 2. Controlled Power Company; an Emerson company.
 3. Dongan Electric Manufacturing Company.
 4. Eaton.
 5. Federal Pacific.
 6. General Electric Company.
 7. Hammond Power Solutions Inc.
 8. Jefferson Electric, Inc.
 9. Lincoln Electric Products Co., Inc.
 10. MGM Transformer Company.
 11. Powersmiths International Corp.
 12. Siemens Power Transmission & Distribution, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.02 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger: Comply with NEMA TP 1 energy-efficiency levels as verified by testing according to NEMA TP 2.
- D. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.
- E. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.

1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
 2. Coil Material: Aluminum.
- F. Encapsulation: Transformers smaller than 30 kVA shall have core and coils completely resin encapsulated.
- G. Shipping Restraints: Paint or otherwise color code bolts, wedges, blocks, and other restraints that are to be removed after installation and before energizing. Use fluorescent colors that are easily identifiable inside the transformer enclosure.

2.03 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Cores: One leg per phase.
- D. Enclosure: Ventilated.
1. NEMA 250, Type 2: Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound to seal out moisture and air.
 2. KVA Ratings: Based on convection cooling only and not relying on auxiliary fans.
- E. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
1. Finish Color: NSF/ANSI 61 gray.
- F. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity
- G. Insulation Class, Smaller than 30 kVA: 185 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 115-deg C rise above 40-deg C ambient temperature.
- H. Insulation Class, 30 kVA and Larger: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 115 deg C rise above 40-deg C ambient temperature.
- I. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
 2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
- J. Neutral: Rated 100% of phase conductors.
- K. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for coil and core.
- L. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Maximum sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

2.04 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.01 and IEEE C57.12.91.
 - 1. Resistance measurements of all windings at the rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
 - 2. Ratio tests at the rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
 - 3. Phase relation and polarity tests at the rated voltage connections.
 - 4. No load losses, and excitation current and rated voltage at the rated voltage connections.
 - 5. Impedance and load losses at rated current and rated frequency at the rated voltage connections.
 - 6. Applied and induced tensile tests.
 - 7. Regulation and efficiency at rated load and voltage.
 - 8. Insulation Resistance Tests:
 - a. High-voltage to ground.
 - b. Low-voltage to ground.
 - c. High-voltage to low-voltage.
 - 9. Temperature tests.
- B. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct prototype sound-level tests on production-line products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install transformers level and plumb on a concrete base with vibration-dampening supports. Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.
- B. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten all bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to reduce noise generation.
- D. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- D. Provide flexible connections at all conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to the building structure.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS for dry-type, air-cooled, low-voltage transformers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- B. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.
- C. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections. Perform scan in coordination with scan under section 260519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors"
- D. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

- B. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.
- C. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltage and tap settings.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262200

SECTION 262416 PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- D. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
 - 4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 - 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI Type: (1) spares for each type.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation when stored in unconditioned space.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.010 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 50 deg F (minus 10 deg C) to plus 90 deg F (plus 32 deg C).

b. Altitude: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 3300 feet.

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager/ Owner no fewer than 5 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's/Owner's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.011 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.

2. Height: 84 inches maximum.

3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.

4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.

5. Finishes:

- a. Panels and Trim: galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
- b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
- c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.

F. Incoming Mains:

- 1. Location: Top or Bottom, contractor to coordinate.
- 2. Main Breaker: As specified on drawing and/or panel schedule.

G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

- 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length
- 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
- 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
- 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

- 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
- 3. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
- 4. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.

I. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

J. Future Devices: Panelboards shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

- 1. Blank covers for future devices. Total panel capacity 42 circuits, unless otherwise indicated on drawings.

K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

- 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 2

2.03 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens.
 4. Cutler Hammer.
 5. Square-D/Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or Main Lug as indicated on drawings and/or panel schedule.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.04 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens.
 4. Cutler Hammer.
 5. Square-D/ Schneider Electric.
- B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 3. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.

- c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
- d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
- e. Provide handle ties for all single phase circuits sharing a neutral

2.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Typed circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover. Provide revised directly if circuits change

2.06 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- F. Mount top of trim 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 1 1/4 inch (32 mm) in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges to lowest allowable setting given load characteristics.
 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- M. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the infrared scan tests and inspections as required in Section 260519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
 - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 10 percent.
 - 5. Revise panel schedule and As-Built drawings to reflect changes made.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 3. SPD receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 4. Hospital-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 5. Twist-locking receptacles.
 6. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
 7. Occupancy sensors.
 8. Digital timer light switches.
 9. Wall-box dimmers.
 10. Wall plates.
 11. Floor service fittings.
 12. Poke-through assemblies.
 13. Prefabricated multioutlet assemblies.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Service-Outlet Assemblies: One for every 10 of each type installed, but no fewer than one.
 - 2. SPD Receptacles: One for every 10 of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White or as selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing. Contact the architect before ordering.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Electrical System: Red.
3. SPD Devices: Blue.
4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.

H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.02 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

D. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.03 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed and/ or Non-feed through - field converted.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - c. Approved equal
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed and /or Non-feed through – field converted.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: Feed and /or Non-feed through – field converted
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.04 SPD RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex SPD Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral SPD in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground. LED indicator light.
3. SPD Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 V and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
4. Active SPD Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
5. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
6. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, UL 1449, and FS W-C-596.

2.05 HOSPITAL-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Hospital-Grade, Single Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 Supplement sd and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- B. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
 2. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 Supplement sd and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- C. Hospital-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- D. Hospital-Grade, Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

- d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Type: Non-feed through.
 5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 supplement sd, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
 6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- E. Hospital-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
 2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Type: Non-feed through.
 5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 supplement sd, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
 6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- F. Hospital-Grade, Duplex SPD Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral SPD in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground. LED indicator light. With single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
 3. SPD Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 V and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
 4. Active SPD Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
 5. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 6. Standards: Comply with UL 498 supplement sd, UL 1449, and FS W-C-596.
 7. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.

2.06 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 120 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L5-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

B. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 250 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L6-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

2.07 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

B. Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Approved equal.

2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

C. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

D. Antimicrobial, Double-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Approved equal.
2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

E. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

F. Antimicrobial, Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Approved equal.

2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

G. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

H. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Illuminated when switch is off.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

I. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - e. Approved equal.
2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is off.
3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

J. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).

- b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
- c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- e. Approved equal.

- 2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
- 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

K. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
- b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
- c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- e. Approved equal.

- 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
- 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

L. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
- b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
- c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- e. Approved equal.

- 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
- 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.08 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall Switch Sensor Light Switch, Dual Technology:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one but not limited of the following manufacturers:

- a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
- b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
- c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- e. Approved equal.

2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual (ultrasonic and passive infrared) technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Adjustable time delay not less than 15 minutes.
6. Able to be locked to Automatic On mode.
7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
8. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
9. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
10. Connections: Integral wireless networking.

2.09 TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

A. Digital Timer Light Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Approved equal.
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting-control unit, with backlit digital display, with selectable time interval in 10 -minute increments.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Integral relay for connection to BAS.

2.010 DIMMERS

A. Wall-Box Dimmers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one but not limited to the following manufacturers:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 - e. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - f. Approved equal.
2. Description: Modular, full-wave, solid-state dimmer switch with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.

3. Control: Continuously adjustable slider with single-pole or three-way switching.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1472.
5. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.011 WALL PLATES

- A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting
 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.
- D. Antimicrobial Cover Plates:
 1. Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
 2. Tarnish resistant.

2.012 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Flush-Type Floor Service Fittings:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Power Solutions; ABB Group.
 - d. Wiremold / Legrand.
 - e. Approved equal.
 2. Description: Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used, with cover flush with finished floor.
 3. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
 4. Service Plate and Cover: Rectangular or Round, die-cast aluminum or solid brass with satin finish.
 5. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover for minimum of two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for twisted pair cable.
- B. Flap-Type Service Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Power Solutions; ABB Group.
 - d. Approved equal.

2. Description: Type: Modular, flap-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used, with flaps flush with finished floor.
3. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
4. Flaps: Rectangular or Round, die-cast aluminum or solid brass with satin finish.
5. Service Plate: Same finish as flaps.
6. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover for minimum of two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for twisted pair cable.

2.013 PREFABRICATED MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multioutlet harness.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 2. Wiremold / Legrand.
 3. Approved equal.

- C. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- D. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.
- E. Multioutlet Harness:
 1. Receptacles: 20-A, 125-V, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles complying with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
 2. Receptacle Spacing: 6 inches - 9 inches.
 3. Wiring: No. 12 AWG solid, Type THHN copper, up to 3 circuit with dedicated neutral, connecting alternating receptacles.
 4. Divider between power and communication wiring.
 5. Refer to drawings for details.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
 - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
 - 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
 - 1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 - 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
 - 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
 - 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
 - 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
 - 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
 - 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
 - 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.
 2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

- A. The contractor, subcontractors, and their personnel shall follow the procedures and practices for waste separation, collection and transport as defined in the contractor's "Waste Management Plan" as required by Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management."

3.03 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black white -filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- C. Essential Electrical System: Mark receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system to allow easy identification using a self-adhesive label.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. In healthcare block, prepare reports that comply with NFPA 99.
 - 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 3. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

- D. Tests for Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent of Voltage Drop from the electrical service into the building, to the furthest electrical outlet in the circuits under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 15 ohms are acceptable.
 - 4. Ground Impedance for receptacles in IT rooms: Values of up to 5 ohms are acceptable.
 - 5.
 - 6. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - 7. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - 8. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

- E. Test straight-blade hospital-grade outlets for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz..

- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262816
ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Enclosures.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's field service report.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 2. Fuse Pullers: 1 for each size and type.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.010 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not exceeding 86 deg F (30 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1005 m).
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager/Owner no fewer than 5 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's/Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.011 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. ABB Inc.
 - 2. Eaton.
 - 3. General Electric Company.
 - 4. Square-D/Schneider Electric.
 - 5. Siemens.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.02 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Outdoor, NEMA 250 Type 3R

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Provide Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 265119 LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology.
 - 2. Lighting fixture supports.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
 - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
 - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

- b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Verification: For substitution fixtures other than specified on the design fixture schedules.
- D. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Lighting luminaires.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
 - 4. Structural members to which luminaires will be attached.
 - 5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
 - 7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
- D. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- E. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- F. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- G. Sample warranty.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior lighting luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.010 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

2.02 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3500 K.
- C. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- D. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- E. Internal driver.
- F. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac or 277 V ac via multi voltage supply.
 - 1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Housings:
 - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.

2.03 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL

- A. Minimum 5,000 lumens. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lumens per watt.

- B. Housing and heat sink rated to the following:
 - 1. NEMA 1X.

2.04 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

- 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers:

- 1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

- 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
- 2. Powder-coat finish.

- E. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

- 1. Label shall include the following LED engine characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific LED engine.
 - b. LED engine, shape, size, wattage, and lumen output.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.05 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.06 LUMINAIRE FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
- F. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943 "Performance Lighting Controls."

3.07 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
 - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

SECTION 265213
EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Emergency lighting.
 2. Exit signs.
 3. Materials.
 4. Luminaire support components.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): The absolute temperature, measured in kelvins, of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.
- B. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Measure of the degree of color shift that objects undergo when illuminated by the light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Lumen (lm): The SI derived unit of luminous flux equal to the luminous flux emitted within a unit solid angle by a unit point source (1 lm = 1 cd-sr).

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
1. For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
 - a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
 - c. Battery and charger for light units.
 - d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.

- b. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - c. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - C. Samples for Verification: For substitution fixtures other than specified on the design fixture schedules.
 - D. Product Schedule:
 - 1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- 1.04 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps: 5 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
- 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.07 WARRANTY

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 101.
- C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- D. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body.
 - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate lamp(s) continuously upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
 - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - 3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at 40 percent of rated light output.
 - 4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - 5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, type.
 - 6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
 - 7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.02 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Characteristics: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Luminaire:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac) or 277 V(ac).
 - b. Internal emergency power unit.

- c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
- d. UL 94 flame rating.

2.03 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Sign
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac) or 277 V(ac).
 - b. Lamps for AC Operation:
 - 1) LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 - c. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components must be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
 - 1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
 - 2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
 - 3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

2.05 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.06 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.106 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install lamps in each luminaire.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
 - 1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
 - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Perform startup service:
 - 1. Charge batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
 - 2. Charge batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 265619 LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
2. Luminaire types.
3. Materials.
4. Finishes.
5. Luminaire support components.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 260943 "Performance Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.

4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type.
 - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
 6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
 7. Photoelectric relays.
 8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For substitution fixtures other than specified on the design fixture schedules.
- D. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.
1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports and seismic restraints.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
 2. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
 3. Underground utilities and structures.
 4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
 5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
 6. Building features.
 7. Vertical and horizontal information.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.
2. Photoelectric relay.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by **manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency**.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Sample warranty.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires **and photoelectric relays** to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: **Ten for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: **One for every 20** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications:

1. Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
2. Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- D. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- E. Mockups: For exterior luminaires, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.010 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.011 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance:

1. Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
2. Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
3. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.02 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598[**and listed for wet location**].
- E. Lamp base complying with **ANSI C81.61**.
- F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
- G. CRI of **minimum 70**. CCT of **3000 K**.
- H. L70 lamp life of **50,000** hours or as otherwise described in the design drawings.
- I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output or otherwise described in the design drawings.
- J. Internal driver.
- K. Nominal Operating Voltage: **120 V ac**.
- L. In-line Fusing: Where recommended by the manufacturer.
- M. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for **outdoor use and in enclosed locations**.
- N. Source Limitations:
 1. Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.
 2. For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.03 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

- A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
- B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc and off at 4.5 to 10 fc with 15-second minimum time delay.

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.04 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Refer to lighting fixture schedules on the design drawings.

2.05 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum, Stainless steel or Epoxy-coated steel. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- G. Housings:
 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.06 FINISHES

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 - 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

2.07 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

- C. Examine walls, roofs, and canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. [Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.04 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections.
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
 - 3. Startup tests in accordance with 260943 "Performance Lighting Controls."
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
 - a. IES LM-5.
 - b. IES LM-50.
 - c. IES LM-52.
 - d. IES LM-64.
 - e. IES LM-72.
 - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

3.08 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 271500 — COMMUNICATIONS CABLING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. UTP Cable Hardware
3. UTP Patch Cords
4. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
5. Communications Equipment Cabinets and Communications Equipment
6. WiFi Kits

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 27 Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for horizontal cabling pathways.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.
- D. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- E. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- F. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.

- I. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.
- J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- K. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross—connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
 - 1. TIA/EIA-568-B.1 requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.
 - 2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
 - 3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
 - 4. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.
- B. A work area is the area identified on the drawings.
- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. If cable length exceeds 295 feet provide a PoE extender for data outlets, provide a CAT 6 to fiber media converter and OM3 multimode fiber at camera locations. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to equipment. The maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
 - a. Nominal OD.
 - b. Minimum bending radius.
 - c. Maximum pulling tension.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, for all horizontal cabling and termination equipment.

2. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:

- a. Cross—connects.
- b. Patch panels.
- c. Patch cords.

3. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.9 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
2. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
3. Device Plates: One of each type.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- E. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.12 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Project Manager.
- B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

1.13 WARRANTY

- A. Twenty-Five (25) Year Extended Product Warranty
 - 1. The 25 Year Extended Product Warranty shall ensure against product defects, that all approved cabling components exceed the specifications of TIA/EIA 568A and ISO/IEC IS 11801, exceed the attenuation and NEXT requirements of TIA/EIA TSB 67 and ISO/IEC IS 11801 for cabling links/channels, that the installation will exceed the loss bandwidth requirements of TIA/EIA TSB 67 and ISO/IEC 11801 for fiber links/channels, for a twenty-five (25) year period. The end-to-end passive product shall be capable of delivering 1Gb/s half-duplex mode/2Gb/s full-duplex mode to the workstation.
 - 2. The Twenty-Five (25) Year Extended Product Warranty shall cover the replacement or repair of defective product(s) and labor for the replacement or repair of such defective product(s) for a twenty-five (25) year period.
- B. Twenty-Five (25) Year Application Assurance
 - 1. The Twenty-Five (25) Year Application Assurance shall cover the failure of the wiring system to support the application which it was designed to support, as well as additional applications(s) introduced in the future, up to 1Gb/s parallel transmission schemes, by recognized standards or user forums that use the TIA/EIA or ISO/IEC IS 11801 component and link/channel specifications for cabling, for a twenty-five (25) year period.

C. System Certification

- 1. Upon successful completion of the installation and subsequent inspection, the customer shall be

provided with a numbered certificate, from the manufacturing company, registering the installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A
- B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
 - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
 - 3. Straps and other devices.
- C. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
- D. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. ALL horizontal cabling connected to a CCTV camera shall be installed in min. 3/4" conduit, no exceptions.

2.2 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
 - 1. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company
 - 2. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
 - 3. Superior Essex and Leviton Network Solutions.
- B. 100 Ohm Enhanced Category 6 Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) Cable
 - 1. Physical Characteristics:
 - a. Shall be plenum rated and meet applicable requirements of ANSI/ICEA S- 80-576. All 4 pairs must be insulated with F.E.P. No constructions that use mixed insulation materials will be allowed.
 - b. The diameter of the insulated conductor shall be .026 in. nominal.
 - c. Shall consist of (4) 23 AWG twisted pairs.
 - d. Shall be suitable for the environment in which they are to be installed.
 - e. The color coding of pairs shall be:

- f. Pair 1: W-BL; BL
 - g. Pair 2: W-O; O
 - h. Pair 3: W-G; G
 - i. Pair 4: W-BR; BR
 - j. The overall diameter of the cable shall be no larger than 0.250 inches.
 - k. The ultimate breaking strength measured in accordance with ASTM D 4565 shall be 400 N minimum.
 - l. Cable shall withstand a bend radius of 1 inch at -20 degrees Celsius without jacket or insulation cracking.
 - m. Cable shall be third party verified to meet ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1.
- C. All horizontal data station cable and voice cable shall terminate on modular patch panels or 110 cross-connecting blocks in their respective Telecommunications Room or Equipment Room as specified on the project Drawings.
 - D. All cables in a cable run shall be from the same manufacturer and shall be the same type.
 - E. A mix of UTP cables from different manufactures shall not be used.

2.3 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Berk-Tek/Ortronics a Nexans company.
 - 2. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
 - 3. Superior Essex and Leviton Network Solutions.
- B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
 - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 - 1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.
- E. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
- F. Patch Cords: Factory-made, 4-pair cables in 36-inch lengths; terminated with 8-position modular plug

at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend—relief—compliant boots and color—coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

2.4 UTP PATCH CORDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

1. Berk-Tek a Nexans company.
2. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
3. Superior Essex and Leviton Network Solutions.

B. The contractor shall provide factory terminated and tested UTP and patch cords and equipment cords for the complete cabling system. The UTP patch cables shall meet the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2 and ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1 for patch cord testing.

C. Copper (UTP) patch cords shall:

1. Use 8 position connector with impedance matched contacts and designed using dual reactance.
2. Be constructed of 100 ohm, 4 pair, 24 AWG, stranded conductor, unshielded twisted pair copper per the requirements of the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2 and ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2—1 standard.
3. Meet TIA category 6 component specifications in ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1
 - a. 100% factory tested to meet category 6 performance and
 - b. ETL or any other nationally recognized 3rd party verification
4. Be center tuned to category 6 performance specifications by using paired bi-level contact array.
5. Be capable of universal T568A or T568B wiring schemes.
6. Modular connector shall maintain the paired construction of the cable to facilitate minimum untwisting of the wires.
7. Have a performance marking indelibly labeled on the jacket (by the manufacturer).
8. Have the ability to accept color-coded labels and icons to comply with ANSI/TIA/EIA- 606-A labeling specifications.
9. Have “snagless” protection for the locking tab to prevent snagging and to protect locking tab in tight locations and provide bend relief.
10. Be available in two standard colors.
11. Be available in 3 foot, 5 foot, 7 foot, 9 foot, and 15 foot standard lengths.
12. Be backwards compatible to Category 3, 5 and 5e.

D. Patch cords shall be furnished by the Contractor as required to meet the design requirement of the project, whether indicated on the project drawings or not.

E. The Contractor shall furnish modular patch cords for each assigned port of any Ethernet patch panel installed as part of the project.

F. Jacket:

1. Data Applications: Blue (unless noted otherwise)
2. Voice Applications: Grey (unless noted otherwise)

2.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

- A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- B. Workstation Outlets: Two -port-connector assemblies mounted in single faceplate.
 1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic.
 2. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel.
 3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
 4. Legend: Factory labeled by silk-screening or engraving for stainless steel faceplates.
 5. Legend: Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
 6. Legend: Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.6 COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT RACK AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Each recreational center shall have one new equipment cabinet installed at a location to be directed by the owner.
- B. Equipment Rack Shall Include
 1. Equipment Rack
 - a. Provide Middle Atlantic RLA19-1245B or approved equivalent.
 - b. Color - Black,
 - c. 19" mounting rails
 2. Uninterruptible Power Supply 2000VA Rack Mounted
 - a. Quantity 1
 3. 24 Port CAT6 Patch Panel
 - a. Quantity 1
 4. 24 Port POE Network Switch
 - a. 10/100/1000x24 - POE
 - b. Managed
 - c. Rack mountable

- d. Quantity 1
- 5. Horizontal Cable Management
 - a. Quantity 1
- 6. 120V 20A Receptacle
 - a. Quantity 1
- 7. Network Video Recorder
 - a. See Specification Section 282300 "Video Surveillance"

C. Contractor shall furnish and install one new 20A, 120V single phase circuit from an existing electrical panel to a new duplex receptacle within new equipment cabinet for UPS power.

2.7 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section 2605 62 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for labeling requirements.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test UTP cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

2.10 NETWORK SWITCHES (by owner)

- A. Provide a fully managed, 48-port, PoE+, Layer 2 capabilities with enhanced access security, traffic prioritization, and IPv6 host support and Gigabit Ethernet. Models shall include a compact and fanless design for use in quiet work spaces.

- B. Coordinate configuration, set up and connectivity to the City of Philadelphia (CoP) WAN Network with 1 SEO – CoP Information Technology Consultant.
- C. Technical Specifications :
1. Quality of Service
 - a. Traffic prioritization (IEEE 802.1p) allows for real-time traffic classification. Supports eight priority levels mapped to either two or four queues, and uses weighted deficit round robin (WDRR) or strict priority
 - b. Simplified QoS configuration – Port-based traffic prioritization by specifying a port and priority level – VLAN-based traffic prioritization by specifying a VLAN and priority level
 - c. Class of Service (CoS) sets the IEEE 802.1p priority tag based on IP address, IP Type of Service (ToS), Layer 3 protocol, TCP/UDP port number, source port, and DiffServ
 - d. Rate limiting establishes per-port ingress-enforced maximums for all traffic or for broadcast, multicast, or unknown destination traffic
 - e. Layer 4 prioritization enables priorities based on TCP/UDP port numbers
 - f. Flow control delivers reliable communication during full-duplex operation.
 2. Connectivity
 - a. Four built-in Gigabit Ethernet uplinks on 48- port models Gigabit models have small form factor pluggable (SFP) for fiber connectivity and Fast Ethernet models have two SFP and two RJ-45 Gigabit uplinks.
 - b. IPv6 – IPv6 host allows the switch to be deployed and managed at the edge of an IPv6 network – Dual stack (IPv4/IPv6) supports connectivity for both protocols; provides a transition mechanism from IPv4 to IPv6 – MLD snooping forwards IPv6 multicast traffic to appropriate interface; prevents IPv6 multicast traffic from flooding the network – IPv6 ACL/QoS supports ACL & QoS for IPv6 network traffic on Gigabit & 48 port 10/100 models – Security RA Guard, DHCPv6 Protection, Dynamic IPv6 Lockdown
 - c. IEEE 802.3at Power over Ethernet (PoE+) provides up to 30 W per port that allows support of the latest PoE+ capable devices as well as any IEEE 802.3af compliant end device
 - d. Auto-MDIX adjusts automatically for straight-through or crossover cables on all ports
 - e. Pre-standard PoE support detects and provides power to pre-standard PoE devices
 - f. SFP slots provides fiber connectivity such as Gigabit-SX, -LX, -LH, and -BX with four SFP slots on 48-port Gigabit Ethernet models.
 - g. Layer 2 switching - VLANs supports 512 VLANs and 4,094 VLAN IDs. Jumbo packet support improves the performance of large data transfers
 - 1) 16K MAC address table provides access to many Layer 2 devices
 - 2) GARP VLAN Registration Protocol allows automatic learning and dynamic assignment of VLANs
 - 3) Rapid Per-VLAN Spanning Tree (RPVST+) allows each VLAN to build a separate spanning tree to improve link bandwidth usage; is compatible with PVST+
 3. Security
 - a. Access control lists (ACLs) accommodate IPv4/IPv6 port and VLAN-based ACLs
 - b. Source-port filtering allows only specified ports to communicate with each other
 - c. RADIUS/TACACS+ eases switch management security administration by using a password authentication server
 - d. Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) encrypts all HTTP traffic, allowing secure access to the browser-based management GUI in the switch
 - e. Port security allows access only to specified MAC addresses, which can be learned or specified by the administrator
 - f. MAC address lockout prevents particular configured MAC addresses from connecting to the network
 - g. Multiple user authentication methods
 - 1) IEEE 802.1X uses an IEEE 802.1X supplicant on the client in conjunction with a RADIUS server to authenticate in accordance with industry standards
 - 2) Web-based authentication provides a browser-based environment, similar to IEEE 802.1X, to authenticate clients that do not support the IEEE 802.1X supplicant
 - 3) Supports MAC-based authentication using the client's MAC address • Secure shell (SSH) v2 encrypts all transmitted data for secure remote CLI access over IP networks

- h. Secure FTP allows secure file transfer to and from the switch; protects against unwanted file downloads or unauthorized copying of a switch configuration file
- i. Authentication flexibility
 - 1) Multiple IEEE 802.1X users per port provides authentication for up to eight IEEE 802.1X users per port; prevents a user from "piggybacking" on another user's IEEE 802.1X authentication
 - 2) Concurrent IEEE 802.1X, Web or MAC authentication schemes per port allows a switch port to accept IEEE 802.1X and either Web or MAC authenticationsSwitch management logon security helps secure switch CLI logon by optionally requiring either RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication
- j. DHCP protection blocks DHCP packets from unauthorized DHCP servers, preventing denial-of-service attacks
- k. Dynamic ARP protection: blocks ARP broadcasts from unauthorized hosts, preventing eavesdropping or theft of network data
- l. Dynamic IP lockdown works with DHCP protection to block traffic from unauthorized hosts, preventing IP source address spoofing
- m. MAC Pinning allows non-chatty legacy devices to stay authenticated by pinning client MAC addresses to the port until the clients logoff or get disconnected

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA—569—A for pull—box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
 - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
 - 5. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:
 - a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
 - b. Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet from communications equipment room.
 - 6. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 - 7. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 8. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending

cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.

9. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 10. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 11. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
 12. In the communications equipment room, install a 10—foot— long service loop on each end of cable.
 13. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. UTP Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
 2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- F. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
 2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
 3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.

- c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
- 4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
- 5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
- 6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 28 Section 282300 "Video Surveillance."
- B. Using cable management system software specified in Part 2, develop Cabling Administration Drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable and label cable, jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with same designation. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.
- C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 level of administration.

- D. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- E. Cable and Wire Identification:
1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 2. Each wire connected to building—mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
 4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building- mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer—printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA—606—A.
1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
4. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

- a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
5. UTP Performance Tests:
- a. Test for each outlet. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
 - 1) Wire map.
 - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
 - 3) Insertion loss.
 - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
 - 5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
 - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
 - 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
 - 8) Return loss.
 - 9) Propagation delay.
 - 10) Delay skew.
 - C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
 - D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

SECTION 282300 – VIDEO SURVEILLANCE AND MOSQUITO TYPE SONIC SECURITY DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, network video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.
- B. Video surveillance system shall be integrated with existing PPR network equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AGC: Automatic gain control.
- B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.
- C. B/W: Black and white.
- D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.
- E. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- F. IP: Internet protocol.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- J. PC: Personal computer.
- K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- L. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.
- M. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- N. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- O. WAN: Wide area network.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Video surveillance system shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
 - 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
 - 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring (if provided).
 - 6. Storage Device Calculations.
 - 7. Network Bandwidth Requirements and Fiber Optic Channel Link-Loss Budgets .
 - 8. Existing Equipment Frame Elevations, where new equipment is being added.
- C. Equipment List: Include every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For video surveillance, cameras, camera-supporting equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following as well:

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC, if access-control system is provided.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 50 to 95 deg F (10 to 35 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.

2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.

3. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non- temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.

4. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h) and snow cover up to 24 inches (610 mm) thick. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.

5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
6. Corrosive Environment: System components subject to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.
7. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Final Acceptance by the City.
- B. Warranty Requirements: Contractor shall warrant DPP (or PPR) that the equipment will be free and clear of any lien or encumbrance on the final acceptance date. Contractor shall further warrant for a period of three (3) year from the date of Substantial Completion that the Security System will, under normal use and service, be free from defects and faulty workmanship except as set forth below:
 1. Contractor's obligation under this warranty is to repair or replace defective equipment, parts, and associated labor thereto at its expense. Contractor shall warrant that replacement or repaired equipment furnished hereunder and labor shall be in accordance with current industry standards.
 2. PPR is granted a nontransferable fully paid license (Genetec) to use all software furnished by the Contractor as part of furnishing the security system equipment provisions under terms established by the software manufacturer. The Authority will be provided with a copy of all applicable licenses. Contractor shall warrant that it has the right to grant such licenses.
 3. A copy of Contractor's standard warranty agreement must be provided and must match or exceed manufacturer's warranty, minimum of 3 years.
 4. Upgrade of software during warranty period.
 5. Provide Service for three (3) years after substantial completion, includes all labor and material cost associated with the repair, with the exception of third party negligence or acts of vandalism.
 6. Contractor's personnel shall respond to all system failures within four (4) hours of the occurring event. All failure shall be corrected within eight (8) hours of the arrival on site of Contractor's personnel.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

- B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.
- C. Compatibility: Video Management Software must be compatible with IP video equipment. The contractor, if submitting components from different manufactures must submit with either shop drawings, or product data, statements of compatibility from each manufacturer guaranteeing IP video components are compatible with the IP video management software submitted.

2.2 IP VIDEO SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1. Genetec
- 2. Vivotek
- 3. Axis Communications
- 4. DVTEL

- B. Description:

- 1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
- 2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
- 3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
- 4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video and H.264 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
- 5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.
- 6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse and urban environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards. Where required provide vandal proof exterior camera housings.
- 7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN at the same time.
- 8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.

2.3 STANDARD IP CAMERAS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Genetec (AutoVu SharpV)
2. Vivotek
3. Axis Communications
4. DVTEL

B. Network Indoor Dome Camera, HD/2Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor - 1/3" Progressive scan CMOS
2. Lens - 2.7-9mm Motorized Verifocal
3. Day/Night Sensor – Electronic or True
4. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (lux) - 0.5 color, 0.1 black and white
5. Maximum Resolution (pixels) - 1920x1080 (2MP)
6. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
7. Frames per Second - 30
8. Alarm Inputs/Outputs - 2
9. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP/RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP
10. Power - PoE or DC Input
11. Vandal Resistant - Yes
12. Digital Pan/Tilt/Zoom
13. 20M IR LED
14. Mounting:
 - a. Indoor Ceiling Mount (Vandal Proof)
 - b. Wall Mount (Vandal Proof)

C. Network Indoor Dome Camera, HD/3Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor - 1/3" Progressive scan CMOS
2. Lens - 2.7-9mm Motorized Verifocal
3. Day/Night Sensor – Electronic or True
4. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (lux) - 0.8 color, 0.1 black and white
5. Maximum Resolution (pixels) - 2048x1536 (3MP)
6. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
7. Frames per Second – 30
8. Alarm Inputs/Outputs - 2
9. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP/RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP
10. Power - PoE or DC Input
11. Vandal Resistant - Yes
12. Digital Pan/Tilt/Zoom
13. 20M IR LED
14. Mounting:
 - a. Indoor Ceiling Mount (Vandal Proof)
 - b. Wall Mount (Vandal Proof)

D. Network Outdoor Dome Camera, HD/ (2) Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor - 1/3" Progressive scan CMOS

2. Lens – 2.7-9mm Motorized Verifocal
3. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (lux) - 0.08 color, 0.1 black and white
4. Maximum Resolution (pixels) - 1920x1080
5. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
6. Frames per Second - 30
7. Intelligent Alarm
8. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP, RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP, SNMP, HTTPS, FTP, 802.1x, Qos
9. Power - PoE
10. Outdoor Use - Outdoor Ready
11. Vandal Resistant - Yes
12. Digital Pan/Tilt/Zoom
13. 20M IR LED
14. Heater - Integrated with housing
15. Mounting:
 - a. Outdoor Wall Mount (Vandal Proof)
 - b. Outdoor Wall Mount on Pole Mount Adapter, Min. Three Clamps (Vandal Proof)

E. Network Outdoor Dome Camera, HD/ (3) Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor - 1/3" Progressive scan CMOS
2. Lens – 2.7-9mm Motorized Verifocal
3. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (lux) 0.5 color, 0 black and white
4. Maximum Resolution (pixels) - 2048x1536 (3MP)
5. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
6. Frames per Second - 30
7. Intelligent Alarm
8. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP, RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP, SNMP, HTTPS, FTP, 802.1x, Qos
9. Power - PoE
10. Outdoor Use - Outdoor Ready
11. Vandal Resistant - Yes
12. Digital Pan/Tilt/Zoom
13. 20M IR LED
14. Heater - Integrated with housing
15. Mounting:
 - a. Outdoor Wall Mount(Vandal Proof)
 - b. Outdoor Wall Mount on Pole Mount Adapter, Min. Three Clamps(Vandal Proof)

F. Mini Dome Camera, HD/ 2 Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor - 1/3" Progressive scan CMOS
2. Lens - 4mm
3. Day/Night Sensor - Automatic
4. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (lux) - 0.5 color, 0.1 black and white with dynamic capture, 1.1 color, 0.2 black and white with light finder
5. Maximum Resolution (pixels) - 1920x1080 (2MP)
6. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
7. Frames per Second - 15

8. Intelligent Alarm
9. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP/RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP
10. Power - PoE
11. Outdoor Use - Outdoor Ready
12. Vandal Resistant – Yes
13. Mounting:
 - a. Indoor Ceiling Mount (Vandal Proof)
 - b. Wall Mount (Vandal Proof)

G. Network Outdoor PTZ Camera HD/ 3Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor - 1/3" Progressive scan CMOS
2. Lens - 2.7-9mm Motorized Verifocal
3. Day/Night Sensor - Auto
4. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity: 0.05LUX at (F1.6, on color), 0.01LUX at (F1.6, on black and white)
5. Maximum Resolution (pixels) - 2048x12536 (3MP)
6. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
7. Frames per Second min– 30
8. Alarm Inputs/Outputs – 7/2
9. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP/RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP
10. Power - PoE or DC Input
11. Vandal Resistant - Yes
12. PTZ Function: 360deg. Endless pan range and -20deg to 90der. Tilt range
13. 20M IR LED
14. Mounting:
 - a. Indoor Ceiling Mount (Vandal Proof)
 - b. Wall Mount (Vandal Proof)

H. Network Indoor Dome Camera (360deg. or fish eye lens), HD/2Megapixel: Assembled and tested as a complete manufactured unit.

1. Image Sensor – 1/1.8" Progressive scan CMOS
2. Lens – 1.27mm, F2.8 angle of view 180 deg. (wall mount) 360 deg. (ceiling mount).
3. Day/Night Sensor - Auto
4. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity: 0.05 LUX at (F1.2, AGC on color), 03 LUX at (F2.8, AGC on color), 0.0 LUX black and white
5. Maximum Resolution - 3072x2048
6. Video Compression - H.264/MPEG4/M-JPEG
7. Frames per Second - 50
8. Network Protocol - TCP/IP, HTTP, DHCP, DNS, DDNS, RTP/RTSP, PPPoE, SMTP, NTP
9. Power - PoE or DC Input
10. Vandal Resistant - Yes
11. Mounting:
 - a. Indoor Ceiling Mount (Vandal Proof)
 - b. Wall Mount (Vandal Proof)

2.4 VIDEO DECODERS

- A.
 - 1. Network - IPv4 or IPv6
 - 2. Power - PoE, DC
 - 3. Monitor Support - Up to 2 DVI or Analog
 - 4. Network Configurable
 - 5. Camera Viewing capability only, no control

2.5 POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Low-voltage power supplies matched for voltage and current requirements of cameras and accessories, and of type as recommended by manufacturer of camera and lens.
- B.
 - 1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3.
 - 2. Input - 115VAC
 - 3. Output - 16 fuse protected outputs:
 - a. 12VDC or 24VDC
 - b. 4A total continuous supply
 - c. 3.5A rated outputs
 - 4. Temperature Operating Range - 0 to 49 C
 - 5. Input/Output LED Indicators
 - 6. On/Off Switch
 - 7. Locking Enclosure

2.6 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements of:
 - 1. Genetec
- B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.
- C. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.

- D. Protective Housings for Fixed Cameras: Steel enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.
1. Tamper switch on access cover sounds an alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central-control unit shall identify tamper alarms and indicate location in alarm display.
 2. Camera Viewing Window: Polycarbonate window, aligned with camera lens.
 3. Duplex Receptacle: Internally mounted.
 4. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
 5. Built-in, thermostat-activated heater units. Units shall be automatically controlled so the environmental limits of the camera equipment are not exceeded.
 6. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
 7. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
 8. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

2.7 MONITORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. NEC Display (security monitor not TV)
 2. Samsung (security monitor not TV)
 3. Sharp (security monitor not TV)
 4. LG (security monitor not TV)
 5. TATUNG (security monitor not TV)
- B. Monitors shall be sized per the drawings. If size is not specified, the size shall be 26" to 32" minimum.
- C. Monitors shall be mounted within a see through vandal proof enclosure. Vandal proof enclosure shall be lockable and wall mountable.

2.8 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS/VIDEO SERVERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products:
1. Genetec
- B. Internal 12 TB min hard disk.

1. Contractor shall provide storage calculations based on quantity of cameras and recording parameters, 40TB shall be the minimum size NVR acceptable, contractor shall increase size based on number of cameras maintaining 20% spare capacity for recording and expansion.
2. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
3. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
4. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
5. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
6. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
7. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
8. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
9. Digital certification by watermarking.
10. Internal RAID storage of up to 40 TB.
11. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software, see next section.
12. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
13. Network video recording/storage devices shall be sized to store video at 2MP for 30 days with 20% capacity remaining, 30 fps, record on motion. Multiple storage devices shall be required as necessary. At a minimum, one storage device per facility will be required.

C. Minimum Device Requirements:

1. OS Windows 10 Enterprise LTSC.
2. Intel Core i5-8500 3.00GHz
3. RAM 16 GB DDR4
4. Onboard 1GB Network adapter

D. Each NVR shall be supplied with a keyboard and mouse for IP camera control at the viewing station. The Keyboard shall be connected directly to the NVR. The keyboard shall allow user logon, display selection, monitor configuration and camera control.

E. Contractor shall configure all new cameras for each building or each specified location for viewing, recording and playback on the NVR. Each NVR setup will be unique and configuration will be determined by the Department of Public Property. Contractor shall submit NVR and recording setup and configuration of cameras for review and approval.

F. NVR shall be mounted with a vandal proof enclosure. Vandal Proof enclosure shall be lockable and mountable.

2.9 POWER OVER ETHERNET (POE) POWER INJECTORS

A. Minimum Device Requirements:

1. Ports - 16 (min.) actual device quantities on drawings, use 24 port if necessary.
2. Power Input - 115VAC.
3. Max Power - 30W per port, Total Power 300W.
4. 19" Rack Mountable

2.10 MOSQUITO TYPE SONIC SECURITY DEVICES

- A. Mosquito Sonic Devices Model Number–MK 4 with Multi-Age as manufactured by Moving Sound Technologies, or PPR approved equal.
- B. Devices shall be secured with Standard Security Cage as manufactured by Moving Sound Technologies, or PPR approved equal.
- C. Devices shall be connected to existing electrical panel and circuited through a new time clock. Electromechanical timer model number Tork 7200 or PPR approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 – Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems. If Division 26 is not provided, install wiring per below.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
 - 2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
 - 3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- E. For LAN connection and fiber-optic and copper communication wiring, comply with Section 271500-1.4 "Horizontal Cabling Description."
- F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.
- B. Install cameras with an 84-inch minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings to the finished floor or grade. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance. For exterior camera mount cameras on building exteriors or steel poles to match exterior lighting system poles.
- C. Set pan unit and pan-and-tilt unit stops to suit final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.
- D. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install tamper switches on components indicated to receive tamper switches, arranged to detect unauthorized entry into system-component enclosures and mounted in self-protected, inconspicuous positions.
- F. Avoid ground loops by making ground connections only at the control station.
 - 1. For 12- and 24-V dc cameras, connect the coaxial cable shields only at the monitor end.
- G. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections:
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pre-testing: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
 - b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
 - c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.

- d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m) away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
 - e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
 - g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
 - h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.
3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
 5. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 6. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit to PPR for review.

3.5 LABELING OF CAMERA DEVICES AND CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Contractor to provide a recommended Labeling System to Project Coordinator prior to camera installation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits for this purpose at 6 months and 12 months. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Check cable connections.
 2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
 3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
 5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.
 6. Cleaning per Section 3.7

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION/TRAINING

- A. Provide a minimum of 8 hours of training to Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 283111
DIGITAL ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Device guards.
7. Firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
8. Magnetic door holders.
9. Remote annunciator.
10. Graphic annunciator.
11. Addressable interface device.
12. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
13. Network communications.
14. System printer. (Portable)

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for door closers and holders with associated smoke detectors, electric door locks, and release devices that interface with the fire alarm system.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FAAP: Fire Alarm Annunciation Panel.
- C. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- D. HLI: High Level Interface.
- E. MC: Metal Clad cable for Fire alarm System –“Red” with red stripe.
- F. NAC: Notification Appliances Circuit panel.
- G. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

H. PC: Personal computer.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Non-coded addressable system; multiplexed signal transmission dedicated to fire alarm service in each building and carbon monoxide (CO) detection in select areas.
- B. The independent fire alarm systems shall be provided for each building; Each of the buildings has dedicated address and fire department access.
- C. Fire alarm system shall have independent dialer and communication service with Fire Department.
- D. Each of the building shall be equipped with Fire Alarm Annunciation Panel (FAAP) located at the Fire Department entrance lobby.
- E. Alarm resulted from carbon monoxide detectors shall be unique and easily distinguished from fire alarm signal and shall be restricted to the affected area only. The audible prerecorded message shall indicate that this is an "Dangerously Elevated Level of Carbon Monoxide (CO) in Areas of Alarm.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72, 2010.
 - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
 - 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
 - 5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
 - 6. Include battery-size calculations.
 - 7. Include input/output matrix.
 - 8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
 - 9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
 - 10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 - 11. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
 - 12. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
 - 13. System Operation Description: Detailed description for this Project, including method of operation and supervision of each type of circuit and sequence of operations for manually

and automatically initiated system inputs and outputs. Manufacturer's standard descriptions for generic systems are not acceptable.

14. Remote Annunciator Graphic of Entire Building.
15. Device Address List: Coordinate with final system programming.
16. System riser diagram with device addresses, conduit sizes, and cable and wire types and sizes.
17. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified. Show wiring color code.
18. Duct Smoke Detectors: Performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for the complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating. Each duct smoke detector installed in not readily accessible spaces or above ceiling shall be equipped with remote indicator status diodes and a test switch installed directly below duct smoke detector. If the ceiling is installed then, the indicator and test switch shall be installed on the ceiling directly below duct smoke detector.
19. Floor Plans: Indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.

D. Indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.07 Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.08 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. In addition to items "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:

- a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
- c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
- d. Riser diagram.
- e. Device addresses.
- f. Record copy of site-specific software.
- g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
- h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
- i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

- 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
- 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
- 3. Device address list.
- 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.09 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- 1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
 - 2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 3 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit for each rating.
 - 3. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 - 4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to 2 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 - 5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamper-proofed components.
 - 6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: 2 of each type installed.
 - 7. Fuses: 2 of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.

1.010 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

1.011 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than 5 days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Construction Manager's written permission.
- B. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.012 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: All components shall be compatible with proposed fire alarm system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.
- B. Non-coded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation.
- C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.
4. Duct smoke detectors.
5. Carbon monoxide detectors.
6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
7. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
8. Fire standpipe system.
9. Fire pump running.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit, connected network control panels, and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
8. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
9. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
10. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
11. Activate emergency lighting control.
12. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
13. Record events in the system memory.
14. Record events by the system printer.
15. Indicate device in alarm on the graphic annunciator.
16. Indicate transmitted signal (trouble, supervisory and alarm) from the other building.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
3. Fire pump running.
4. Fire-pump loss of power.
5. Fire-pump power phase reversal.
6. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
7. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
8. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.

11. Hose cabinet door open.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Record the event on system printer.
4. After a time delay of 240 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station. The alarm signal shall be transmitted within 10 seconds.
5. Transmit system status to building management system.
6. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

2.03 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:

B.

1. Edwards
2. Notifier
3. Simplex Grinnell LP
4. Siemens Industry, Inc.
5. Silent Knight.

C. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
 - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.

D. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and

supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.

E. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:

1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A, Style 6.
2. Pathway Survivability: Level 1.
3. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
4. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.
 - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - c. One USB, RS 232 port for PC configuration.
 - d. One RS 232 port for VESDA HLI connection.
 - e. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.

F. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

G. Notification-Appliance Circuit:

1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.

H. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.

I. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

J. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

- K. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided in a separate cabinet.
 - 1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
 - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
 - 3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.

- L. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

- M. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
 - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

- N. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

- O. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.04 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. Manufacturers not limited to:
 - 1. Notifier,
 - 2. Siemens industry Inc,
 - 3. Simplex Grinnell LP,
 - 4. Silent Night

- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral or attached addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
 4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.
 5. Protective wire shield in all athletic activities areas.

2.05 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. Available manufacturers not limited to:
1. Notifier,
 2. Siemens Industry,
 3. Simplex Grinnell LP
 4. Silent Knight
- B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 2. Detectors shall be four or two-wire type as required by the control system.
 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
 7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
- C. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

- a. Primary status.
- b. Device type.
- c. Present average value.
- d. Present sensitivity selected.
- e. Sensor range normal, dirty, etc..

D. Ionization combination Smoke Detector (Use in electrical and IDF rooms):

- 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
- 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

E. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

- 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
- 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
- 4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
- 5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
- 6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.06 HEAT DETECTORS

A. Available manufacturers not limited to:

- 1. Notifier,
- 2. Siemens Industry,
- 3. Simplex Grinnell LP
- 4. Silent Knight

B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

- 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.

- C. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F– select temperature respective to application or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F- select temperature respective to application per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

- D. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F - select temperature respective to application.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.07 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. Available Manufacturers not limited to:
 - 1. Notifier
 - 2. Siemens Industry Inc,
 - 3. Simplex Grinnell LP
 - 4. System Sensors
 - 5. Wheelock, a Brand of EATON

- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

- C. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

- D. Horns: (used on exterior of the building at ground level only) Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.

- E. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch high letters on the unit.
 - 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 15 -177 cd as shown on drawing per each device.
 - b. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated on the drawing.

3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place. (Used only in athletic building.)
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

F. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

1. Comply with UL 1480.
2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W in areas of athletic activities.
4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
5. Mounting: Flush (preferable) or surface mounted depending on the structure.
6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.08 FIREFIGHTERS' TWO-WAY TELEPHONE COMMUNICATION SERVICE

A. Dedicated, two-way, supervised, telephone voice communication links between fire-alarm control unit and remote firefighters' telephone stations. Supervised telephone lines shall be connected to talk circuits by controls in a control module. Provide the following:

1. Common-talk type for firefighter use only.
2. Selective-talk type for use by firefighters and fire wardens.
3. Controls to disconnect phones from talk circuits if too many phones are in use simultaneously. An indicator lamp shall flash if a phone is disconnected from the talk circuits.
4. Addressable firefighters' phone modules to monitor and control a loop of firefighter phones. Module shall be capable of differentiating between normal, off-hook, and trouble conditions.
5. Audible Pulse and Tone Generator, and High-Intensity Lamp: When a remote telephone is taken off the hook, it causes an audible signal to sound and a high-intensity lamp to flash at the fire-alarm control unit.
6. Selector panel controls to provide for simultaneous operation of up to six telephones in selected zones. Indicate ground faults and open or shorted telephone lines on the panel front by individual LEDs.
7. Display: digital to indicate location of caller.
8. Remote Telephone Cabinet: Flush- or surface-mounted cabinet as indicated, factory-standard red finish, with handset.
 - a. Install one-piece handset to cabinet with vandal-resistant armored cord. Silk-screened or engraved label on cabinet door, designating "Fire Emergency Phone."
9. Handsets: quantities as shown on drawings push-to-talk-type set, stored in a cabinet adjacent to fire-alarm control unit.

2.09 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
4. Rating: 120-V ac.

B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.010 GRAPHIC ANNUNCIATOR

A. Available manufacturers not limited to:

1. Simplex Grinnell LP,
2. Siemens Industry, Inc.
3. Micron Technologies,
4. Potter electric Signal Co.

B. Graphic Annunciator Panel: Mounted in an aluminum frame with nonglare, minimum 3/16-inch-thick, clear acrylic cover over graphic representation of the facility. Detector locations shall be represented by red LED lamps. Normal system operation shall be indicated by a lighted, green LED. Trouble and supervisory alarms shall be represented by an amber LED.

1. Comply with UL 864.
2. Operating voltage shall be 24-V dc provided by a local 24-V power supply provided with the annunciator.
3. Include built-in voltage regulation, reverse polarity protection, RS 232/422 serial communications, and a lamp test switch.
4. Flush where possible or Semi-flush mounted in a NEMA 250, Type 1 cabinet, with key lock and no exposed screws or hinges.
5. Graphic representation of the facility shall be a CAD drawing and each detector shall be represented by an LED in its actual location. CAD drawing shall be at 1/32-inch per foot scale or larger.
6. The LED representing a detector shall flash two times per second while detector is an alarm.

C. Graphic Annunciator Workstation: PC-based, with fire-alarm annunciator software with historical logging, report generation, and a graphic interface showing all alarm points in the system. PC with operating system software, minimum 250GB hard drive, 17" digital display monitor, with wireless keyboard and mouse.

2.011 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

1. Mounting: Flush where structurally possible or semi-flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.012 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 - 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
 - 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
 - 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall, to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.
 - 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 - 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 - 1. Operate notification devices.
 - 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.013 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone lines and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
 - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 - 2. Programming device.
 - 3. LED display.
 - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 - 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
 - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
 - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
 - 3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
 - 4. Loss of ac supply.
 - 5. Loss of power.

6. Low battery.
7. Abnormal test signal.
8. Communication bus failure.

- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.014 NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Provide network communications for fire-alarm system according to fire-alarm manufacturer's written requirements.
- B. Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written requirements and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.
- C. Provide integration gateway using BACnet or Modbus for connection to building automation system.

2.015 SYSTEM PRINTER

- A. Printer shall be listed and labeled as an integral part of fire-alarm system.

2.016 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
 1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
 - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
 - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A or Annex B in NFPA 72.
 - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 - 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
 - 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install as shown on drawings. Install horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling or ceiling mounted as where shown on drawings. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.03 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in non-accessible locations may be routed exposed.
 - 1. Exposed pathways located less than 96 inches above the floor shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Pathways shall be installed in EMT between zones. Use Red MC cables for all installation within the same zones or serving the same zone.
- C. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
 - 2. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 3. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 4. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 5. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 - 6. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 - 7. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 8. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
 - 9. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
 - 10. Data communication circuits for connection to mass notification system.
 - 11. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
 - 12. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
 - 13. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.06 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 - 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

- F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.08 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.09 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 15 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.010 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Provide 3 hours training for fire alarm system installed in each building.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 10 00 SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Clearing and grubbing.
 - 2. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
 - 3. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning site utilities in place.
 - 4. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- B. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
- B. Record drawings, according to Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents," identifying and accurately locating capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- C. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
 - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.5 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 - 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

3.6 DISPOSAL

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 31 10 00 SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Clearing and grubbing.
 - 2. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
 - 3. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning site utilities in place.
 - 4. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- B. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
- B. Record drawings, according to Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents," identifying and accurately locating capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- C. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
 - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.5 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

Issue for Bid

- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 - 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

3.6 DISPOSAL

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. City of Philadelphia and PennDOT standard specifications. The most stringent requirements shall be considered the base requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
 - 2. Preparing subgrades for walks, pavements, turf and grasses, and plants.
 - 3. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
 - 4. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
 - 5. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
 - 6. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
 - 7. Excavating well hole to accommodate elevator-cylinder assembly.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
 - 2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
 - 3. Section 315000 "Excavation Support and Protection" for shoring, bracing, and sheet piling of excavations.
 - 4. Section 329300 "Plants" for finish grading in planting areas and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
 - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

Issue for Bid

- B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Engineer. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the Work.
 - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
 - 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Engineer. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Engineer, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock-excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
 - 1. Equipment for Footing, Trench, and Pit Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- (1065-mm-) maximum-width, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp (103-kW) flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf (128 kN) and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf (82 kN) with extra-long reach boom.
 - 2. Equipment for Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp (172-kW) flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf (213.3-kN) breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket.
- I. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. or more in volume that exceed a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches when tested by a geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586.

Issue for Bid

- J. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- K. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- L. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- M. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct preexcavation conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to earthmoving, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - Personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - Coordination of Work with utility locator service.
 - Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of tree- and plant-protection zones.
 - Extent of trenching by hand or with air spade.
 - Field quality control.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
 - 1. Geotextiles.
 - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
 - 3. Warning tapes.
- B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:
 - 1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
 - 2. Warning Tape: 12 inches (300 mm) long; of each color.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

Issue for Bid

B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.

1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Engineer.

C. Utility Locator Service: Notify PA One Call for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.

D. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing" are in place.

E. Do not commence earth-moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing" are in place.

F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:

1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, SM, GC, SC, ML and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups CL, OL, CH, MH, and OH according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.
 - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 294/D 2940M 0; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.

- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.
- J. Sand: ASTM C 33/C 33M; fine aggregate.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

- 1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
- 2. Survivability: As follows:
 - Grab Tensile Strength: 120 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - Mullen Burst Strength: 225 PSI; ASTM D 3786.
 - Tear Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
- 3. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

- B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

- 1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
- 2. Survivability: As follows:
 - Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf (1100 N); ASTM D 4632.
 - Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf (990 N); ASTM D 4632.
 - Tear Strength: 90 lbf (400 N); ASTM D 4533.
 - Puncture Strength: 90 lbf (400 N); ASTM D 4833.
- 3. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 (0.250-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
- 4. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
- 5. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting low-density, flowable concrete material produced from the following:

Issue for Bid

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I, Type II or Type III.
 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869/C 869M.
 5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
 6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- B. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
1. As-Cast Unit Weight: 36 to 42 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
 2. Compressive Strength: 140 psi when tested according to ASTM C 495/C 495M.
- C. Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 140-psi compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C 495/C 495M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
1. Red: Electric.
 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 4. Blue: Water systems.
 5. Green: Sewer systems.
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored as follows:
1. Red: Electric.
 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 4. Blue: Water systems.
 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.
- B. Explosives: Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to Project site or using explosives on Project site.
 - 1. Perform blasting without damaging adjacent structures, property, or site improvements.
 - 2. Perform blasting without weakening the bearing capacity of rock subgrade and with the least-practicable disturbance to rock to remain.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
 - 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
 - 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
 - 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
 - Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
 - 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

- B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Engineer. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.
 1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; and soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
 - Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

 2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
 - 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
 - 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
 - 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
 - Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
 - 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

Issue for Bid

1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm) above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches (300 mm) higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit as indicated.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.

Issue for Bid

2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches (150 mm) or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 4. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches (100 mm) deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
1. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- E. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
 3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Engineer when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes) to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Engineer, without additional compensation.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.2 MPa), may be used when approved by Engineer.
 - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Engineer.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

Issue for Bid

- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
 - C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.
 - F. Initial Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the pipe or conduit.
 - Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
 - G. Final Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
 - H. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.
- 3.13 SOIL FILL
- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
 - B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

Issue for Bid

1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.14 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.15 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches (300 mm) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.

3.16 GRADING

Issue for Bid

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge.

3.17 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Section 334600 "Subdrainage."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch (150-mm) course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches (150 mm) thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches (300 mm) of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches (150 mm) thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
 - 2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- (150-mm-) thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

3.18 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

Issue for Bid

- A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 - 1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Shape subbase course and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 - 4. Place subbase course and base course 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 5. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - 6. Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557.
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches (300 mm) wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557.

3.19 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place drainage course 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Issue for Bid

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 - 3. Determine, during placement and compaction that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Engineer.
- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2937, and ASTM D 6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.
 - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
 - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.21 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

Issue for Bid

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Engineer; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.22 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Engineer.
 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

SECTION 31 23 19 DEWATERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes construction dewatering.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 01 Section Construction Progress Documentation for recording preexisting conditions and dewatering system progress.
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, backfilling, site grading, and for site utilities.
 - 4. Division 33 Section "Subdrainage" for permanent foundation wall, underfloor, and footing drainage.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dewatering Performance: Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
 - 1. Delegated Design: Design dewatering system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
 - 2. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, that excavation does not flood, and that damage to subgrades and permanent structures is prevented.
 - 3. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
 - 4. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
 - 5. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.
 - 6. Place filter bags on stable or well vegetated areas which are flatter than 5% and which will not erode when subjected to bag discharge. If stable or well vegetated area is unavailable discharge runoff to PWD combined sewer system. An industrial waste permit from PWD is required prior to pumping to PWD sewer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

Issue for Bid

- A. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.
 - 1. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.
 - 2. Include a written plan for dewatering operations including control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dewatering system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Other Informational Submittals:
 - 1. Photographs: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by dewatering operations.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer that has specialized in dewatering work.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to dewatering including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Inspection and discussion of condition of site to be dewatered including coordination with temporary erosion control measures and temporary controls and protections.
 - b. Geotechnical report.
 - c. Proposed site clearing and excavations.
 - d. Existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
 - e. Coordination for interruption, shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.

- f. Construction schedule. Verify availability of Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- g. Testing and monitoring of dewatering system.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without Architect's written permission.
- B. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by geotechnical engineer. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.
 - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for dewatering.
 - 2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in the Project Manual.
- C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements, establishing exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
 - 1. During dewatering, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.
 - 1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding site and surrounding area.

Issue for Bid

2. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.
- B. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. A PWD Industrial Waste Permit is required for any pumping to city-owned infrastructure. Obtain the necessary permit approvals prior to pumping to City owned infrastructure.
- C. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.
- D. Monitor dewatering systems continuously.
- E. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.
- F. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" during dewatering operations.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.
1. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
 2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.
- B. Before excavating below ground-water level, place system into operation to lower water to specified levels. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.
- C. Provide an adequate system to lower and control ground water to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Install sufficient dewatering equipment to drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
1. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
- D. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
1. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of 24 inches surface of excavation.

- E. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Provide standby equipment on site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails. If dewatering requirements are not satisfied due to inadequacy or failure of dewatering system, restore damaged structures and foundation soils at no additional expense to Owner.
 - 1. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of 36 inches below overlying construction.
- G. Damages: Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering operations.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Observation Wells: Provide, take measurements, and maintain at least the minimum number of observation wells or piezometers indicated; additional observation wells may be required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Observe and record daily elevation of ground water and piezometric water levels in observation wells.
 - 2. Repair or replace, within 24 hours, observation wells that become inactive, damaged, or destroyed. In areas where observation wells are not functioning properly, suspend construction activities until reliable observations can be made. Add or remove water from observation-well risers to demonstrate that observation wells are functioning properly.
 - 3. Fill observation wells, remove piezometers, and fill holes when dewatering is completed.
- B. Provide continual observation to ensure that subsurface soils are not being removed by the dewatering operation.

END OF SECTION 312319

SECTION 31 50 00 EXCAVATION AND SUPPORT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 31 Section "Earthwork" for excavating and backfilling.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design, provide, monitor, and maintain an anchored and braced excavation support and protection system capable of resisting soil and hydrostatic pressure and supporting sidewalls of excavations.
 - 1. Work includes removing excavation support and protection systems when no longer needed.
 - 2. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
 - 3. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, pavements, utilities and other improvements adjacent to excavation.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer for excavation support and protection systems. System design and calculations must be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Include Shop Drawings signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- B. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of similar completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

Issue for Bid

- C. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by excavation support and protection systems.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer to assume engineering responsibility and perform work of this Section who has specialized in installing excavation support and protection systems similar to those required for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where the Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services for designing excavation support and protection systems that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
 - 1. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a qualified professional engineer to prepare or supervise the preparation of data for the excavation support and protection system including drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis that shows the system's compliance with specified requirements.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted in writing by the architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
- B. Project Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The report is part of the Contract Documents. The opinions expressed in this report are those of the engineer and represent interpretations of the subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by the engineer. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data by Contractor.
 - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations as necessary.
- C. Survey adjacent structures and improvements, employing a qualified professional engineer or surveyor; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
 - 1. During installation of excavation support and protection systems, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Engineer if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

Issue for Bid

1.7 PRODUCTS

- A. None

1.8 MATERIALS

- A. Materials need not be new but must be in serviceable condition.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36.
- C. Steel Sheet Piling: ASTM A 328 or ASTM A 572.
- D. Wood Lagging: Lumber, mixed hardwood, nominal rough thickness of 3 inches.

1.9 EXECUTION

- A. Not Applicable

1.10 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, pavements and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
 - 1. Shore, support and protect utilities encountered.
- B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
- C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction and to permit forming and finishing of concrete surfaces.
- D. Monitor excavation support and protection systems daily during excavation progress and for as long as excavation remains open. Promptly correct bulges, breakage or other evidence of movement to ensure excavation support and protection systems remain stable.
- E. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities, to the satisfaction of the Owner caused by installing excavation support and protection systems.

1.11 SOLDIER BEAMS AND LAGGING

Issue for Bid

- A. Install steel soldier piles before starting excavation. Space soldier piles at intervals indicated. Accurately align exposed faces of flanges to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.
- B. Install wood lagging within flanges of soldier piles as excavation proceeds. Trim excavation as required to install lagging. Fill voids behind lagging with soil and compact.
- C. Install wales horizontally at centers indicated and secure to soldier piles.

1.12 SHEET PILING

- A. Install one-piece sheet piling and tightly interlock to form a continuous barrier. Accurately align exposed faces of sheet piling to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment. Cut tops of sheet piling to uniform elevation at top of excavation.

1.13 TIEBACKS

- A. Tiebacks: Drill for, install, tension and grout tiebacks into position. Test load-carrying capacity of each tieback and replace and retest deficient tiebacks.

1.14 BRACING

- A. Bracing: Locate bracing to clear columns, floor framing construction and other permanent work. If necessary to move a brace, install new bracing before removing original brace.
 - 1. Do not place bracing where it will be cast into or included in permanent concrete work, unless otherwise approved by architect.
 - 2. Install internal bracing, if required, to prevent spreading or distortion of braced frames.
 - 3. Maintain bracing until structural elements are supported by other bracing or until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

1.15 REMOVAL AND REPAIRS

- A. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and bear soil and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils and damaging structures, pavements, facilities and utilities.
 - 1. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches below overlying construction and abandon remainder.

Issue for Bid

2. Repair or replace, as approved by architect, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.

END OF SECTION 315000

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This work shall consist of installing a certified plant-mixed HMA Binder or Wearing course on a prepared surface within reasonably close conformity to the lines, grades and limits shown on the construction documents. The base course shall be constructed to the minimum compacted depth and density and to the distances below the finished grade, as indicated in the construction documents.

1.2 DESIGN STANDARDS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, the following design standards shall be used:
 - 1. Mix Design – 19mm. - Binder
9.5mm - Wearing
 - 2. Equivalent Single Axle Load – 3.0 to 10.0 million.
 - 3. Performance Grade – PG 64-22.
 - 4. Mat Thickness – 50mm Binder Course
40mm Wearing Course
 - 5. Skid Resistance Level (SRL) – Level H
- B. All standards shall be in accordance with PennDOT Publication 408, latest edition, Sections 309 and 409.

1.3 MIXTURE ACCEPTANCE

- A. For Township Roads, Certification Acceptance level will be used. Criteria for acceptance shall be as specified in PennDOT Publication 408, Section 409.2(f).
- B. Provide PennDOT Form CS-4171 from a plant approved in Bulletin 15. Attach all QC test results to the form. Certify mixture as specified in Section 106.03 and the requirements of Section 409.
- C. Provide all forms and supporting certifications to the Engineer a minimum of 10-days prior to the commencement of work.
- D. For State Highways, mixture acceptance may be by other methods, as specified in PennDOT Publication 408, Section 409. It is incumbent upon the contractor to contact the PennDOT representative to determine which criteria for acceptance will be used for the specific project.

1.4 MATERIAL

- B. All material shall be in accordance with Section 409.2 of PennDOT Publication 408, latest edition.

1.5 EQUIPMENT

A. Hauling Equipment.

1. Haul the mixtures in tightly sealed vehicles that do not contain petroleum oils, solvents, or other materials that adversely affect the mix.
2. Provide covers of sufficient size and quality to protect the entire load under all conditions.
3. Maintain the proper and uniform temperature specified in Section 409.3(h)1 of PennDOT Publication 408, latest edition.
4. Provide insulation on all sides of the truck body, a double-walled body, or a heated body when the air temperature is below 50°F.

B. Bituminous Pavers

1. Use self-contained, power-propelled units with activated screeds or activated strike-off assemblies and with automatic screed controls capable of producing a finished surface of the specified evenness and texture.
2. Provide heated units capable of spreading and finishing the mixture to the widths and depths indicated.
3. Provide units capable of being operated at forward speeds consistent with the satisfactory laying of the mixture and equipped with receiving hoppers having sufficient capacity for uniform spreading and equipped with distribution systems that place the mixture uniformly in front of the screeds.
4. Do not use any equipment that tears, shoves, or gouges the mixture or that causes tracks, indented areas, flushing segregation or other permanent blemishes. Do not use blade graders or other earthmoving equipment.

C. Rollers

1. Use steel-wheel, pneumatic-tire or vibratory rollers as specified in Section 108.05(c)3 of PennDOT Publication 408, latest edition. Operate rollers according to manufacturer's recommendations.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Weather Limitations

1. Do not place base course when the air or prepared surface temperature is 40°F or lower.
2. If work is halted because of weather conditions, the Contractor may be permitted to place limited quantities of material that is en route to the

project provided the placement is approved by the Project Representative on site.

3. Should the conditions not permit the material to be placed, the Contractor shall have no recourse for payment of any unused material.

B. Preparation of Existing Surface.

1. Remove and dispose of all loose and foreign material including, dirt, dust, mud, excess joint and crack sealer and all other foreign material. Employ a power or portable truck broom for large areas.
2. Should excessive amounts of dirt and/or dust be embedded within the base course, the Engineer may order the surface to be blown off with compressed air to remove this material.
3. All surfaces to receive either binder or wearing course must be dry.
4. Before overlaying any surfaces, apply specified tack coat at a rate in accordance with Section 460 or as directed by the Engineer.
5. Paint all vertical surfaces of curbs, structures, gutter and pavements that will be in contact with bituminous mixtures with a uniform coating of bituminous material, Class E6 or E8.

C. Spreading and Finishing.

1. Unless otherwise directed, deliver, place and compact pawns, mixtures during daylight hours.
2. Ensure that mixtures are delivered and placed at the following laying temperatures. Ensure mixture does not contain lumps of cold material

TEMPERATURE OF MIXTURE

<u>CLASS OF MATERIAL</u>	<u>MIN (°F)</u>	<u>MAX (°F)</u>
PG 64-22	265	320

For other classes of material, refer to PennDOT Publication 408, Section 409.2 for temperature ranges.

3. Spread and strike off the mixture for the entire lane width or as much lane width as practical. Adjust screed assemblies to provide the required cross section and depth. After spreading, do not add any mixture to the mat that is segregated, below the minimum temperature, contains either a deficiency or excess of asphalt, or is otherwise unsuitable.
4. In areas where mechanical spreaders cannot be used, place and screed the mixture with suitable hand tools. Do not use rakes.
5. Install the binder or wearing course to within 6 mm (1/4-inch) of final elevations. Remove and replace any irregularities more than 6 mm (1/4-inch).

D. Joints

1. Longitudinal.

- a. Plan joint locations to ensure that the joint in the top layer is at the approximate pavement centerline for two-lane roadways and within 300 mm (12-inches) of the lane lines for roadways with more than two lanes. Offset joints in a layer from the joint in the layer immediately below by approximately 150 mm (6-inches).
- b. If traffic or other causes distort the lane edge, restore it to its original shape using either a vertical or notched wedged joint per Section 409.3 of PennDOT Publication 408, latest edition.

2. Transverse.

- a. Construct joints perpendicular to the pavement centerline.
- b. Provide a true vertical surface and cross section throughout the entire joint. All joints within the wearing course shall be saw joints.
- c. Paint the joint face with a thin coating of bituminous material before placing fresh mixture against the joint face.

E. Compaction.

1. Compact the mixture to achieve the density acceptance requirements and to eliminate all roller marks.
2. Compact the mixture while it is in the proper condition. Adjust roller speed, amplitude, frequency pattern and roller size to eliminate displacement, shoving, cracking and aggregate breakage. Satisfactorily correct all displacement.
3. Maintain wheels of the steel-wheel rollers moist and clean to prevent the mixture from adhering to the wheels.
4. For areas inaccessible to rollers, compact with mechanical vibrating hand tampers.

F. Mat Density Acceptance.

1. Density acceptance level will be either by Non-Movement or Optimum – Rolling Pattern as outlined in PennDOT Publication 408, Section 409.3.
2. Density limits shall comply with Table E of Section 409.3, Publication 408, latest edition.

G. Field Technician.

1. Provide a certified HMA field technician in accordance with the qualifications outlined in Publication 351 to control placement of the bituminous mixtures. The certified HMA field technician must be onsite and carry a valid certification card during placement of all HMA mixtures.

Issue for Bid

H. Protection of Courses.

1. Do not allow vehicular traffic or loading on newly compacted courses until adequate stability and adhesion is obtained and the material has cooled to 140°F or less.

I. Surface Tolerance.

1. Surface tolerance shall be as defined by Section 409.3(L). The pavement will be considered defective if irregularities are more than 3/16-inch over a 10-foot length.

J. Defective Work.

1. Remove and replace all work determined to be defective by the Engineer. Defective work will be as defined in PennDOT Publication 408, latest edition, Sections 105, 309 and 409.
2. Defective work will not be measured for payment until it is satisfactorily corrected.

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:

1. Concrete sidewalks and pads.
2. Concrete curbs and edgings.
3. Concrete foundations.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
2. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 1. Review methods and procedures related to concrete paving, including but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Concrete mixture design.
 - b. Quality control of concrete materials and concrete paving construction practices.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product, ingredient, or admixture requiring color selection.
- C. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified ready-mix concrete manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Admixtures.
 - 4. Curing compounds.
 - 5. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
 - 6. Joint fillers.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
 - 1. Aggregates
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities"
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete paving mixtures.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
- B. Cold-Weather Concrete Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
 - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
- C. Hot-Weather Concrete Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
 - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap, so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
 - 3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.

Issue for Bid

- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60; deformed.
- B. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars, ASTM A 615, Grade 60, Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I. Supplement with the following:
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
 - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.

Issue for Bid

- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber. (1/2" max.) pre-molded expansion joint material with temporary void cap (for joint sealant).
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to requirements.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
 - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4,000 psi.
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 3 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
 - 1. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- E. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than Portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
 - 1. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch require correction.
- C. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete pavement:
 - 1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
 - 2. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

- D. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site.
- F. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- I. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.
 - 1. Remove and replace concrete that has been placed for more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer, or use bonding agent if approved by Architect.
- J. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- K. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

- L. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
 - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.
- M. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 - 1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 DETECTABLE WARNING INSTALLATION

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of tiles specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing." Screed surface of concrete where tiles are to be installed to elevation, so that edges of installed tiles will be flush with surrounding concrete paving. Embed tiles in fresh concrete to comply with Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" immediately after screeding concrete surface.

3.9 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

Issue for Bid

- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moist Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.10 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot-long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
 - 5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
 - 6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
 - 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
 - 8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 - 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
 - 10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C172/C172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.

- a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.12 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Engineer, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 32 13 14 - CONCRETE CURBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Construct City of Philadelphia Type B concrete curb in accordance with City of Philadelphia, Department of Streets Drawing No. SC0102, depressed, curved, or straight, at locations indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. PennDOT Specifications Publication 408 (latest revision).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: 4000 psi in accordance with Section 704, PennDOT 408.
- B. Expansion Joint Material: Section 705.1, PennDOT 408.
- C. Curing Compound: Section 711.2(a), PennDOT 408.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROCEDURE

- A. Section 630.3, PennDOT 408, with the following additions:
 - 1. Concrete may be placed in the forms in one lift provided there are sufficient personnel and equipment on the project to thoroughly consolidate the concrete.
 - 2. Curing compound shall be applied to the top of the curb before any marked dehydration of the concrete surface occurs. The forms shall be removed within 24 hours and all exposed concrete surfaces cured.
 - 3. When directed, the Contractor shall provide additional protection by covering the curb with salt hay at his expense.

END OF SECTION 321314

SECTION 321315 CONCRETE SIDEWALK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The work required under this section consists of furnishing all labor, materials, equipment, services and related items necessary to complete concrete sidewalk paving, and all related work. Complete, as indicated on the drawings or specified herein.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 321314 – Concrete Curbing

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards
 - 1. Comply with all applicable portions of the Pennsylvania Department of Transportation (PENNDOT) Standard Specifications.
 - 2. Comply with applicable standards of the American Concrete Institute.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Furnish samples, manufacturer's product data, test reports, and materials' certifications as required.

1.5 JOB CONDITIONS

Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Materials
 - Shall meet the requirements specified in Concrete Work in Section 033000.
- B. Form Materials
 - Shall meet the requirements specified in Concrete Work in Section 033000.
- C. Expansion Joints
 - Shall meet the requirements specified in Concrete Work and Sealants & Caulking in Section 033000.

D. Curing

Membrane forming curing and sealing compound or moist curing methods. Refer to Concrete Work in Section 033000.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. On Crushed Stone Subbase

1. Remove loose material from compacted Crushed Stone Subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.
2. Proof-roll prepared Crushed Stone Subbase surface to check for unstable areas and need for additional compaction. Do not begin paving work until such conditions have been corrected and are ready to receive paving.
3. All subgrades under paving and other work of this section must be brought to maximum density before placement of any paving work or materials. Do not place any paving materials until all subgrades over which they are to be installed have been brought to satisfactory density.

3.2 FORM CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set forms to required grades and lines, rapidly braced and secured. Install sufficient quantity of forms to allow continuous progress of work and so that forms can remain in place at least twenty-four (24) hours after concrete placement.
- B. Check completed formwork for grade and alignment to the following tolerances:
 1. Top of forms not more than 1/8" in ten (10') feet.
 2. Vertical face on longitudinal axis, not more than 1/4" in ten (10') feet.
- C. Clean forms after each use, and coat with form release agent as often as required to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.3 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. General

Comply with applicable requirements of Division 03 Sections for mixing and placing concrete.

- B. Do not place concrete until forms have been checked for line and grade. Moisten subbase course if required to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- C. Place concrete using methods which prevent segregation of mix.

- D. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation.
- E. Use bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints, as far as possible. If interrupted for more than one-half (1/2) hour, place a construction joint.

3.4 JOINTS

A. General

Construct expansion, weakened-plane (contraction), and construction joints true-to-line with face perpendicular to surface of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to the centerline, unless otherwise indicated. When joining existing structures, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Weakened-Plane (Contraction) Joints

Provide weakened-plane (contraction) joints, sectioning concrete into areas as shown on drawings. Construct weakened-plane joints for a depth as shown on the drawings.

1. Tooled Joints: Form weakened-plane joints in fresh concrete by grooving top portion with a recommended cutting tool and finish edges with a jointer.

C. Construction Joints

Place construction joints at end of placements and at locations where placement operations are stopped for a period of more than one-half (1/2) hour, except when such placements terminate at expansion joints. Construct joints as shown or, if not shown, use standard metal keyway-section forms.

D. Expansion Joints

1. Provide expansion joints at locations shown on the drawings including joints abutting concrete curbs, inlets, structures, and other fixed objects, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Place expansion joints at thirty (30') feet o.c. maximum in sidewalk areas.

3.5 CONCRETE FINISHING

Issue for Bid

- A. After striking-off and consolidating concrete, smooth surface by screeding and floating. Use hand methods only where mechanical floating is not possible. Adjust floating to compact surface and produce uniform texture.
- B. After floating, test surface for trueness with a ten (10') foot straightedge. Distribute concrete as required to relieve surface irregularities, and refloat repaired areas to provide a continuous smooth finish.
- C. After completion of floating and troweling when excess moisture or surface sheen has disappeared, complete surface finishing, with a light broom finish as shown on the drawings.
- D. Do not remove forms for twenty-four (24) hours after concrete has been placed. After form removal, clean ends of joints and point-up any minor honeycombed areas. Remove and replace areas or sections with major defects, as directed by the Construction Manager.

3.6 CURING

- A. Protect and cure finished concrete paving, complying with applicable requirements of Division 03 Sections. Use membrane-forming curing and sealing compound or approved moist curing methods.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTIONS

- A. Repair and replace broken or defective concrete, as directed by the Construction Manager, and where shown on the drawings.
- B. Protect concrete from damage until acceptance of work. Exclude traffic from sidewalk for at least fourteen (14) days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- C. Sweep concrete pavement and wash free of stains, discoloration, dirt and other foreign material just prior to final inspection.

TECHNICAL SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS
PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE SIDEWALK PAVING

Issue for Bid

ITEM	SUBMITTAL	CATEGORY		
		A	I	S
1	Manufacturer's product data	●		
2	Manufacturer's test reports	●		
3	Materials	●		
4	Certificates		●	

A = For Approval **I** = For Information **S** = Sample

END OF SECTION 321315

SECTION 321373 PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

PART1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. None.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint-sealant samples in 1/2-inch wide joints formed between two 6-inch long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and experienced in installation of joint sealants.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.
- B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
2. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Owner's Representative from manufacturer's full range. Color selected may vary to match different selected pavements, i.e. concrete, exposed aggregate concrete or bluestone paving.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Provide a premium-grade, high-performance, moisture-cured, 1-component, polyurethane-based, non-sag elastomeric sealant meeting federal specification TT-S-00230C, Type II, Class A. Meets ASTM C-920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use T, NT, O, M, G, I; Canadian standard CAN/CGSB 19.13-M87
1. Provide one of the following Available Products, or an Owners Representatives accepted equal:
 - a. Sika Corp. Sikaflex 1A
 - b. Sonneborn Sonolastic SL1
 2. Color to be selected by Owners Representatives from samples provided by the Contractor.

2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are non-staining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for

Issue for Bid

applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

2.5 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Install joint sealants to all work prior to the area being made available for public use to prevent smearing or tracking of un-cured sealants.
- C. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- D. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.

Issue for Bid

2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
 3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- G. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 321373

SECTION 321723
PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Painted markings applied to asphalt paving.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Kingsessing Recreation Center, 4901 Kingsessing Avenue, Philadelphia, PA 19143.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to marking asphalt paving including, but not limited to:
 - a. Pavement aging period before application of pavements markings.
 - b. Review requirements for protecting pavement markings, including restriction of traffic during installation period.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, and dimensions to adjacent work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; on rigid backing, 8 inches square.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer regularly engaged, for past five (5) years, in manufacture of asphalt surface color coating system.
- B. Applicator's Qualifications:
1. Applicator regularly engaged, for past three (3) years, in application of surface color coating systems.
 2. Employ persons trained for application of surface color coating systems.
 3. Applicator must be authorized installer of the surfacing brand used.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 50 deg F during application or within 24 hours after application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. SportMaster Sport Surfaces
PO Box 2277
Sandusky, OH 44870
P: 800-395-7325
www.sportmaster.net

2.2 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, basis of design product shall be:
1. Basis of Design for Crack Sealant: SportMaster "Crack Magic".
 - a. 100% acrylic emulsion elastomeric crack sealant.
 - b. Seals cracks up to 1/2" wide in asphalt pavement.
 2. Basis of Design for Crack Filler: SportMaster "Acrylic Crack Patch".
 - a. 100% acrylic emulsion trowel-grade crack filler.
 - b. Fills cracks in asphalt pavement up to 1 inch wide.
 3. Basis of Design Product for Tennis Court Line and Wall-Ball Court Line Markings Primer: SportMaster "Stripe-Rite".
 - a. 100% acrylic emulsion primer, clear drying.
 - b. Primes line markings and prevents bleed-under for sharp lines.
 4. Basis of Design Product for Tennis Court Line and Wall-Ball Court Line Paint: SportMaster "Textured Line Paint".
 - a. Pigmented, 100% acrylic emulsion line paint.
 - b. Line marking on asphalt pavement.
 - c. Color: White.

5. Basis of Design Product for Tennis Court and Wall-Ball Court Painting:
 - a. Filler Course: SportMaster "Acrylic Resurfacer"
 - 1) 100% acrylic emulsion resurfacer.
 - 2) Mix on site with silica sand.
 - 3) Apply to asphalt surfaces in preparation of color coating system.
 - b. Color Coating: SportMaster "ColorPlus System"
 - 1) 100% acrylic emulsion coating.
 - 2) Mix on site with silica sand and water
 - a) Color 1: Green

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement-marking substrate is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Landscape Architect.
- B. Protect adjacent surfaces and landscaping from contact with court surface color system.
- C. Prepare surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Cure new asphalt a minimum of 30 days before application.
- E. Remove dirt, dust, debris, oil, grease, vegetation, loose materials, and other surface contaminants that could adversely affect application of color coating system.
- F. Level depressions 1/8" and deeper with patch binder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Apply 2 coats of filler course as required by surface roughness and porosity to provide smooth underlayment for application of color coating.
- H. Ensure surface repairs are flush and smooth on adjoining surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply asphalt surface color coating system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the Drawings.

3.4 LINE MARKINGS

- A. Lay out court line markings in accordance with Official High School rules for basketball.
- B. Apply line markings primer, after masking tape has been laid, to seal voids between masking tape and court surface to prevent bleed-under when line paint is applied.
- C. Apply a minimum of 1 coat of line paint in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Allow a minimum of 24 hours curing time before opening courts for play.
- B. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 321723

SECTION 321813 - SYNTHETIC TURF

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, tools and equipment necessary to install all synthetic turf as indicated on the plans and as specified herein and other related specifications. The installation of all new materials shall be performed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and in accordance with all approved shop drawings.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving"
 - 2. Division 33 Section "Storm Drainage"

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. FM P7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition
- B. ASTM – American Society for Testing and Materials.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall be provided to Architect, Engineer, and Owner for approval.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Field layout including all line packages, logos, and lettering.
 - 2. Roll/ Seaming Marking Plan
 - 3. Show installation methods and construction indicating field-verified conditions, clearances, measurements, terminations, drainage including any details of construction that deviate from the plans and specifications.
 - 4. Football turf system (2.25" turf system)
 - 5. Subdrainage system layout and details.
 - 6. Plan drawing showing location of permeability testing of aggregate base.
- C. Product Data:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's catalog cuts, material safety data sheets (MSDS), brochures, specifications; preparation and installation instructions and recommendations; storage, handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 2. Submit fiber manufacturer's name, type of fiber and composition of fiber.
 - 3. Submit data in sufficient detail to indicate compliance with the contract documents.
 - 4. Submit manufacturer's instructions for installation.

Issue for Bid

5. Submit manufacturer's instructions for maintenance for the proper care and preventative maintenance of the synthetic turf system, including painting and markings.
 6. Submit product data sheets for the following:
 - a) Permeable Liner
 - b) Subdrain System and all standard fittings
 - c) Collector Drain.
 - d) Permeable Stone Aggregate Base Course
- D. Samples:
1. Submit one 12x12 inch (minimum) loose carpet sample without infill. Loose sample should demonstrate seaming and include an inlaid line.
 2. Submit a sample of sand infill and a sample of selected infill and a sample of the final sand/selected infill mixture, including ratio by volume and by weight equivalent per square foot and method of installation. Sample of each shall represent the exact quantity per square foot. Particle size gradation charts must also be included.
 3. Underlayment: One 12x12 inch (minimum) piece of permeable resilient polypropylene drainage layer.
- E. Product Certification:
1. Submit manufacturer's certification that products and materials comply with requirements of the specifications.
 2. Submit test results indicating compliance with Reference Standards.
 3. Submit certificates certifying that all materials used in the permeable aggregate base course work are as specified; submit all sieve gradations etc.
- F. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of seams, drains and other pertinent information in accordance with Division 1 Specifications Series, General Requirements.
- G. List of existing installations: Submit list including respective owner's representative and telephone number.
- H. Warranties: Per section 1.12, Submit warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with approved manufacturer.
- I. Submit a written "Certification of Acceptance of the Base Construction" from the manufacturer of the infill turf system prior to installation of the synthetic turf system.
- J. Testing Certification: Submit certified copies of independent (third-party) laboratory reports on ASTM testing:
1. Pile Height, Face Weight & Total Fabric Weight, ASTM D5848.
 2. Primary & Secondary Backing Weights, ASTM D5848.
 3. Tuft Bind, ASTM D1335.
 4. Grab Tear Strength, ASTM D1682 or D5034.
 5. Shock Attenuation, ASTM F1936

6. Water Permeability, ASTM D4491
7. Lead Content, ASTM F2765

K. Prior to Final Acceptance, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner:

1. Three (3) copies of Maintenance Manuals, which will include all necessary instructions for the proper care and preventive maintenance of the turf system, including painting and markings.
2. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of seams, drains or other pertinent information.
3. Warranty: Submit Manufacturer Warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with Manufacturer and Insurance Carrier. Submit information confirming that 3rd Party Insurance Policy, non-cancelable and pre-paid, is in effect covering this installation, and underwritten by a Best "A++" Rated Insurance Carrier. Insurance carrier must confirm that the policy is in force and premiums paid. (See Section 1.12)

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section. The Turf Contractor and/or the Turf Manufacturer:

1. Must be experienced in the manufacture and installation of this type of tall pile synthetic infill turf systems as outlined below:
 - a) A minimum of twenty-five (25) multi-purpose fields installed of 65,000 square feet or more in the United States, using the specified fiber.
2. Approved turf manufacturer must be one of the following, or equal approved by the Philadelphia Dept. of Parks and Recreation.
 - a) Sprinturf www.sprinturf.com
 - b) A-Turf www.aturf.com
 - c) AstroTurf www.astroturf.com
 - d) Shaw Sports Turf www.shawsportsturf.com
 - e) Field Turf www.fieldturf.com

B. Turf Contractor/ Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section.

1. The Synthetic Turf Contractor shall have experience of twenty-five (25) acceptable installations (minimum 65,000 sq.ft.) of fields that are at least eight years old. Submit a list of all applicable installations with the bid, including dates of install, owner contact info and phone numbers with the bid.
2. The designated Supervisory Personnel on the project must be certified, in writing by the Turf Manufacturer, as competent in the installation of this material, including sewing seams and proper installation of the infill mixture with a minimum of 5 years of experience in turf installations.

3. Installer shall be certified by the manufacturer and licensed.
 4. The Manufacturer shall have a representative visit the site to certify, in writing, the installation and Warranty compliance.
- C. Prior to the beginning of installation of synthetic turf, the installer shall inspect the sub-base. The installer will accept the sub-base in writing when the base contractor provides test results for compaction, planarity and permeability that are in compliance with the synthetic turf manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at project site at time to be determined by Architect. Review methods and procedures related to installation including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Inspect and discuss existing conditions and preparatory work performed under other contracts.
 2. In addition to the Contractor and the installer, arrange for the attendance of installers affected by the Work, The Owner's representative, and the Architect.
- E. The Turf Contractor shall provide the necessary testing data to the owner that the finished field meets the required initial shock attenuation, as per ASTM F1936.
1. Shall provide third party certification confirming minimum requirement of 9 lbs. tuft bind.
- F. The Owner reserves the right to reject and/ or refuse acceptance of any or all aspects of the synthetic turf installation if it fails to meet the requirements of this specification section.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Deliver products to project site in wrapped condition.
- B. Store materials/ products in a safe and secure place, under cover and elevated above grade.
- C. Deliver and store components with labels intact and legible.
- D. Protect from damage during delivery, storage, handling and installation. Protect from damage by other trades.
- E. Inspect all delivered materials and products to ensure they are undamaged and in good condition.
- F. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.6 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. The contractor shall review and accept existing conditions prior to bidding. The contractor shall again review and accept existing conditions prior to beginning the installation.

Issue for Bid

- B. The contractor shall protect all existing conditions that are not part of the scope of work and repair any damage to existing conditions that occurs during this scope of work.

1.7 SUBDRAINAGE

- A. Provide subdrainage system to collect drain-through stormwater and conduct it to dispersal area(s) or manholes as indicated on the drawings

1.8 SUBGRADE VERIFICATION

- A. Prior to any permeable aggregate base course construction, check the subgrade for accuracy, uniform bearing strength and crown (slope) toward the subdrainage system as required on the drawings. Verify that all subdrains, utilities, etc. have been properly installed and shall fill and tamp any traces of utility trenches. Maintain all subgrades in a satisfactory condition until superimposed construction is placed. Do not place base on a frozen or muddy subgrade.

3.1 1.9 GRADE CONTROL

- A. Establish and maintain the required lines and grades. Provide crown or cross slope as indicated. Adjust the tops of utility/communication structures to be flush with proposed finish turf grades or as appropriate.
- B. Subgrade for aggregate base must be established by dual plane laser grading equipment; coordinate with EARTH MOVING section.

3.2 1.10 BASE COURSE THICKNESS

- A. Provide the thickness of the stone aggregate course as indicated on the drawings. The thickness indicated is the minimum at any point.

1.11 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate the Work with installation of work of related trades as the Work proceeds.
- B. Sequence the Work in order to prevent deterioration of installed system.

1.12 WARRANTIES

- A. The Contractor shall provide a warranty to the Owner that covers defects in materials and workmanship of the turf for a minimum period of eight (8) years from the date of substantial completion. The turf manufacturer must verify that their representative has inspected the installation and that the work conforms to the manufacturer's requirements. The manufacturer's warranty shall include general wear and damage caused from UV degradation. The warranty shall specifically exclude vandalism, and acts of nature beyond the control of the Owner or the manufacturer. The warranty shall be fully third party insured; pre-paid for the entire 8 year term and be non-prorated. The Contractor shall provide a warranty to the Owner that covers defects in the installation workmanship, and further warrant that the installation was done in accordance with both the manufacturer's recommendations and any written

directives of the manufacturer's representative. Prior to final payment for the synthetic turf, the Contractor shall submit to owner notification in writing that the field is officially added to the annual policy coverage, guaranteeing the warranty to the Owner. A rated carrier and must reflect the following values:

1. Must provide full coverage for eight (8) years from the date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Must warrant materials and workmanship, including but not limited to, gravel base stability, drainage rates, seaming materials and adhesives.
 3. No maximum per claim coverage amount.
 4. Minimum of twenty-five-million dollar (\$25,000,000) annual aggregate, and a per incident limit of no less than \$1 million per claim. The third party insurer must have an AM Best rating of A++ or better.
 5. Must warrant that the finished and accepted playing field elevation shall not vary by more than 0.1' due to instability of the gravel foundation (unrelated to existing, pre- developed subgrade soil conditions) or drainage system and that the field drainage rates will remain at or above design capacity for the life of the warranty.
 6. Must cover full 100% replacement value of total square footage installed, minimum of \$7.00 per sq. ft. (in case of complete product failure, which will include removal and disposal of the existing surface) The warranty shall include all necessary materials, labor, transportation costs, dumping fees, etc to complete any repairs under such warranty.
 7. Must have a provision to either make a cash refund or repair or replace such portions of the installed materials that are no longer serviceable to maintain a serviceable and playable surface.
 8. Must be a warranty from a single source covering workmanship and all self-manufactured or procured materials of the turf, turf system, base, and drainage.
 9. Warrant that the yarn used to make the grass-like tufts will maintain its UV stability and tensile strength such that the strength of the fiber when measured in accordance with ASTM D-2256 will not decrease by more than 50% during the warranty period due to breakdown of UV stability.
 10. Policies that include self insurance or self retention clauses shall not be considered.
 11. Sample policy must be provided at time of bid to prove that policy is in force. A letter from an agent or a sample Certificate of Insurance will not be acceptable.
- B. The warranty coverage shall not place limits on the amount of the field's usage.
- C. The synthetic turf system must maintain a G-max of less than 120 for the life of the Warranty as per ASTM F1936. The manufacturer's warranty shall include annual G-Max Testing.
- D. Permeable Resilient Polypropylene Drainage Base
1. Sports field underlayment panels shall be warranted by the manufacturer against warping, cracking, shattering, splitting or deteriorating. They shall not displace turf, deform, buckle from heat or moisture, or form gaps in cold or dry conditions that can be seen through the turf, under normal and proper use. They shall be free

from defects in material and workmanship for a period of twenty (20) years after date of installation.

2. The Panels shall not compress by more than ten percent (10%) during the Warranty Period unless they are subjected to stress loads in excess of those that ordinarily occur during use for athletic performance [35 pounds per square inch].

1.13 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Contractor shall train the Owner's facility maintenance staff in the use of the turf manufacturer's recommended maintenance equipment.
- B. Manufacturer must provide maintenance guidelines and a maintenance video to the facility maintenance staff.

1.14 TESTING

- A. Turf Manufacturer shall be responsible to provide independent laboratory G-max testing (ASTM 355, 1936 method) at substantial completion, to verify that the shock attenuation properties of the field meet the requirements set forth in this specification.
 1. The field must maintain an ASTM F1936 G-max of less than 120 for the life of the Warranty.
 2. In addition to testing at time of completion, the Turf Manufacturer shall be responsible for annual Gmax testing as described above at its own cost. If at anytime the G-max ranges reach unacceptable levels, it is the responsibility of the Turf Manufacturer (or its 3rd party warranty) to bring the field back into the required ranges at no cost to the Owner.
- B. Turf Manufacturer shall be responsible to provide independent laboratory Lead Content testing prior to substantial completion and final acceptance by Owner.
 1. Two representative samples of fiber(s) and locations on the field shall be tested by the test methods below. The total lead content measured shall be less than 300 mg/ kg (ppm). Sample locations shall be chosen by the Owner.
 - a. The testing shall be conducted by an independent environmental laboratory accredited for heavy metal testing in solid and hazardous waste.
 - b. Prepare samples as outlined in EPA Method 3052 with the temperature modified from 180 +/- 5 deg C to 210 +/- 10 deg C.
 - c. Analyze prepared samples for lead using inductively coupled plasma- atomic emission spectrometry (AAS) as outlined in Test Method E 1613.
 - d. Report total lead content as mg/kg (ppm).
- C. Turf Manufacturer shall be responsible to provide independent drainage testing of installed field gravel base and turf carpet with infill prior to substantial completion and final acceptance by Owner. The combined tests shall prove installed artificial turf system's drainage capability shall allow water flow through the system at a rate of not less than 10 inches per hour.

1. ASTM test WK22081- Test Methods for Vertical Permeability of Synthetic Turf Sports Field Base Stone and System by Nonconfined Area Flood Test Method. This test does not require special equipment and can be done in the field to test the vertical permeability before the synthetic turf is installed and after installation of the base is complete. This method does not require the application of a head and more accurately mimics rainwater conditions..
2. ASTM F1551 -Water Permeability of Synthetic Turf Systems and Permeable Bases. Test will provide permeability of synthetic turf carpet with infill.
3. Provide written report of permeability of base, and carpet with infill over base. Report shall include inches per hour rate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. The component materials of the synthetic turf system consist of:

1. A carpet made of dual filament polyethylene fibers (spinneret, extruded) tufted into a backing. All backing must meet the drainage requirements below.
2. All proposed synthetic turf systems shall be a 50/50 blend of arched monofilament yarn, having a 230 to 300 micron thickness and a nominal filament width of 1.5mm inter-tufted with a 100 micron parallel fibrillated slit film yarn. Turf carpet shall have a minimum stitch (tufting) gauge of 1/4" and a maximum stitch gauge of 1/2". All fibers shall be polyethylene or co-polymer fiber tufted into a permeable backing system, and coated with a secondary backing of high-grade polyurethane.
3. All components and their installation method shall be designed and manufactured for use on outdoor athletic fields. The materials as hereinafter specified should be able to withstand full climatic exposure in all climates, be resistant to insect infestation, rot, fungus, mildew, ultraviolet light and heat degradation, and shall have the basic characteristics of flow-through drainage, allowing free movement of surface runoff through the synthetic turf fabric where such water may flow to the existing base and into the field drainage system.
4. The finished playing surface shall appear as mowed grass with no irregularities and shall afford excellent traction for conventional athletic shoes of all types. The finished surface shall resist abrasion and cutting from normal use. The pitcher's mound, batter's boxes, and basepaths shall include removable turf sections to allow for replacement and repair of worn or damaged sections.
5. Glue, thread, paint, seaming fabric and other materials may be used to install and mark the artificial turf. All adhesives used in bonding the system together shall be resistant to moisture, bacterial and fungus attacks, and resistant to ultraviolet rays at any location upon installation.
6. Field shall consist of a line package with the following four (4) sports:
 - a. Football
 - b. Soccer

- c. Baseball
- d. Softball

B. The installed artificial grass fabric system shall have the following specified properties:

<u>Standard</u>	<u>Property</u>	<u>Specification</u>
ASTM D1577	Fiber Denier	>10000 nominal
ASTM D3218	Yarn Thickness	>100 microns (slit); >230 microns (mono)
ASTM D2256	Yarn Breaking Strength	>8 lbs. (slit); >25lbs (mono)
ASTM D5793	Stitch Gauge	min. 1/4" - max 1/2"
ASTM D418/D5848	Pile Height	2" min.
ASTM D5848	Pile Weight	min. 44 oz. / square
yard ASTM D5848	Primary Backing	min. 6 oz. / square yard
ASTM D5848	Secondary Backing	min. 20 oz. / square
yard ASTM D5848	Total Weight	min. 70 oz. / square
yard ASTM D1335	Tuft Bind (without infill)	min. 9 lbs.
ASTM D1682/D5034	Grab Tear (width)	200 lbs. force
ASTM D1682/D5034	Grab Tear (length)	200 lbs. force
ASTM F1015	Relative Abrasiveness Index	<25
ASTM D4491	Carpet Permeability	>30 inches / hour
ASTM F355/F1936	Impact Attenuation, Gmax	90 min. – 120 max. at installation; 90 min. – 120 max. over field life (including pad beneath)

C. The Carpet shall consist of fibers tufted into a primary backing with a secondary coating.

1. Synthetic turf shall be loose-laid across the field, stretched, and attached to the perimeter edge detail. Synthetic turf shall be of sufficient length to permit full cross-field installation. No head or cross seams will be allowed except as needed for inlaid fabric striping or to accommodate programmed cut-outs.
2. All seams shall be flat, tight, and permanent with no separation or fraying. Edges of all panels must be cut and discarded prior to being joined together. Inlaid markings shall be adhered to seaming tape with a high strength polyurethane adhesive applied per the Synthetic Turf Manufacturer's standard procedures for outdoor applications. All main fabric seams shall be transverse to the field direction (i.e. run perpendicularly across the field).
3. Porous Backing:
 - a. Primary backing shall be double-layered polypropylene fabric treated with UV inhibitors.
 - b. The secondary backing shall consist of an application of porous, heat-activated urethane to permanently lock the fiber tufts in place.
4. Perforated Backing:
 - a. The primary backing shall consist of two layers of woven fabric and one layer of non-woven fabric.
 - b. The secondary backing of high-grade polyurethane shall be applied to the primary backing at a minimum of 20 oz./yd. Secondary

backing adds resistance to water degradation and strengthens grip on fibers.

- c. The entire backing shall be coated with holes perforated throughout the backing at a minimum 3” interval to allow for drainage. Partially coated materials shall not be acceptable.
- d. Hole spacing must allow for water drainage of a minimum of 30” an hour. The 30” per hour must account for infill blockage. Turf manufacturer must submit product data for hole spacing and hole size for rate of permeability.

D. The Infill materials shall be as approved by the Manufacturer and as per the following specifications: The Infill shall consist of a resilient granular system, comprised of selected/graded dust-free silica sand or mineral aggregate and rubber granules. The infill may be a homogeneous mixture of sand and rubber or installed as a layered system per the manufacturer. The silica sand component of the infill shall represent 50% of the total infill, by weight. Total infill amount shall be approx. 10.0 lbs. per square foot but not be less than 9.0 lbs. per square foot (depending on manufacturer stitch gauge) to achieve a +/- 2.00 inch infill depth.

- 1. Provide eco-friendly infill in lieu of rubber/sand. This shall include any modifications necessary to the turf assembly necessary to accommodate the alternative infill material, such as shock pad, underlayment or other components. Specific infill shall be as follows, or approved equal:
 - a. BrockFILL organic infill material as manufactured by Brock
- 2. The particles shall resist abrasion in high traffic and excessive wear applications and provide stability to artificial sports turf applications.
- 3. The particles shall be structurally pure and consistently uniform in size distribution for predictable performance.

E. Permeable Polypropylene Drainage Base:

- 1. Athletic field synthetic underlayment, a molded polypropylene base composite material designed specifically for use with synthetic infill turf.
- 2. Underlayment shall ensure safety of the playing surface (impact attenuation/shoe traction) and high capacity subsurface drainage of the installed playing field.
- 3. Shall be composed of expanded Polypropylene edge interlocking panels with molded Impact-absorbing pistons and bi-directional channel drainage system
- 4. Description: The specified material must have both impact absorption and drainage properties that meet the following performance requirements.

Standard	Property	Specification
FIFA 1 and 2 Star		Meets requirements with approved synthetic infilled turf

Issue for Bid

	Density	3.63 lbs. / cubic ft. (58.2 grams / liter)
EN12616	Vertical drainage	200" per hour
	Surface contact	50% minimum with synthetic turf backing
ISO 8295	Friction coefficient	movement of artificial turf over 50mm distance 8.92N maximum force
ASTM D4716	Lateral drainage	0.00583 m ² /sec @ 0.5% slope
ISO 4897	Thermal stability	not to exceed 3mm per 30 degree C change
ISO 8301, EN 12664/7	Thermal resistance (R Value)	minimum 0.6
ISO 1798	Tensile strength	min 700 Kpa or 110 psi
ASTM F355	G-Max; system test under infill turf	120G maximum average
EN 14809	Shock Absorption	60-70%
EN14809	Vertical Deformation	<4mm
ISO 1856C	Compression set - 25% strain, 22hrs, 23°C after 24 hrs.	9% (0.083 ")
	Repeated impact compression resistance	7.45kg/cm ² or 106psi, repeated load, 10,000 cycles system test with infill turf; not to exceed 3%
ASTM G22-76/G21-96	Bacteria and Fungi resistance	Pass
ESSM 105d/1997	Environmental testing-ground water protection	Pass
ASTM F925	Chemical Resistance to the following: Gasoline, Brake Fluid, Chlorine, Underbody coating, Transmission Fluid, Motor Oil, Zinc Chloride, Tar and Oil Solvents, Windshield Washer Fluid, Kerosene, Ethylene and Propylene Glycols	no change to material

Issue For Bid

5. Material shall be 100% recyclable; recycling for energy not acceptable.
6. Material shall be manufactured in an ISO-9000 certified facility.

F. Aggregate Base Course

1. To guarantee structural stability it is important that both gradations meet the following criteria:

100% Fragmentation

$$D_{60}/D_{10} > 5$$

$$1 < D_{30}^2/D_{10}/D_{60} < 3$$

2. To guarantee separation between finishing stone and base stone, it is important that the gradations meet the following criteria:

$$D_{85 \text{ FINISHING COURSE}} / D_{15 \text{ BASE COURSE}} > 2$$

$$3 < D_{50 \text{ BASE COURSE}} / D_{50 \text{ FINISHING COURSE}} < 6$$

3. To guarantee proper drainage both stones should meet the following criteria when saturated and compacted to 95% Proctor:

Permeability > 10 in/hr (7x10⁻³ cm/sec)

Porosity > 25%

“Dx” is the size of the sieve (in mm) that lets pass x% of the stone. For example: D60 is the size of the sieve that lets 60% of the stone pass. These sizes, for calculation purposes, may be obtained by interpolation on a semi-log graph of the sieve analysis.

4. Aggregate Base shall be AASHTO #57 Stone to be used.

5. Leveling Layer (AKA D85 or Finish Stone):

- a. Product resulting from the artificial crushing of rocks, boulders or large cobblestones, substantially all faces of which have resulted from the crushing operation. Material shall consist of sound, tough, durable, angular stones, free from soft, thin, elongated, laminated, friable, micaceous or disintegrated pieces, limestone, marble, mud, dirt, organic matter, or other deleterious material. The presence of soft, thin, elongated, laminated, friable, micaceous or disintegrated pieces, feldspar, limestone, marble, mud, dirt, organic matter, or other deleterious material will be cause for rejection at Engineer’s discretion.
- b. Testing and evaluation of material by the testing laboratory shall evaluate material composition for the presents of feldspar or micaceous materials and note same on testing report. Material may be rejected due to the presence of feldspar or micaceous materials.
- c. Test for Resistance to Abrasion, ASTM C131. Materials shall show a loss on abrasion of not more than 20%. C. Soundness, ASTM C88. Coarse aggregate shall not have a loss of more than 15% at the end of five cycles.

6. Stone Gradation Specifications:

AVG %
PASSING

<u>Sieve</u> <u>s</u>	<u>#57 Base Layer</u>	<u>Leveling Layer</u> (AKA Finish Stone or D85 Stone)
1½" or 38mm	100	-
1" or 25mm	95 +/-5	-
¾" or 19mm	-	-
½" or 12.5mm	43 +/-17	100
3/8" or 9.5mm	-	85-100
¼" or 6.3mm		75-95
US #4 or 4.76mm	Max. 7	60-85
US #8 or 2.38mm	Max. 3	35-70
US #16 or 1.19mm	-	10-45
US #30 or .595mm	-	5-15
US # 40 or .420mm	-	0-10
US #100 or .149mm	-	0-5
US #200 or .074mm	-	0-2

2.2 PERFORATED UNDERDRAIN

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 4" horizontal perforated geotextile-wrapped underdrain system.

B. Product Requirements:

1. The underdrain system shall be of flexible, prefabricated, rounded, perforated composite product. Nominal Size: 4 inches high by approximately 3/8 inches thick. The underdrain system shall be made of a high-density polyethylene. The underdrain piping shall be constructed using corrugated pipes that define and provide the flow channels and structural integrity of the drain. The geotextile shall function only as a filter. The collection system pipes shall conform to the following physical property requirements:

Thickness, inches	ASTM D-1777	0.8
Flow Rate, gpm/ft	ASTM D-4716	30
Compressive Strength, psf	ASTM D-1621 (modified sand method)	6000

2. The collection system shall be wrapped with a non-woven geotextile and shall be a non-woven needle-punched construction and consist of long-chain polymeric fibers composed of polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide. The fibers shall be

Issue For Bid

oriented into a multi-directional stable network whereby they retain their positions relative with each other and allow the passage of water as specified. The fabric shall be free of any chemical treatment or coating, which reduces permeability and shall be inert to chemicals commonly found in soil. The geotextile shall conform to the following minimum average roll values.

Weight	ASTM D-3776	4.0
Tensile Strength	ASTM D-4632	120
Elongation %	ASTM D-4632	50
Puncture, lb	ASTM D-751	50
Mullen Burst, psi	ASTM D-3786	225
Trapezoidal Tear, lb	ASTM D-4533	42
Coefficient of Permeability	ASTM D-4491	.1 cm/sec
Flow Rate, gpm/ft ²	ASTM D-4491	95
Permittivity, 1/sec	ASTM D-4491	1.8
Apparent Opening Size	ASTM D-4751	70 Max. US Std Sieve Opening
Seam Strength, lb/ft	ASTM D-4595	100
Fungus	ASTM G-21	No growth
UV Resistance after 500 Hrs	ASTM-D4355	70% minimum

- The fittings used with the collection system shall be of a "snap together" design. In no case shall any product be joined without the use of the manufacturer's connector designed specifically for the purpose.

2.3 COLLECTOR DRAIN PIPE SYSTEM

A. The Contractor shall provide the Owner the following materials:

- AASHTO M 252, Type CP; smooth interior, corrugated exterior double-wall, for coupled joints.
- Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.
- Filter Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched Geotextile.

2.4 ADDITIONAL MATERIAL

A. The Contractor shall provide the Owner the following materials:

- Turf fabric two hundred square feet (200) to be used for emergency repairs of turf. Owner to set forth min size requirements during submittal phase.
- All usable remnants of new material shall become the property of the Owner and may satisfy the 200 square feet requirement.
- In-fill material as required to fill two hundred square feet (200). This material may not be used by the Contractor as top dressing as required to maintain depth and Gmax values during the warranty period.

2.5 FIELD MAINTENANCE EQUIPMENT

A. The following field maintenance equipment shall be provided to the Owner, in a fully operational and assembled state, with proper manuals, instruction to the Owner's maintenance staff prior to final acceptance of the project.

Issue For Bid

1. Four-wheel utility vehicle, equal to John Deere TX 4x2 or equivalent.
<https://www.deere.com/en/gator-utility-vehicles/traditional-gators/tx-4x2-utility-vehicle/>
2. Snow plow compatible with and for attachment to the Four-Wheel Utility Vehicle. Equal to the Meyer Utility Vehicle 6' Drive Pro Angling Snow Plow with Rec Hitch:
<https://www.meyerproducts.com/snow-plows/contractor-off-road-plows/utility-vehicle-snow-plow>
3. Field sweeper device for use on an infill synthetic turf system, to be attached to the Four-Wheel Utility Vehicle. Equal to the Greens Groomer LitterKat Synthetic Turf Sweeper:
<http://www.greensgroomer.com/LitterKat.html>
4. Field groomer device for use on an infill synthetic turf system, to be attached to the Four-Wheel Utility Vehicle. Equal to the Greens Groomer Integrated Synthetic Sports Turf Groomer, Model No. 926
GreensGroomer - Integrated Synthetic Sports Turf Groomer

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.3 GENERAL

- A. The installation shall be performed in full compliance with approved shop drawings.
- B. Only trained technicians, skilled in the installation of athletic caliber synthetic turf systems working under the direct supervision of the approved installer/manufacturer supervisors, shall undertake any cutting, sewing, gluing, shearing, topdressing or brushing operations.
- C. The designated Supervisory personnel on the project must be certified, in writing by the turf Manufacturer, as competent in the installation of this material, including sewing seams and proper installation of the Infill mixture.
- D. Manufacturer of Pad shall provide supervision for pad installation. Pad Manufacturer must approve pad installation prior to installation of synthetic turf carpet.

3.4 SUBGRADE

- A. Subgrade for installation of permeable aggregate base course and synthetic turf as required in the Earthwork section of these specifications and as set by the approved drawings.
- B. Proof roll subgrade in accordance with the Earthwork specifications and correct unacceptable subgrade as specified.
- C. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.
- D. Locate and mark existing utilities, underground structures, and aboveground obstructions before beginning installation and avoid disruption and damage of services

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PERMEABLE LINER

- A. Verify that surface elevations of finished subgrade conform to elevations shown on Drawings prior to underdrain system construction and that the subgrade surface is uniform and free of depressions, voids, and irregularities. Install permeable liner in accordance with liner manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - 1. Overlap joints a minimum of eight inches. Overlap all laps in direction the stone aggregate is to be spread.
 - 2. Securely bond joints in accordance with the liner manufacturer's recommendations. Joint bonding may be delayed until aggregate placement is completed to minimize joint stress.
 - 3. Place a suitable amount of ballast on liner to prevent movement by wind. Form ballast to not damage liner.
 - 4. Do not permit direct loading on the fabric by traffic.
 - 5. Repair punctured or torn fabric by overlapping additional fabric and jointing in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 6. Completely cover collector drain trench with liner.

3.6 PERMEABLE AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

- A. Moisture Content: Provide aggregate that contains 3.5% to 4.0% moisture content to ensure that fines do not migrate and to facilitate proper compaction. Ensure that aggregate leaving the source plant meets this requirement and is required to apply water to aggregate on site to attain and maintain this minimum moisture content.
- B. Placement: Prior to aggregate placement, remove any excess or contaminated backfill from the drainage trenches or subgrade. Provide a subgrade surface free of standing water prior to aggregate placement.
 - 1. Place the aggregate in a minimum two (2) lifts, each three (3") in compacted depth.
 - 2. Spread each layer uniformly with equipment that will not cause perceptible separation in gradation (segregation of the aggregates), preferably by a self-propelled paving machine.
 - 3. Should a separation of the materials or particles occur during any stage of the spreading or stockpiling, immediately remove and dispose of segregated material and correct or change handling procedures to prevent any further separation.
 - 4. Utilize a laser plane control system for the grading of the permeable aggregate to ensure accuracy in the grade tolerances.
- C. Compaction
 - 1. Compact each layer to a minimum density of not less than 95% of maximum dry density as determined by ASTM 0698 and measured using a nuclear method.
 - 2. Proof roll and mark "soft spots" for additional compaction. Use static tandem drum-type roller of not less than five (5) tons weight.
- D. Surface Tolerance
 - 1. Do not deviate from the tolerance of the finished surface (tolerance-to-grade) from designated compacted grade. Do not deviate more than 1/8" in 10' (any direction)

Issue For Bid

when placed under a 10 foot long straight edge. This tolerance is required over the entire field.

2. Mark areas that deviate with spray paint and correct with 1/4" limestone or similar chips and rolled tight to achieve density. Perform remedial actions by hand.

3.7 SUBDRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Inspect delivered subdrain piping. Do not use damaged subdrains in the work.
- B. Install as detailed on drawing and per manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. All ends/joints of any open geotextile fabric must be completely taped closed with 2" wide (minimum) duct tape or the underdrain manufacturer's PVC tape to prevent any soil fines from entering the drain system. Tape all joints at:
 1. Ends of perforated drain.
 2. End of drain at collector/header pipe.
 3. End of drain at fittings.
 4. Any tear, rip or damage to the geotextile fabric.
 5. Any additional openings of the geotextile fabric

3.8 COLLECTION DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install collector drain pipe where shown and as detailed on the drawings. Provide watertight connections at existing inlets/manholes/cleanouts and/or piping.

3.9 TESTING OF INSTALLED AGGREGATE DRAINAGE LAYER

- A. The permeability of the installed aggregate must be field tested by a third party geotechnical service/testing agency prior to installation of the turf system. Test samples must be taken at one sample minimum per 10,000 SF of surface area. Final in-place aggregate must have a percolation rate of not less than 20" per hour.
- B. All test results must be delivered in writing to the Owner, Contractor and Owner's Representative/Project Engineer. If any areas do not meet the minimum infiltration requirements, the Contractor is responsible for corrective action to improve the infiltration rate including the restoring the stone base to required grade, cross-section and density.
- C. When the Contractor has confirmed that the aggregate base is in compliance with all requirements (planarity and elevation verified by a licensed Surveyor and compaction, gradient, and permeability verified by the specified tests) the Contractor to notify the Owner's Representative/Project Engineer to schedule a final inspection by the Synthetic Turf System Installer. During this inspection, the Contractor shall make available an orbital laser system for checking grades. Any deficiencies uncovered during this inspection must be remedied to the satisfaction of the Synthetic Turf System Installer before the aggregate base will be considered acceptable.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Test drain piping and entire drainage system with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.

Issue For Bid

2. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.

B. Collector drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections

3.11 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that all sub-base, drainage and leveling is complete prior to installation of synthetic turf.
- B. The surface to receive the synthetic turf must be inspected by the Installer, and prior to the beginning of installation, the Installer must accept the sub-base in writing. The acceptance will depend on the base contractor providing the installer with test results indicating that compaction, planarity and permeability are in compliance with the synthetic turf manufacturer's specifications. The surface must be perfectly clean as installation commences and shall be maintained in that condition throughout the process. Acceptance shall be for tolerance to grade (1/4 inch in 10 feet in all directions).
- C. The compaction of the aggregate base shall be 95%, according to the Modified Proctor procedure (ASTM D1557), and the surface tolerance shall not exceed 0-1/4 inch over 10 feet and 1/4" from design grade. All must be verified by means of ASTM testing and surveys to the satisfaction of the turf contractor and Owner.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF TURF SYSTEM

- A. Install in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions. The Turf Contractor shall strictly adhere to the installation procedures outlined under this section. Any variance from these requirements must be accepted, in writing, by the onsite representative of the Manufacturer/Installer, and submitted to the Engineer, Architect, and Owner, verifying that the changes do not in any way affect the warranty or performance of the system. Infill materials shall be approved by the Manufacturer and installed in accordance with the Manufacturer's standard procedures.
- B. The carpet rolls are to be installed directly over the properly prepared aggregate base. Extreme care should be taken to avoid disturbing the aggregate base, both in regard to compaction and planarity. It is suggested that a 2.5 ton static roller be placed on site and made available to repair and properly compact any disturbed areas of the aggregate base.
- C. The rolls of turf shall be rolled out a minimum of six hours (4 hours if mostly sunny) prior to starting seaming procedures to allow for carpet to expand and relax.
 - A. All visible wrinkles shall be stretch out before seaming. If wrinkles cannot be stretched properly, material shall either be removed or allowed to sit long enough to be stretched.
 - B. Seams shall be flat, tight and permanent with no separation or fraying.
- D. The full width rolls shall be laid out across the field. Turf shall be of sufficient length to permit full cross-field installation (from end to end or side to side). No "head" or

Issue For Bid

cross seams will be allowed. Utilizing standard state of the art sewing procedures, each roll shall be attached to the next.

- E. This is basically a sewn installation. Gluing of fabric rolls shall not be acceptable. Minimal gluing will be permitted and only to repair problem areas, corner completions, and install logos as required by the specifications. All seams shall be sewn using double bagger stitches and polyester thread. Seams shall be flat, tight, and permanent with no separation or fraying.
- F. Infill materials shall be applied in thin lifts. The turf shall be brushed as the mixture is applied. The mix shall be uniform and even in thickness to assure proper playing characteristics. The Infill materials shall be installed to fill the voids between the fibers and allow the fibers to remain vertical and non-directional.
- G. Synthetic turf shall be attached to the perimeter edge, both glued and nailed, in accordance with the Manufacturer's standard procedures and construction details provided in the Bid Documents.

3.13 SYNTHETIC BASE

- A. Job Conditions:
 - a. Base Acceptance: The Owner and Contractor must jointly approve the base before synthetic drainage underlayment can begin.
 - b. Do not install surface in temperatures above 90 degrees Fahrenheit.
- B. Product Requirements:
 - a. Obtain and install the product in accordance with written installation instructions from the manufacturer.
 - b. Use only new materials manufactured and shipped for the specific installation. No used, recycled or refurbished materials are to be installed.
 - c. Product to be shipped as flat panels on prepackaged pallets. Pallets to be wrapped with heavy-duty barrier for protection from moisture and UV exposure. Do not stack pallets.
- C. Installation:
 - a. Place surface directly onto geotextiles.
 - b. Install panels perpendicular to the sidelines, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. When trimming for the edges of the field, panels must be within 3mm (1/8 inch) of the curb in height and distance.
 - c. Panels shall be fitted together as tightly as possible. Panels are to be overlapped and fit together against the four soft protrusions molded along the overlapping edge of the panels. Panels may have gaps not greater than 3mm (0.125 inch) maximum.
 - d. Seams should be mechanically fastened by hand without use of additional materials, glue, fasteners or secondary processes and

Issue For Bid

equipment.

- D. Turf carpet installation shall begin within 7 days after underlayment installation to avoid prolonged exposure to sun.

3.14 UTILITY COVERS/LIDS

- A. Cover all manhole covers/lids and/or any additional utility boxes within the area of the synthetic turf with turf system and infill.

3.15 CLEAN UP AND PROTECTION OF THE SITE

- A. Protect installed turf from subsequent construction operations.
- B. Contractor shall provide the labor, supplies, and equipment as necessary for final cleaning of surfaces and installed items.
- C. All usable remnants of new material shall become the property of the Owner.
- D. The Contractor shall keep the area clean throughout the project and clear of debris.
- E. Surfaces, recesses, enclosures, etc., shall be cleaned as necessary to leave the work area in a clean, immaculate condition ready for immediate occupancy and use by the Owner.
- F. Contractor shall be fully responsible for any damages outside the Limits of Disturbance.

END OF SECTION 321813

SECTION 321816.13
PLAYGROUND PROTECTIVE SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Unitary, seamless surfacing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASTM F2223 apply to Work of this Section.
- B. Critical Height: Standard measure of shock attenuation according to ASTM F2223; same as "critical fall height" in ASTM F1292. According to ASTM F1292, this approximates "the maximum fall height from which a life-threatening head injury would not be expected to occur."
- C. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.
- D. Unitary Surfacing: A protective surfacing of one or more material components bound together to form a continuous surface; same as "unitary system" in ASTM F2223.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Color Sample Box
- C. Shop Drawings: For each type of protective surfacing.
 - 1. Include plans, sections, placement and penetration details, and attachment to substrates.
 - 2. Include accessories and edge terminations.
 - 3. Include patterns and colors as shown on the Drawings.

4. Include fall heights and use zones for equipment and structures specified in Section 116800 "Play Equipment and Structures," coordinated with the critical heights for protective surfacing.

D. Samples for Color Selection: TBD by Landscape Architect after review of Color Sample Box.

1. Provide, at a minimum, 12 by 12-inch square or round samples of requested Color combinations for Color 1, ~~Color 2~~ and Color 23 to Landscape Architect for color selection.
2. Landscape Architect may request Color Combinations for Color 1, ~~Color 2 and Color 3 and Color 2.~~
3. Color 1, ~~Color 2~~ and Color 23 shall not include Recycled black SBR particles.
4. Color 1 and, ~~Color 2 and~~ Color 23 shall be composed of multiple colors.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of unitary surfacing product.
 1. Product Liability Insurance Certificate.
 2. IPEMA Certification.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For playground protective surfacing to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer. The installer must have installed a minimum of ten (10) applications.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer must be in business for a minimum of five (5) years.
 1. Surface must be IPEMA certified.

C. Approved Samples for Color 1, ~~Color 2~~ and Color ~~23~~ shall be used as Quality Mock-Up for comparison with finished installation.

1. Finished Installation shall match Approved Samples.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of protective surfacing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Reduction in impact attenuation as measured by reduction of critical fall height.

b. Deterioration of protective surfacing and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Materials must be delivered in good condition, in original unopened packages with labels intact.

B. Store all materials protected from weather and at temperatures not less than 32 degrees F for any twelve (12) hour duration.

1.10 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Ambient air temperatures shall be 45 degrees F or greater and rising at the time of installation of the surface and shall remain at 33 degrees F or greater for at least 24 hours after application.

B. Adjacent materials and the surface shall be protected during installation, while curing and unattended, from weather and other damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain protective surfacing materials from single source and from single manufacturer.

1. Provide geosynthetic accessories of each type of source recommended by manufacturer of protective surfacing materials.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Impact Attenuation: Critical fall height tested according to ASTM F1292 for equipment as specified in the Drawings.
- B. Accessibility Standard: Minimum surfacing performance according to ASTM F1951.

2.3 UNITARY, DUAL-DENSITY, SEAMLESS SURFACING (Poured-in-Place (PIP) Rubber Safety Surface)

- A. Description: Manufacturer's standard, site-mixed and applied, two-layer material with wearing layer over cushioning layer, with combined, overall thickness as required, tested for impact attenuation according to ASTM F1292 and for accessibility according to ASTM F1951.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturer's offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. DuraPlay, Inc.
150 Brownson Lane, Driftwood, TX 78619
Phone: 512-847-2473
www.duraplay.com

- b. Surface America, Inc.
P.O. Box 157, Williamsville, NY 14231
Phone: 800-999-0555
www.surfaceamerica.com

- 1) Local Representative:
Recreation Resource USA, LLC
503 N. Walnut Road, #200, Kennett Square, PA 19348
Phone: 610-444-4402
www.recreation-resource.com

2. Wearing Layer: EPDM rubber or Thermoplastic Vulcanizate (TPV).
 - a. A manufactured rubber having density of 1mm to 4mm.
 - b. Colors: as approved by Landscape Architect based on samples provided by the Contractor.
 - c. Design: where colored pattern is required, provide as indicated on Drawings.
3. Cushioning Layer: Recycled black SBR particles.

- a. Shall be cryogenically processed.
 - b. Shall be 3/8-inch shredded mesh or 6/20 mesh and contain less than 4% dust.
 - c. Shall be packed in suitable bags to protect SBR from moisture.
 - d. Base mat thickness: 1-inch to 4-3/4-inches, depending on critical fall height of playground and fitness equipment (see Drawings).
4. Binder: Elastic polyurethane pre-polymer, MDI based, low odor, capable of excellent weathering and binding characteristics. Binder shall contain no TDI Monomers.
 5. Critical Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 6. Overall Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
 7. Primer: A single-component moisture cured polyurethane primer.

2.4 TECHNICAL INFORMATION

A. Applicable Standards:

1. Shock attenuation under ASTM F1292: GMAX less than 200.
2. Head Injury Criteria: less than 1,000.
3. Non-slip characteristics under ASTM E303.
4. IPEMA Certified.
5. Flammability under 8S-5696 and ASTM D2859.
6. Tensile strength (ASTM D412): 60 psi.
7. Tear resistance (ASTM D624): 140%.

B. Chemical Properties:

1. Cushioning Layer: 85% SBR rubber buffings, 15% polyurethane binder.
2. Wearing Layer: 78% EPDM or TPV rubber granules, 22% polyurethane binder.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for subgrade elevations, slope, and drainage and for other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and without high spots, ridges, holes, and depressions.
- B. Hard-Surface Substrates: Verify that substrates are satisfactory for unitary, protective surfacing installation and that substrate surfaces are uniformly sloped to drain within recommended tolerances according to protective surfacing manufacturer's written requirements for cross-section profile.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates to receive surfacing products according to protective surfacing manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SEAMLESS SURFACING

- A. Mix and apply components of seamless surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce uniform, monolithic, and impact-attenuating protective surfacing of required overall thickness.
 - 1. Substrate Primer: Apply primer over prepared substrate with a short nap roller at the rate of 300 square feet per gallon, or at manufacturer's standard spreading rate.
 - a. Prime entire concrete surface of Play Mound.
 - b. Do not over saturate the substrate.
 - c. Prime adjacent vertical barriers such as playground and fitness equipment support legs, curbs, or other edging that will contact the surfacing system.
 - d. DO NOT APPLY PRIMER OVER COMPACTED STONE SUBSTRATE.
 - 2. Poured Cushioning Layer: Spread evenly over compacted stone substrate and primed substrate to form a uniform layer applied at manufacturer's standard spreading rate in one continuous operation, with a minimum of cold joints.

- a. Apply mixed binder / SBR at desired thickness 1/8-inch higher than measuring bar.
 - b. Using a steel pool trowel, even binder / SBR mixture. Be sure to continuously lubricate trowel with soapy water. Do not saturate surface with lubricant.
 - c. As the mixture is leveled, apply a downward pressure onto the surface so that the mixture compacts tightly.
 - d. Check surface to be level.
 - e. Allow to dry for ten (10) to twelve (12) hours, or until no indentations can be made by foot traffic.
3. Intercoat Primer: Over cured cushioning layer, apply primer at manufacturer's standard spreading rate.
4. Wearing Layer: Spread over primed base course to form a uniform layer applied at manufacturer's standard spreading rate in one continuous operation and, except where color changes, with no cold joints. Finish surface to produce manufacturer's standard wearing-surface texture.
- a. Apply mixed binder / granule at nominal 1/2-inch thickness.
 - b. Using a steel pool trowel, spread even rubber / granule mixture. Be sure to continuously lubricate trowel with soapy water.
 - c. As the mixture is leveled, apply a downward pressure onto the surface so that the mixture compacts tightly.
 - d. Check surface to be level.
 - e. Design: Where colored pattern is specified, place colored design material as soon as previously placed material is sufficiently cured, using primer specified by manufacturer.
 - 1) Cold joints must be cut and primed prior to installing a different color surface.
 - f. **Allow to cure for a minimum of twenty-four (24) to forty-eight (48) hours prior to usage. At the end of minimum curing period, verify that the top surface is sufficiently dry and firm to allow foot traffic and use without damage to the surface. DO NOT ALLOW FOOT TRAFFICE OR USE OF THE SURFACE UNTIL IT IS SUFFICIENTLY CURED.**
5. Edge Treatment: As indicated on Drawings. Fully adhere edges to substrate with full coverage of substrate. Maintain fully cushioned thickness required to comply with performance requirements.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide security to protect the surface from foot traffic or vandalism during the forty-eight (48) cure period.

END OF SECTION 321816.13

SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Chain-link fences.
- 2. Swing gates.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete and post footings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, equipment bases, and other preparatory work specified elsewhere.
- 2. Review coordination of interlocked equipment specified in this Section and elsewhere.
- 3. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
 - b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
 - c. Gates and hardware.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of fence and gate assembly.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Include accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.

Issue for Bid

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-applied finish.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of component with factory-applied finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Polymer-Coated Components: In 6-inch lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural performance of chain-link fence and gate frameworks, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, operator, and gate.
- C. Product Test Reports: For framework strength according to ASTM F 1043, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gate operators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing fence grounding; member company of NETA or an NRTL.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Emergency Access Requirements: According to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for gates with automatic gate operators serving as a required means of access.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing

structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees Installer agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to comply with performance requirements.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - c. Faulty operation of gate operators and controls.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design chain-link fence and gate frameworks.
- B. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate frameworks shall withstand the design wind loads and stresses for fence height(s) and under exposure conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design Wind Load: 30,000 psi yield.
 - A. Minimum Post Size: Determine according to ASTM F 1043 for post spacing not to exceed 10 feet for Material Group IA, ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe.

2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist according to "CLFMI Product Manual" and requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Fabric Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Steel Wire for Fabric: 9 gauge.
 - A. Mesh Size: 2 inch.
 - B. Vinyl-Coated Fabric: ASTM F-668, Class 24, 0.35 oz./sq. ft..

Issue for Bid

1. Color: Black, according to ASTM F 934.
- C. Coat selvage ends of metallic-coated fabric before the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.
3. Selvage: Knuckled at both selvages.

2.3 FENCE FRAMEWORK

- A. Posts and Rails Sheet 28: ASTM F 1043 for framework, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 or ASTM F 1083 based on the following:
 1. Fence Height: 96 inches or match existing, as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Heavy-Industrial-Strength Material: Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40.
 - A. Line Post: 2-0 inches in diameter.
 - B. End, Corner, Pull Posts, and Posts Attached to Ball Control Net Posts: 2-7/8 inches in diameter .
 - C. Gate Posts: 4-0 inches in diameter.
 3. Horizontal Framework Members: Intermediate top and bottom rails according to ASTM F 1043.
 - A. Top Rail: 1-5/8 inches.
 - B. Brace Rail: 1-5/8 inches.
 4. Brace Rails: ASTM F 1043.
 5. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
 - A. Color: Black, according to ASTM F 934.

2.4 TENSION WIRE

- A. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch diameter, tension wire according to ASTM F 1664, Class 2a over aluminum-coated steel wire.
 1. Color: Black, according to ASTM F 934.
- B. Aluminum Wire: 0.192-inch- diameter tension wire, mill finished, according to ASTM B 211, Alloy 6061-T94 with 50,000-psi minimum tensile strength.

2.5 SWING GATES

- A. General: ASTM F 900 for gate posts and double swing gate types.
 - 1. Single Gate Leaf Width:
 - A. 72 inches at turf field
 - B. 36 inches at pool egress ramp gate
 - C. 72 inches at main pool entrance
 - 2. Double Gate Leaf Width: 144 inches.
 - 3. Framework Member Sizes and Strength: Based on gate fabric height of 96 inches or less.
- B. Pipe and Tubing:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated Steel: ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; protective coating and finish to match fence framework.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 429/B 429M; manufacturer's standard finish.
 - 3. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel.
 - 4. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel.
- C. Frame Corner Construction: Welded.

2.6 FITTINGS

- A. Provide fittings according to ASTM F626.
- B. Post Caps: Provide for each post.
 - 1. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.
- C. Rail and Brace Ends: For each gate, corner, pull, and end post.
- D. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
 - 1. Top Rail Sleeves: Pressed-steel or round-steel tubing not less than 6 inches long.
 - 2. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting bottom rails to posts.
- E. Tension and Brace Bands: Pressed steel.
- F. Tension Bars: Steel, length not less than 2 inches shorter than full height of chain-link fabric. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.
- G. Truss Rod Assemblies: Steel, hot-dip galvanized after threading, rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.
- H. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: According to ASTM F626.

Issue for Bid

1. Standard Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, according to the following:
 - a. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: 0.148-inch-diameter wire; galvanized with coating thickness matching coating thickness of chain-link fence fabric.
- I. Finish:
 1. Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz./sq. ft. of zinc.
 - a. Polymer coating over metallic coating
- J. Hardware:
 1. Provide Entry Prevention Panels at each side of gate.
 2. Provide Panic Hardware at Pool Egress gates.

2.7 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- B. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating, and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer for exterior applications.

2.8 GROUNDING MATERIALS

- A. Connectors and Grounding Rods: Listed and labeled for complying with UL 467.
 1. Connectors for Below-Grade Use: Exothermic welded type.
 2. Grounding Rods: Copper-clad steel, 5/8 by 96 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

Issue for Bid

1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Engineer.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install chain-link fencing according to ASTM F567 and more stringent requirements specified.
 1. Install fencing where indicated on the Drawings.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
- D. Terminal Posts: Install terminal end, corner, and gate posts according to ASTM F567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more. For runs exceeding 500 feet, space pull posts an equal distance between corner or end posts.
- E. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at maximum 10 feet o.c.
- F. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
- G. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch- diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
- H. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to

radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.

- I. Bottom Rails: Secure to posts with fittings.
- J. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to outside of enclosing framework. Leave 1-inch bottom clearance between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
- K. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts, with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.
- L. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric according to ASTM F626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
 - 1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.
- M. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

3.5 GROUNDING AND BONDING

- A. Fence and Gate Grounding:
 - 1. Ground for fence and fence posts shall be a separate system from ground for gate and gate posts.
 - 2. Install ground rods and connections at maximum intervals of 1500 feet.
 - 3. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet.
 - 4. Ground fence on each side of gates and other fence openings.
 - a. Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - b. Bond across openings, with and without gates, except openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.

Issue for Bid

- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a ground rod located a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- C. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
- D. Connections:
 - 1. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - 2. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 - 3. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 - 4. Make above-grade ground connections with mechanical fasteners.
 - 5. Make below-grade ground connections with exothermic welds.
 - 6. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
- E. Bonding to Lightning Protection System: Ground fence and bond fence grounding conductor to lightning protection down conductor or lightning protection grounding conductor according to NFPA 780.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests.
- B. Prepare test reports.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

END OF SECTION 323113

SECTION 323300
SITE FURNISHINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Benches (Base Scope & Alternate Scope)
- 2. Fixed Tables (Base Scope)
- 3. Picnic Table (Base Scope)
- 4. Trash and Recycling Receptacles (Base Scope & Alternate Scope)
- 5. Removable Bollards (Base Scope)
- 6. Bike Racks (Base Scope)
- 7. Soccer Goals (Base Scope)
- 8. Football Goals (Base Scope)
- 9. Football Goalpost Pads (Base Scope)
- 10. Ball Control Netting (Base Scope)
- 11. Team Benches (Base Scope)
- 12. Bleachers (Base Scope)

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavation for installing concrete footings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product: Manufacturer's standard product literature for each type of product, including shop drawings, installation instructions, and maintenance instructions.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, not less than 6-inch- long linear components and 4-inch- square sheet components.
- E. Product Schedule: For site furnishings, use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For site furnishings to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain site furnishings from the following approved manufacturers:

1. Ironsmith, Inc.
41-701 Corporate Way, Unit 3, Palm Desert, CA 92260
Phone: 800-338-4766
www.ironsmith.cc
2. DuMor, Inc.
P.O. Box 142, Mifflintown, PA 17059
Phone: 800-598-4018
www.dumor.com
 - a. Local Representative:
General Recreation, Inc.
P.O. Box 440, Newtown Square, PA 19073
Phone: 800-726-4793
www.generalrecreationinc.com
3. Elkay Manufacturing Company
2222 Camden Court, Oak Brook, IL 60523
Phone: 800-476-4106
www.elkay.com

2.2 BENCHES

- A. See Site Furnishings Schedule on Drawings for product information.

2.3 TABLES

- A. See Site Furnishings Schedule on Drawings for product information.

2.4 TRASH AND RECYCLING RECEPTACLES

- A. See Site Furnishings Schedule on Drawings for product information.

2.5 REMOVABLE BOLLARD

- A. Removable Bollard: Bollard 400, #400-36/S-15L, manufactured by DuMor, Inc.
 - 1. Tubing: 4 ½" O.D. Steel
 - a. Color: Black
 - 2. Height: 36-inches
 - 3. Accessories: Locking Tab, Ground Sleeve, Cap
 - 4. Installation: Embedded with sleeve; install per manufacturer's recommendations and specifications.

2.6 BIKE RACK

- A. See Site Furnishings Schedule on Drawings for product information.

2.7 SOCCER GOAL

- A. Deluxe European Club Soccer Goal, Model #2B3006SW (8' ht. x 24' w.)
- B. Posts: Aluminum Goal Frame and Backstays, Powder Coat White Finish
- C. Net: 3mm, 3-1/2" mesh, white net
- D. Hardware: All stainless steel, galvanized and brass hardware, pulley system for raising/lowering net, 5/16" braided rope with pre-attached hardware, a cleat for rope tie-off, and a clamp with snap at bottom of post to secure net.
- E. Quantity: Two (2)
- F. As manufactured by one of the following:
 - 1. KwikGoal Ltd.
140 Pacific Dr.
Quakertown, PA 18951
kwikgoal.com

2.8 FOOTBALL GOALS

- A. 8' Hinged Offset High School Football Goal, Model # HSG-HS/8
- B. Posts: 4" dia. x .125" wall Aluminum Uprights, 5-9/16" x .1875" Galvanized Stainless Steel Offset Center Post. Color: Yellow

- C. Foundation: See Manufacturer Specification
- D. Hardware: All stainless steel, galvanized and brass hardware, pulley system for raising/lowering net, 5/16" braided rope with pre-attached hardware, a cleat for rope tie-off, and a clamp with snap at bottom of post to secure net.
- E. Quantity: Two (2)
- F. As manufactured by one of the following:
 - 1. Aluminum Athletic Equipment
1000 Enterprise Drive
Royersford, PA 19468
aaesports.com
- G. Football goalpost pads shall be 6' high, 6" inside diameter, color to be selected by owner, as provided by one of the following:
 - 1. Aluminum Athletic Equipment
1000 Enterprise Drive
Royersford, PA 19468
aaesports.com
 - 2. Sports Edge
P.O. Box 837
259 Murdock Road
Troutman, NC 28166

2.9 BALL CONTROL NETTING SYSTEM

- A. 40' Model # **MBS-40** (40' high system, straight post):
- B. Posts: Straight Post 8"O.D. x .188" wall x 45'-8"lg., 40'-8" out of ground, 6061T6 aluminum extrusion with pre-drilled holes for mounting hardware, 8.625" O.D. x .148" wall x 78"lg. 6061T6 aluminum ground sleeve with a stop-bolt at 60". Typical spacing between posts 20' maximum. Provide heavy duty sleeve caps.
- C. Net: 40' high, #AAE420, 1-1/2"sq. (45mm) black UV-treated HTTP knotless net, 360# tensile strength, 1/4" MFP rope border all 4 sides, pre-attached sewn in 3/16"dia. galvanized clear coated cable.
- D. Hardware: All stainless steel, galvanized and brass hardware, pulley system for raising/lowering net, 5/16" braided rope with pre-attached hardware, a cleat for rope tie-off, and a clamp with snap at bottom of post to secure net.

E. Recommended Footing Specification: 36" diameter x 84" depth, bell bottom of hole, 6" compacted crushed stone at bottom, 4,000lbs. mix concrete. Installation by contractor, consult local codes.

F. As manufactured by:

1. Aluminum Athletic Equipment
1000 Enterprise Drive
Royersford, PA 19468
aaesports.com

2.10 TEAM BENCHES

A. Model # 105 (8' long, backless)

B. Seat: four (4) 4"x4" nominal slats, 8' long, kiln-dried Douglas fir

C. Supports: 2-7/8" o.d. steel pipe, galvanized, painted color: black. post embedded in concrete footing

D. Hardware: all stainless steel, galvanized hardware

E. Recommended footing specifications: 36" deep x 12" dia.

F. As manufactured by:

1. DuMor Site Furnishings
dumor.com
2. Quantity: Ten (10)

2.11 BLEACHERS

A. See Detail on Civil Drawings for product information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for correct and level finished grade, mounting surfaces, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that substrates are stable and capable of supporting the weight of items covered under this section.

- C. Verify the substrates have been adequately prepared to securely anchor those items that will be surface mounted.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Complete field assembly of site furnishings where required.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install site furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.
- C. Install site furnishings level, plumb, true, and securely anchored positioned at locations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Post Setting: Set cast-in support posts in concrete footing with smooth top, shaped to shed water. Protect portion of posts above footing from concrete splatter. Verify that posts are set plumb or at correct angle and are aligned and at correct height and spacing. Hold posts in position during placement and finishing operations until concrete is sufficiently cured.
- E. It is the responsibility of the installer to ensure that all base materials into which the furnishings will be installed can support the rack and will not be damaged by any required installation procedures.
- F. Install in conformance to applicable ADA guidelines and Owner's established accessibility policies.

END OF SECTION 323300

SECTION 329113
SOIL PREPARATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes planting soils for all planting areas, specified according to performance requirements of the mixes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for topsoil stripping and stockpiling.
 - 2. Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" for installation of lawn seed or sod.
 - 3. Section 329300 "Plants" for placing planting soil for plantings.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM: American Society for Testing Materials: D 1557-91 Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.
- B. USDA: United States Department of Agriculture: Texture Triangle Classification.

A. DEFINITIONS

- B. AAPFCO: Association of American Plant Food Control Officials.
- C. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation. This can be amended or unamended soil as indicated.
- D. CEC: Cation exchange capacity.
- E. Compost: The product resulting from the controlled biological decomposition of organic material that has been sanitized through the generation of heat and stabilized to the point that it is beneficial to plant growth.
- F. Duff Layer: A surface layer of soil, typical of forested areas, that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.
- G. Imported Soil: Soil that is transported to Project site for use.

- H. **Manufactured Soil:** Soil produced by blending soils, sand, stabilized organic soil amendments, and other materials to produce planting soil.
- I. **NAPT:** North American Proficiency Testing Program. An SSSA program to assist soil-, plant-, and water-testing laboratories through interlaboratory sample exchanges and statistical evaluation of analytical data.
- J. **Organic Matter:** The total of organic materials in soil exclusive of undecayed plant and animal tissues, their partial decomposition products, and the soil biomass; also called "humus" or "soil organic matter."
- K. **Planting Soil:** Imported soil or manufactured soil that has been modified as specified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- L. **RCRA Metals:** Hazardous metals identified by the EPA under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act.
- M. **SSSA:** Soil Science Society of America.
- N. **Subgrade:** Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
- O. **Subsoil:** Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- P. **Surface Soil:** Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil"; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- Q. **USCC:** U.S. Composting Council.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. **Product Data:** For each type of product:
- B. **Topsoil, Compost, Planting Soil Mix, Soil Amendments:**
 1. Include recommendations for application and use.
 2. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
 3. Include sieve analyses for aggregate materials.
 4. **Material Certificates:** For each type of imported soil and soil amendment and fertilizer before delivery to the site, according to the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's qualified testing agency's certified analysis of standard products.
 - b. Analysis of fertilizers, by a qualified testing agency, made according to AAPFCO methods for testing and labeling and according to AAPFCO's SUIP #25.
 - c. Analysis of nonstandard materials, by a qualified testing agency, made according to SSSA methods, where applicable.

- C. Samples: For each bulk-supplied material, 1-quart (1-L) volume of each in sealed containers labeled with content, source, and date obtained. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished and provide an accurate representation of composition, color, and texture.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For each testing agency.
- B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For preconstruction soil analyses specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent, state-operated, or university-operated laboratory; experienced in soil science, soil testing, and plant nutrition; with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated; and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

- 1. Laboratories: Subject to compliance with requirements, qualified independent soil testing services include, but are not limited to:

- a. Penn State College of Agricultural Sciences, Agricultural Analytical Services Lab
111 Ag Analytical Services Lab, University Park, PA 16802
Phone: 814-863-0841
Email: aaslab@psu.edu
www.agsci.psu.edu
- b. Rutgers Soil Testing Laboratory
Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey
57 US Highway 1, New Brunswick, NJ 08901-8554
Phone: 848-932-9295
Email: soiltest@njaes.rutgers.edu
<https://njaes.rutgers.edu/soil-testing-lab/>

- 2. Multiple Laboratories: At Contractor's option, work may be divided among qualified testing laboratories specializing in physical testing, chemical testing, and fertility testing.

1.7 PRE-CONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction soil analyses on existing on-site soil and imported soil.

1. Notify Landscape Architect at least seven (7) days in advance of the dates and times when laboratory samples will be taken.
- B. Preconstruction Soil Analyses: For each unamended soil type, perform testing on soil samples and furnish soil analysis and a written report containing soil-amendment and fertilizer recommendations by a qualified testing agency performing the testing according to "Soil-Sampling Requirements" and "Testing Requirements" articles.
1. Have testing agency identify and label samples and test reports according to sample collection and labeling requirements.
- 1.8 PRE-CONSTRUCTION SOIL-SAMPLING REQUIREMENTS
- A. General: Extract soil samples according to requirements in this article.
- B. Sample Collection and Labeling: Have samples taken and labeled by Contractor in presence of Engineer or Landscape Architect under the direction of the testing agency.
1. Number and Location of Samples: Minimum number of representative soil samples to be determined by testing agency for each soil to be used or amended for landscaping purposes.
 2. Procedures and Depth of Samples: To be determined by testing agency or according to USDA-NRCS's "Field Book for Describing and Sampling Soils."
 3. Division of Samples: Split each sample into two, equal parts. Send half to the testing agency and half to Owner for its records.
 4. Labeling: Label each sample with the date, location keyed to a site plan or other location system, visible soil condition, and sampling depth.
- 1.9 PRE-CONSTRUCTION TESTING REQUIREMENTS
- A. General: Perform tests on soil samples according to requirements in this article.
- B. Physical Testing:
1. Soil Texture: Soil-particle, size-distribution analysis by the following methods according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods":
 - a. Sieving Method: Report sand-gradation percentages for very coarse, coarse, medium, fine, and very fine sand; and fragment-gradation (gravel) percentages for fine, medium, and coarse fragments; according to USDA sand and fragment sizes.
 - b. Hydrometer Method: Report percentages of sand, silt, and clay.
 2. Bulk Density: Analysis according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 3. Total Porosity: Calculate using particle density and bulk density according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 4. Water Retention: According to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 5. Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity: According to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods"; at 85 percent compaction according to ASTM D698 (Standard Proctor).

- C. Chemical Testing:
1. CEC: Analysis by sodium saturation at pH 7 according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 3- Chemical Methods."
 2. Clay Mineralogy: Analysis and estimated percentage of expandable clay minerals using CEC by ammonium saturation at pH 7 according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 1-Physical and Mineralogical Methods."
 3. Metals Hazardous to Human Health: Test for presence and quantities of RCRA metals including aluminum, arsenic, barium, copper, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If RCRA metals are present, include recommendations for corrective action.
 4. Phytotoxicity: Test for plant-available concentrations of phytotoxic minerals including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chlorides, chromium, cobalt, copper, lead, lithium, mercury, nickel, selenium, silver, sodium, strontium, tin, titanium, vanadium, and zinc.
- D. Fertility Testing: Soil fertility analysis according to standard laboratory protocol of SSSA NAFT NEC-67, including the following:
1. Percentage of organic matter.
 2. CEC, calcium percent of CEC, and magnesium percent of CEC.
 3. Soil reaction (acidity/alkalinity pH value).
 4. Buffered acidity or alkalinity.
 5. Nitrogen ppm.
 6. Phosphorous ppm.
 7. Potassium ppm.
 8. Manganese ppm.
 9. Manganese-availability ppm.
 10. Zinc ppm.
 11. Zinc availability ppm.
 12. Copper ppm.
 13. Sodium ppm.
 14. Soluble-salts ppm.
 15. Presence and quantities of problem materials including salts and metals cited in the Standard protocol. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
 16. Other deleterious materials, including their characteristics and content of each.
- E. Organic-Matter Content: Analysis using loss-by-ignition method according to SSSA's "Methods of Soil Analysis - Part 3-Chemical Methods."
- F. Recommendations: Based on the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants indicated. Include, at a minimum, recommendations for nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium fertilization, and for micronutrients.
1. Fertilizers and Soil Amendment Rates: State recommendations in weight per 1,000 sq. ft. for 6-inch depth of soil.
 2. Soil Reaction: State the recommended liming rates for raising pH or sulfur for lowering pH according to the buffered acidity or buffered alkalinity in weight per 1000 sq. ft. for 6-inch depth of soil.

1.10 POST-CONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Post-Construction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform post-construction analyses on amended planting soil with compost incorporated.
 - 1. Notify Landscape Architect seven (7) days in advance of the dates and times when laboratory samples will be taken.
- B. Post-Construction Soil Analyses: For each amended soil, perform testing on soil samples and furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified testing agency performing the testing according to "Soil-Sampling Requirements" and "Testing Requirements" articles.
 - 1. Have testing agency identify and label samples and test reports according to sample collection and labeling requirements.

1.11 POST-CONSTRUCTION SOIL-SAMPLING REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Perform tests on soil samples according to the requirements in this article.
- B. Fertility Testing:
 - 1. Percentage of organic matter.
 - a. Organic matter content must be 4% minimum.
 - 2. CEC, calcium percent of CEC, and magnesium percent of CEC
 - 3. Soil reaction (acidity / alkalinity pH value).
 - a. pH levels must be between 5.5 and 6.0. Lower pH by using elemental sulfur product. Peat moss or copper sulfate may not be used to lower pH.
 - 4. Buffered acidity or alkalinity.
 - 5. Nitrogen ppm.
 - 6. Phosphorus ppm.
 - 7. Potassium ppm.
 - 8. Manganese ppm.
 - 9. Manganese-availability ppm.
 - 10. Zinc ppm.
 - 11. Zinc-availability ppm.
 - 12. Copper ppm.
 - 13. Sodium ppm.
 - 14. Soluble-salts ppm.
 - a. Soluble-salts measurement must be less or equal to 2 mmho/cm.
 - 15. Presence and quantities of problem materials including salts and metals cited in the Standard protocol. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
 - 16. Other deleterious materials, including their characteristics and content of each.
 - 17. Percolation test to ensure adequate drainage and proper mixing of compost.
- C. Recommendations: The analysis tests shall show recommendations for soil additives or fertilizers to correct soil mixes' deficiencies as necessary.
- D. Deficiencies: Nutrient deficiencies shall be corrected at time of installation.

1.12 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and compliance with state and Federal laws if applicable. Store packaged material with protection from weather or other conditions which would damage or impair the effectiveness of the product. Packaged material which has become wet, moldy, or otherwise damaged in transit or storage will be rejected.
- B. Bulk Materials:
 - 1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 - 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 - 3. Do not move or handle materials when they are wet or frozen.
 - 4. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANTING SOIL

- A. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site surface soil with the duff layer, if any, retained; and stockpiled on site and modified to produce viable planting soil, or imported, naturally formed or manufactured soil from off-site sources consisting of fertile, friable, naturally fine sandy loam, (USDA classification for soil consisting of 10-20 percent clay, 30-50 percent silt and 50-70 percent fine sand, particle 0.10-0.25 mm.) pH range of 5.5 to 7, 4 percent organic material minimum, and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration
 - 1. Using preconstruction soil analyses and materials specified in other articles of this Section, amend existing, on-site surface soil to become planting soil complying with the requirements.
 - 2. For off-site sources, take imported, unamended soil from sources that are naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches deep, not from agricultural land, bogs, or marshes; and that do not contain undesirable organisms or disease-causing plant pathogens. Soil shall not contain any noxious weeds or invasive plants, including, but not limited to, quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and brome grass.
 - 3. Planting Soil shall not include any of the following:
 - a. Unacceptable Materials: Concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials that are harmful to plant growth.
 - b. Unsuitable Materials: Stones, roots, plants, sod, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand 1-inch or larger.

4. Amend existing or imported soil with materials specified in other articles of this Section to become planting soil complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Particle Size Distribution by Separates:
 - Fine Sand: 50% to 70% percent by dry weight.
 - Silt: 30% to 50% percent by dry weight.
 - Clay: 10% to 20% percent by dry weight.
 - b. Percentage of Organic Matter: Minimum 4% by volume.
 - c. Soil Reaction: pH of 5.5 to 7 in accordance with pH range of plants specified.
 - d. CEC of Clay Fraction: Maximum 15 meq/100 mL at pH of 7.0.
 - e. Soluble-Salt Content: 5 to 10- dS/m measured by electrical conductivity.
 - f. RCRA Metals: Below maximum limits established by the EPA.
 - g. Phytotoxicity: Below phytotoxicity limits established by SSSA.
5. Acceptable ranges for base saturation percentages are:

Element	Desired % Range	Ideal %
Ca	60-70%	68%
Mg	10-20%	12%
K	2-5%	5%
Na	0.5-3%	0.75%
Other bases (variable)	2-4%	3.75%
Exchangeable Hydrogen	10-15%	10.5%

B. Unacceptable Properties

1. Clean soil of the following:
 - a. Unacceptable Materials: concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, litter or other extraneous materials that are harmful to plant growth.
 - b. Unsuitable Materials: stones 1-inche or larger in any dimension, noxious seeds, sticks, brush, roots, plants, sod, clay lumps, and pockets of coarse sand that exceed a combined maximum of 8% by dry weight of the imported soil.

2.2 TOPSOIL MIXES

- A. Sources: Take imported, unamended soil from sources that are naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches deep, not from agricultural land, bogs, or marshes; and that do not contain undesirable organisms; disease-causing plant pathogens; or obnoxious weeds and invasive plants including, but not limited to, quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and bromegrass.
- B. Topsoil shall be fertile, friable natural loam capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth. Furnished topsoil shall meet the following grading analysis:
 - a. Particle size

<u>Sieve</u>	<u>Minimum Percent Passing</u>
2"	100
No. 4	75
No. 10	60

- b. Sand, silt and clay material passing the No. 10 sieve shall be present within the following ranges:

	<u>Minimum Percent</u>	<u>Maximum Percent</u>
Sand	30	50
Silt	10	30
Clay	20	50+

- C. Additional Properties of Imported Soil before Amending: Soil reaction of pH 6 to 7 and minimum of 4 percent organic-matter content, friable, and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration.
- D. The topsoil shall be free from subsoil, stones larger than one inch, clods of hard earth, sod, plants or roots, sticks or other extraneous materials. It shall contain no toxic materials. Topsoil from swampy areas or areas of standing water will not be permitted. Do not deliver topsoil in either a frozen or muddy condition.
1. Limestone: Ground limestone shall have a minimum of 85% total carbonates and a minimum of 50% total calcium oxides. At least 90% of it shall be able to pass a No. 20 sieve and at least 50% to pass a No. 100 sieve.
 2. Fertilizers: Fertilizer shall be standard commercial fertilizer conforming to the requirements of the Pennsylvania Soil Conditioner and Plant Growth Substance Act of December 1, 1977, P.L. 258, No. 86 (3 P.S. 68.2), as amended and any other applicable State and Federal laws. Quantities as per soil analysis.
 - a. Use 20-10-5 (10 gram tablets) slow release, plus iron supplement as required.
 - b. Additives: Add in the amount and manner prescribed by the soil analysis.
 - c. Organic Matter: On dry weight basis 90% or better pH factor 3.5 - 5.5.
 - d. Porous Ceramics: Profile, Isolite or Axis.

2.3 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Lime: ASTM C602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through a No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through a No. 60 sieve.
- B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent elemental sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through a No. 6 sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through a No. 40 sieve.
- C. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.

- D. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- E. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through a No. 50 sieve.
- F. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, free of toxic materials, and according to ASTM C33/C33M.
- G. Diatomaceous Earth: Horticultural diatomaceous earth, soil amendment grade.

2.4 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter produced by composting feedstock, and bearing USCC's "Seal of Testing Assurance," and as follows:
 - 1. Feedstock: Compost may be derived from: agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids (treated sewage sludge); yard trimmings; source-separated or mixed solid waste. The product shall contain no substances toxic to plants and shall be reasonably free (< 1% by dry weight) of man-made foreign matter. The compost will possess no objectionable odors and shall not resemble the raw material from which it was derived. Do not use compost that has received the addition of liming agents or ash by-products. The product shall be certified through the U.S. Composting Council's (USCC) Seal of Testing Assurance (STA) Program.
 - 2. Reaction: pH of 5.5 to 8
 - 3. Soluble-Salt Concentration: Less than 5 dS/m.
 - 4. Moisture Content: 35 to 55 percent by weight.
 - 5. Particle Size: 100 percent passing through a 1/2-inch sieve.
 - 6. The compost supplier shall test all compost products within 90 Calendar Days prior to application. Samples shall be collected using the Seal of Testing Assurance (STA) sample collection protocol. The sample collection protocol can be obtained from the U.S. Composting Council, 4250 Veterans Memorial Highway, Suite 275, Holbrook, NY 11741 Phone: (631) 737-4931, www.compostingcouncil.org.
 - a. The sample shall be sent to an independent STA Program approved laboratory. The compost supplier shall pay for the test. A copy of the approved independent STA Program laboratory test report shall be submitted to the Landscape Architect prior to initial application of the compost. Seven days prior to application, the Contractor shall submit a sample of each type of compost to be used on the project to the Landscape Architect.
 - 7. Compost not conforming to the above requirements or taken from a source other than those tested and accepted shall be immediately removed from the project and replaced at no cost to the Owner.
 - 8. The Contractor shall submit the following information to the Landscape Architect for approval:
 - a. The supplier shall verify in writing and provide lab analyses that the Materials comply with the processes, testing, and standards specified in these Specifications. An independent STA Program certified laboratory shall perform the analysis.

- b. A copy of the producer's STA certification as issued by the U.S. Composting Council.

2.5 FERTILIZERS

- A. As required by soil analysis and recommendations.
- B. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
 - 1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified testing agency.

2.6 GEOTEXTILE FABRIC

- A. Geotextile shall consist of needled, non-woven polypropylene fibers and meet the following properties:
 - 1. Grab tensile strength (ASTM D4632) \geq 120 lbs.
 - 2. Mullen burst strength (ASTM D3786) \geq 225 psi.
 - 3. Flow rate (ASTM D4491) \geq 95 gal/min/ft².
 - 4. UV Resistance after 500 hours (ASTM D4355) \geq 70%.
 - 5. Heat-set or heat calendared fabrics are not permitted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Place planting soil and fertilizers according to requirements in other Specification Sections.
- B. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in planting soil.
- C. Proceed with placement only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff of airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.2 PLACING AND MIXING PLANTING SOIL OVER EXPOSED SUBGRADE

- A. General: Apply and mix unamended soil with amendments on-site to produce required planting soil, or apply manufactured soil on site in its final, blended condition. Do not apply materials or till if existing soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
- B. Subgrade Preparation: Till subgrade to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
 - 1. Apply, add soil amendments, and mix approximately half the thickness of unamended soil over prepared, loosened subgrade according to "Mixing" Paragraph below. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
- C. Mixing: Spread unamended soil to total depth indicated on Drawings, but not less than required to meet finish grades after mixing with amendments and natural settlement. Do not spread if soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
 - 1. Amendments: Apply soil amendments and fertilizer, if required, evenly on surface, and thoroughly blend them with unamended soil to produce planting soil.
 - a. Mix lime and sulfur with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
 - b. Mix fertilizer with planting soil no more than seven days before planting.
 - 2. Lifts: Apply and mix unamended soil and amendments in lifts not exceeding 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- D. Compaction: Compact each blended lift of planting soil to 75 to 82 percent of maximum Standard Proctor density according to ASTM D698.
- E. Finish Grading: Grade planting soil to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

3.3 FOR LAWN AREAS

- A. Till subgrade to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Apply approximately two inches of the Planting Soil Mix over prepared, loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of subgrade.
- C. Spread remaining Planting Soil Mix to meet depths as indicated on plan (4" minimum), and as required to meet finished grades after natural settlement. Do not spread if soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet. Compact each lift of to 75 to 82 percent of maximum Standard Proctor density according to ASTM D 698.

- D. Finish grade planting soil to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.
- E. Test for compaction before installing seed or sod.
- F. Install seed mix or sod in accordance with the applicable specification section.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protection Zone: Identify protection zones as indicated on Drawings and according to Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection".
- B. Protect areas of in-place soil from additional compaction, disturbance, and contamination. Prohibit the following practices within these areas except as required to perform planting operations:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Vehicle traffic.
 - 4. Foot traffic.
 - 5. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 6. Impoundment of water.
 - 7. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
- C. If planting soil or subgrade is over-compacted, disturbed, or contaminated by foreign or deleterious materials or liquids, remove the planting soil and contamination; restore the subgrade as directed by Landscape Architect and replace contaminated planting soil with new planting soil.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Protect areas adjacent to planting-soil preparation and placement areas from contamination. Keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable materials, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Legally dispose of excess subsoil and unsuitable materials off-site.

END OF SECTION 329113

SECTION 329200
TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Seeding.
 - 2. Sodding.
 - 3. Turf renovation.
 - 4. Erosion-control materials.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 329113 Soil Preparation for information regarding planting soils.
 - 2. Section 329300 Plants for trees, shrubs, ground covers, and other plants.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Association of Official Seed Analysts (AOSA) "Rules for Testing Seeds."
- B. Turfgrass Producer's International (TPI) "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding."

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- B. Invasive Plant/Species: Plant that is non-native to the ecosystem under consideration and whose presence causes or is likely to cause environmental, economic, or human harm.
- C. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. Pesticides include insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. They also include substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- D. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- E. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site soil; imported soil or manufactured soil that has been modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth. See Section 329113 Soil Preparation and drawing designations for planting soils.

- F. Subgrade: The surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. At conference, Landscape Contractor and General Contractor shall review Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's current edition of integrated pest management plan.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Planting & Installation Schedule: Submit proposed planting and installation schedule, indicating dates for completion of work items, soil testing, and installation of each type of turfgrass during normal seasons for such work in area of site.
 - 1. Correlate Plant & Installation Schedule with specified maintenance periods to provide maintenance from date of Substantial Completion. Once accepted, revise dates only as approved in writing, after documentation of reasons for delays.
 - 2. Submit letter notifying General Contractor and Landscape Architect of completion of planting work and requesting inspection to determine acceptability for Substantial Completion and beginning of Warranty Period.
 - 3. Submit letter to General Contractor and Landscape Architect requesting a final inspection of planting work for Final Acceptance at end of Warranty Period.
- B. Turf and/or Plant Maintenance Schedule: Depending on Project conditions, submit proposed turf maintenance (and/or plant maintenance for seeded non-turf areas), indicating frequency of maintenance visits and scheduled maintenance activities to occur during visits. See Part 3 for more information on required Turf/Plant Maintenance activities.
 - 1. Turf/Plant maintenance schedule shall be specific to distinct planting conditions on site. Examples of planting conditions are project specific and may include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Seeded Turfgrass areas.
 - b. Sodded Turfgrass areas.
 - c. Seeded non-turf areas (such as Meadows, swales, bio-retention areas, etc.)
 - 2. At a minimum, Turf/Plant Maintenance Schedule shall include:
 - a. Weekly maintenance visits and description of maintenance activities for each planting area.
 - b. Weeding and invasive species control and removal practices.
 - c. Watering schedule and practices.
 - d. Tools to be used for maintenance.
 - e. Timing of initial and second cuttings of seeded non-turf areas.
 - f. Timing of Turf Post Fertilization.
 - g. Timing of Turf Aeration.
 - 3. As part of Turf/Plant Maintenance schedule, Work Logs shall be submitted to Owner on a weekly basis. See Part 3 for more information.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Landscape Contractor.

- B. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture, stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
 - 1. Landscape Contractor shall submit Certification of Grass Seed as part of project submittals and provide Certification of Grass Seed to General Contractor and upon delivery to Project Site. Grass seed delivered to Project Site without proof of Certification or Certification that is different from approved submittal will be rejected and immediately removed from the site.
- C. Certification of each seed mixture for turfgrass sod. Include identification of source and name and telephone number of supplier.
 - 1. Landscape Contractor shall submit Certification of Seed mixture for sod as part of project submittals and provide Certification of Seed mixture for sod to General Contractor upon delivery to Project Site. Sod delivered to Project Site without proof of Certification or Certification that is different from approved submittal will be rejected and immediately removed from the site.
- D. Product Certificates: For fertilizers, from manufacturer.
- E. Pesticides and Herbicides: Applicator License number and product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project and in accordance with Philadelphia Parks & Recreation integrated pest management practices. Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Recommended procedures to be established by Philadelphia Parks & Recreation for maintenance of turf during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required maintenance periods.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Landscape Contractor Qualifications: A qualified Landscape Contractor whose work has resulted in successful turf establishment.
 - 1. Professional Membership: Landscape Contractor shall be a member in good standing of either the National Association of Landscape Professionals or AmericanHort.
 - 2. Experience: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed turf installation to the extent indicated for this Project and with a record of successful lawn establishment for a minimum of three (3) years.
 - 3. Landscape Contractor's Field Supervision: Require Landscape Contractor to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
 - 4. Pesticide Applicator: State-licensed, commercial.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of compliance with state and Federal laws, as applicable.

- B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" sections in Turfgrass Producers International (TPI) "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod within 24 hours of harvesting and in time for planting promptly. Protect sod from breakage and drying.
- C. Bulk Materials:
 - 1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 - 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials; discharge of soil-bearing water runoff; and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 - 3. Accompany each delivery of bulk materials with appropriate certificates.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting completion. Planting windows shall be reviewed at start of construction and may be adjusted depending on climate conditions (average seasonal temperatures, annual rainfall, and significant weather events) in the year of planting. Seeding or sodding not within these periods noted below requires approval in writing from Landscape Architect.
 - 1. Seeding:
 - a. Spring Planting: March 15 – May 15
 - b. Fall Planting: August 15 – November 15
 - 2. Sodding:
 - a. Spring Planting: March 1 – May 15
 - b. Fall Planting: September 1 – November 15
- B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service Turf: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of Landscape Contractor. Maintain as required in Part 3 and per approved Turf Maintenance schedule. Begin maintenance activities immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established, but not for less than the following periods beginning from date of Substantial Completion and acceptance of Work for the entire project by Philadelphia Park & Recreation:
 - 1. Seeded Turf: Ninety (90) days from date of Substantial Completion of entire project.
 - a. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.
 - 2. Sodded Turf: Thirty (30) days from date of Substantial Completion of entire project.
 - a. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

- A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.
- B. Seed Species for Turf Lawns:
 - 1. Quality, State Certified: State-certified seed of grass species as listed below for solar exposure.
 - 2. The seed mixes provided below are for reference purposes only for Full Sun, Sun and Partial Shade, and Shade conditions. Seed mixes shall be project specific and may differ from composition below.
 - 3. Full Sun, Cool-Season Grass: Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.
 - 4. Sun and Partial Shade: Cool-Season Grass Mixture, proportioned by weight as follows:
 - a. 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
 - b. 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
 - c. 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
 - d. 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
 - 5. Shade, Cool-Season Grass: Proportioned by weight as follows:
 - a. 50 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
 - b. 35 percent rough bluegrass (*Poa trivialis*).
 - c. 15 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
 - 6. Other seed mixtures as approved by Landscape Architect and Philadelphia Parks & Recreation.
- C. Seed Species for Non-Turf Areas (Meadows, Bio-retention areas, Swales or Other Planting Areas)
 - 1. Quality, State Certified: State-certified seed of grass species.
 - 2. Proprietary or Custom Seed Mix specified by species and cultivars and approved by Landscape Architect and Philadelphia Parks & Recreation.

2.2 TURFGRASS SOD

- A. Turfgrass Sod: Certified, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture that is strongly rooted and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.
- B. The sod species provided below are for references purposes only for Full Sun, Sun and Partial Shade, and Shade conditions. Sod shall be project specific and may differ from recommendations below.
 - 1. Turfgrass Species, Cool-Season Grass: Sod of grass species as follows, with not less than 85 percent germination, not less than 95 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:
 - 2. Full Sun: Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.
 - 3. Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
 - a. 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
 - b. 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
 - c. 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
 - d. 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).

4. Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
 - a. 50 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
 - b. 35 percent rough bluegrass (*Poa trivialis*).
 - c. 15 percent redbtop (*Agrostis alba*).
5. Other sod mixture as approved by Landscape Architect and Philadelphia Parks & Recreation.

2.3 SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
 1. Composition:
 - a. Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
- B. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
 1. Composition:
 - a. Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
- C. Lime: ASTM C602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
 1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through a No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through a No. 60 sieve.
- D. See Section 329113 Soil Preparation, for soil testing requirements. Application of Soil Amendments shall be per Pre- and Post-Construction soil testing recommendations.

2.4 PLANTING SOIL

- A. See Section 323913 Soil Preparation.

2.5 MULCHES

- A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley. Do not use field hay as it may contain weed seeds.

2.6 PESTICIDES

- A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by the EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for specific project conditions, and in accordance with School District of Philadelphia's Integrated Pest Management Plan and practices. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.7 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

- A. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches long.
- B. Silt Sock: Tubular shaped erosion and sediment control device comprised of a biodegradable fabric exterior filled with all-natural wood fiber.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting installation and performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
 - 2. Suspend planting operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
 - 3. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable, or which is dusty.
 - 4. Verify there are no invasive plants present in the area to be planted. If present, invasive plants shall be removed prior to plant installation.
- B. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Landscape Architect and replace with new planting soil.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures; utilities; sidewalks; pavements; and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
 - 1. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, and to separate seeded areas from other planting areas.
- C. Clean all tools, equipment, and work materials prior to beginning work each day to prevent spread of diseases or contamination.

3.3 TURF AREA PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare planting area for soil placement and mix planting soil according to Section 329113 Soil Preparation.

- B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosed subgrade to a minimum depth of 8-inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2-inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's property.
 - 1. Spread planting soil to a depth of 6-inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
 - a. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.
 - C. Unchanged Subgrades: If turf is to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface-soil stripping operations, prepare surface soil as follows:
 - 1. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.
 - 2. Loosen surface soil to a depth of at least 6-inches. Apply soil amendments and fertilizers according to planting soil mix proportions and mix thoroughly into top 6-inches of soil. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture.
 - 3. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2-inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's property.
 - D. Add soil amendments to the soil according to the recommendations supplied in the Soil Test Report. Apply the amendments in two directions to ensure even coverage of spreadable amendments. Till into the soil to a depth of at least 6 inches.
 - E. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2-inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.
 - F. Water the surface to check for puddles. When soil is dry enough to work, regrade the surface to eliminate puddles and provide positive drainage, as indicated on the construction plans.
 - G. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
 - H. Before planting, obtain Engineer's or Landscape Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.
- 3.4 PREPARATION FOR EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS
- A. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation" Article.
 - B. For erosion-control blanket, install from top of slope, working downward, and as recommended by material manufacturer for site conditions. Fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
 - C. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
 - D. Where two or more different seed mixes are adjacent or seed mix is adjacent to sod or other planting areas, install silt sock at boundary of seed mix(es) to prevent seed migration between seeded and/or planted areas. Dig in silt sock at seeding boundary so top of silt socks is min. 6" above finished grade. Silt sock shall be removed at end of Maintenance Period as identified in Part 1.

1. Landscape Contractor shall dig in and stake silt sock on slopes exceeding 1:6. Stakes shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations at a spacing no greater than 10'.

3.5 SEEDING

- A. Sow seed using cultipacker type spreading machine, unless otherwise approved by Landscape Architect and Phila. Do not drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph.
 1. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
 2. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
 3. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.
- B. Sow seed at recommended rate based on seed mix or at a minimum rate of 3 to 4 lb/1000 sq. ft.
- C. If directed by Landscape Architect or Philadelphia Parks & Recreation, rake seed lightly into top 1/8-inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
- D. Seeding of slopes greater than 1:4 is not permitted, unless authorized by Philadelphia Parks & Recreation. See 3.6 Sodding for more information.
- E. Protect seeded areas with slopes between 1:6 and 1:4 with erosion control fiber mesh installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Protect seeded areas with slopes less than 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2-inches in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.
 1. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into soil with suitable mechanical equipment.
- G. Protect all seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying compost mulch within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16-inch, and roll surface smooth.

3.6 SODDING

- A. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting unless a suitable preservation method is accepted by Landscape Architect prior to delivery time. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen or muddy.
- B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to soil or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with soil, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.
 1. Lay sod across slopes at or exceeding 1:4.
 2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with anchors as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than two anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.
- C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2-inches below sod.

3.7 TURF RENOVATION

- A. Renovate existing turf where indicated or where existing turf is damaged due to construction activities.
- B. Renovate turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.
 - 1. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
 - 2. Install new planting soil as required.
- C. Remove sod and/or seed and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.
- D. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials, such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new planting soil.
- E. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.
- F. Remove all weeds and/or invasive plants before seeding. Where weeds or invasive species are present, submit procedures for invasive plant or weed removal for review and approval by Philadelphia Parks & Recreation prior to removal activities. Selective herbicides may only be used in accordance with Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's integrated pest management plan and only with written approval of Philadelphia Parks & Recreation. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.
- G. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's property.
- H. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6-inches.
- I. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizer required for establishing new turf and mix thoroughly into top 4-inches of existing soil. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.
 - 1. Soil Amendment(s): Apply soil amendment(s) according to requirements of Section 329113 Soil Preparation.
 - 2. Initial Fertilizer: Slow-release fertilizer applied according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- J. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch and sod as required for new turf.
- K. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

3.8 TURF AND PLANT MAINTENANCE

- A. General: Maintain and establish turf and seeded areas by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf or plantings. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and re-mulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
- B. Record all maintenance activities in a Work Log. Landscape Contractor's personnel shall submit Work Logs upon completion of each turf maintenance visit to Philadelphia Parks & Recreation. Work Logs shall include time and date of Work, number of hours spent at the site, and a

description of maintenance tasks performed during the maintenance visit, in addition to other items listed in Specifications.

1. Notify Philadelphia Parks & Recreation at least 48 hours prior to each Maintenance visit.

C. Regular Turf and Plant Maintenance Activities: At a minimum, perform the following activities during each Turf and/or Plant Maintenance visit.

1. Watering: Loss of turf or plants due to inadequate watering will be considered negligence of maintenance services and will require replacement at no cost to Philadelphia Parks & Recreation. A watering plan shall be submitted as part of Action Submittals.
 - a. Watering Frequency: Water all newly seeded or sodded areas with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1-inch per week, unless greater than 1-inch of precipitation has occurred at Project site within previous 7 days. If maintenance personnel elects not to perform watering due to previous precipitation, documentation must be provided to Philadelphia Parks & Recreation showing amount of precipitation on site for past 7 days.
 - 1) Contractor may install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and/or turf-watering equipment to convey water from approved sources and keep turf or planting area uniformly moist to a depth of 4-inches.
 - b. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
 - c. Watering activities and timeframes shall be recorded in Work Logs.
2. Maintain an invasive plant and weed-free installation. Invasive plants and weeds shall be removed as part of regular maintenance activities throughout duration of Turf Maintenance period. If weeds or invasive species are observed, submit procedures for invasive plant and weed removal for review and approval by Philadelphia Parks & Recreation prior to removal activities. Identify invasive species and record removal procedures within Work Logs.
3. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
4. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
5. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Follow Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's integrated pest management practices to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.
6. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Lawn mowing shall occur on a regular basis, typically weekly unless conditions do not permit. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than one-third of grass height. Remove no more than one-third of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Ensure mower blades are sharp and provide a clean cut. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
 - a. Mow to a height of 3 to 3.5-inches.
 - b. If using a mulching mower, lawn clippings may be left on the lawn to decompose.
7. Turf Postfertilization: Apply slow-release fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.
 - a. Use fertilizer that provides actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. to turf area.
8. Turf Aeration: Aerate lawn prior to end of Maintenance period.

D. For seeded areas that are not turfgrass (such as Meadows and bio-retention areas), cut back grasses early in the season when vegetation reaches 12-inches in height to a height of 6-inches. Return and cut back when vegetation reaches 12-inches in height to a height of 8-inches.

3.9 SATISFACTORY TURF

- A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Landscape Architect or Philadelphia Parks & Recreation:
 - 1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.
- B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

3.10 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

- A. Herbicides and other chemical products shall not be applied unless specifically approved in writing by Philadelphia Parks & Recreation in accordance with Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's integrated pest management practices.
 - 1. Herbicides and other chemical products shall only be applied by a Licensed Applicant and shall not occur without approval by Philadelphia Parks & Recreation.
- B. Notify Philadelphia Parks & Recreation before each application is performed.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Nonselective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Philadelphia Parks & Recreation's property.
- C. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.
- D. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures and silt socks between seed mixes or sod at end of grass establishment period. Repair any plant beds or lawns damaged as a result of erosion control measure removal.

END OF SECTION 329200

SECTION 329300
PLANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Trees (Understory).
 - 2. Shrubs.
 - 3. Fertilizers.
 - 4. Mulches.
 - 5. Tree Watering Bags.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 329113 "Soil Preparation" for information regarding planting soil.
 - 2. Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" for turf (lawn).

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - 1. Z60.1 – American Standards for Nursery Stock
 - 2. A300 – Standards for Tree Care Operations
- B. United States Department of Agriculture (USDA):
 - 1. Plant Hardiness Zone Map
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standards as listed in Specification.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.
- B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with a ball size not less than sizes indicated; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.
- C. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball

when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

- D. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- E. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- F. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.
- G. Planting Soil: Imported soil or manufactured soil that has been modified with soil amendments and/or fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth. See Section 329115 "Soil Preparation (Performance Specification)" for drawing designations for planting soils.
- H. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.
- I. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.
- J. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.
- K. Subgrade: The surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordination with Turf Areas (Lawns): Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Plant Materials: Contractor shall provide a confirmed Plant Schedule verifying quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for all specified plant materials.
 - a. Contractor shall provide confirmed Plant Schedule to Landscape Architect a minimum of six (6) weeks prior to anticipated Plant Installation.
 - 2. Plant Photographs: For plant material not tagged in field by Landscape Architect, include color photographs in digital format of each required species and size of

plant material as it will be furnished to Project. Take photographs from an angle depicting true size and condition of the typical plant to be furnished. Include a scale rod or other measuring device in each photograph. For species where more than 10 plants are required, include a minimum of three photographs showing the average plant, the best quality plant, and the worst quality plant to be furnished. Identify each photograph with the full scientific name of the plant, plant size, and name of the growing nursery.

- a. Landscape Architect reserves the right to reject plant material based on photographs that do not meet specification requirements or appear damaged, diseased, or otherwise unhealthy.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following:
1. Plant Material: Bill of sale indicating full scientific name, quantity, plant size, and name of growing nursery for all plant material.
 2. Organic and Compost Mulch: 1-quart (1-L) volume of each organic mulch required; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.
- C. Planting & Installation Schedule: Submit proposed planting and installation schedule, indicating dates for completion of work items, plant tagging, soil testing, digging of woody plants, and installation of each type of landscape work during normal seasons for such work in area of site.
1. Correlate Plant & Installation Schedule with specified maintenance periods to provide maintenance from date of Substantial Completion. Once accepted, revise dates only as approved in writing, after documentation of reasons for delays.
 2. Submit letter notifying Owner and Landscape Architect of completion of planting work and requesting inspection to determine acceptability for Substantial Completion and beginning of Warranty Period.
 3. Submit letter to Owner and Landscape Architect requesting a final inspection of planting work for Final Acceptance at end of Warranty Period.
- D. Plant Maintenance Schedule: Submit proposed plant maintenance schedule, indicating frequency of maintenance visits and scheduled maintenance activities to occur during visits.
1. Plant maintenance shall include watering of plants. Loss of plants due to inadequate watering will be considered negligence of maintenance services and will require plant replacement at no cost to Owner.
 2. A one-year watering plan shall be submitted as part of Plant Maintenance Schedule.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For landscape Installer. Include list of similar projects completed by Installer demonstrating Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of manufactured product, from manufacturer, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's certified analysis of standard products.
 - 2. Analysis of other materials by a recognized laboratory made according to methods established by the Association of Official Analytical Chemists, where applicable.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of plants during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required maintenance periods.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.
 - 1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the National Association of Landscape Professionals or AmericanHort.
 - 2. Experience: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed planting work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful plant establishment for a minimum of three (3) years.
 - 3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
 - 4. Pesticide Applicator: State-licensed, commercial.
- B. Nursery Qualifications: A nursery specializing in growing and cultivating the plant specified in this Section with a minimum of six (6) years' experience.
 - 1. Nurseries shall be members of the American Association of Nurserymen and Pennsylvania Landscape and Nurserymen's Association, or equivalent State organization(s).
 - 2. Nurseries shall be within same plant hardiness zone and having similar climate conditions as Project Site. Zone shall be as defined on United States Department of Agriculture Plant Hardiness Zone Map.
 - a. Nursery shall be located within 75-miles of Project site. Plant sources greater than this distance will not be accepted without written approval by Landscape Architect.
- C. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.
- D. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.
 - 1. Trees and Shrubs: Measure with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container-grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for

height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above the root flare for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above the root flare for larger sizes.

2. Other Plants: Measure with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.

E. Plant Material Observation: Landscape Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality.

1. Landscape Architect may also observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and may reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

2. Notify Landscape Architect of sources of planting materials at least seven days in advance of delivery to site.

F. Substitutions: Substitutions will only be considered after review of plant availability with Landscape Architect. Submit request for substitutions in writing to Landscape Architect. **Substitutions will only be accepted with written approval by Landscape Architect.**

1.10 HARVESTING, DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Tree Tagging: Landscape Architect may accompany Contractor to nursery to select and tag trees. Landscape Architect may choose to select and tag shrubs.

1. Landscape Architect shall select plants for proper visual formation. Contractor shall inspect selected plants for disease and other requirements of Contract Documents. Prior to nursery trip, Contractor shall have pre-selected Nursery(s) to ascertain the sufficient plants in size and species required, and provided the confirmed Plant Schedule to Landscape Architect.

2. The Landscape Architect may tag trees and shrubs of each species as a representative sample. Trees and shrubs delivered to the Project site without tags, and shrubs that do not equally match the quality of tagged samples, shall be rejected.

B. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of compliance with state and Federal laws if applicable.

C. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.

2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials; discharge of soil-bearing water runoff; and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk materials with appropriate certificates.

D. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their

natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.

- E. Handle planting stock by root ball.
- F. The Contractor must verify that one of the following methods is used to protect plant material in transit:
 - 1. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
 - a. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.
 - 2. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.
- G. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
 - 1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
 - 2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
 - 3. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly wet condition.
- H. **All plant material must have labels showing botanical name on each individual plant. Plants without labels will be rejected by Landscape Architect and shall be removed immediately from the Project Site.**
- I. Notify the Landscape Architect at least three (3) business days in advance of start of Work.
- J. The Landscape Architect reserves the right to reject plant materials not meeting the above requirements.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. **Field Measurements:** Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work. Hand excavate, as required. Maintain grade stakes until parties concerned mutually agree upon removal.
- B. **Planting Restrictions:** Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion.

1. Spring Planting: March 15 – June 15
 2. Fall Planting: September 1 – November 15
 3. Planting outside of designated timeframes above may only occur with written approval from Landscape Architect.
 4. Planting between June 16 to August 31 is not permitted.
- C. Plant trees after finished grades are established and before planting lawns, unless approved otherwise by Landscape Architect.
1. When planting trees after lawn, protect lawn areas and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.
- D. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- E. Utilities: Determine location of above-grade and underground utilities and perform Work in a manner which will avoid damage. Hand excavate, as required. Maintain grade stakes until parties concerned mutually agree upon removal.
1. Notify Owner no fewer than three (3) days in advance of proposed interruption of each service or utility.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of services or utilities without Owner's written permission.
- F. Excavation: When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or other obstructions, notify Landscape Architect before planting.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, including resulting from lack of adequate maintenance during warranty period.
 - b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
 - c. Faulty performance of tree stabilization edgings and tree grates.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion and acceptance of Work by Owner.
 - a. Trees, Shrubs, Vines, and Ornamental Grasses: Twelve (12) months.
 - b. Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, and Other Plants: Twelve (12) months.
 3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:
 - a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.

- b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
- c. A limit of one replacement of each plant is required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
- d. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material.
- e. At end of Warranty Period, cut bindings around base of trunks and remove loose materials. Redistribute, add, and/or replace mulch as needed.

1.13 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service for Plant Material. Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptable healthy and well-established but not for less than maintenance period below:
 - 1. Maintenance Period for Trees and Shrubs: Twelve (12) months.
 - 2. Ground Covers, Perennials, Ornamental Grasses, and Other Plants: Twelve (12) months.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

- A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant List, Plant Schedule, or Plant Legend indicated on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.
 - 1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch in diameter; or with stem girdling roots are unacceptable and will be rejected and shall be removed from the project site immediately.
 - 2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Acquire plants from nurseries within 100-mile radius of Project Site. Plant sources greater than this distance will not be accepted without written approval from Landscape Architect.
- B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Landscape Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.

- C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which begins at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.
- D. Labeling: Label each plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant.
 - 1. Plants without labels will be rejected by Landscape Architect and shall be removed immediately from the Project Site.

2.2 TREES

- A. Provided balled and burlapped trees, unless container-grown trees are specified on Plant Schedule.
- B. Canopy Trees: Provide canopy trees with well-balanced crowns, straight trunks with intact main leaders, undamaged and uncut, and of height and caliper indicated on Plant Schedule, and conforming to ANSI Z60.1.
 - 1. Tree sizes and conditions shall meet or exceed requirements as specified on Plant Schedule. Contractor may elect to provide trees with larger caliper than specified at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. Understory Trees: Provide understory trees that are upright and spreading, branched naturally according to species and type, and of height and container size indicated on Plant Schedule, and conforming to ANSI Z60.1.
 - 1. Understory trees shall have two to three main stems. Understory trees with four or more main stems may be rejected upon inspection by Landscape Architect.

2.3 SHRUBS

- A. Provide deciduous shrubs with not less than the minimum number of canes required by and measured according to ANSI Z60.1 for type, shape, and height of shrub. See Plant Schedule.

2.4 FERTILIZERS

- A. Feeder Packs: Organic, biodegradable packs containing a measured dose of fertilizer (4-2-2), mycorrhizae, biochar, azomite, and micronized oyster shell (5% calcium and 1% Sulphur).
 - 1. *Fuhgeddaboutit!* Root Zone Feeder Packs, manufactured by Organic Mechanics Soil Company, LLC
P.O. Box 272, Modena, PA 19358
Phone: 610-380-4598
www.organicmechanicsoil.com

2.5 PLANTING SOIL

- A. See Section 323913 "Soil Preparation."

2.6 MULCHES

- A. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of the following:
 - 1. Type: Triple-Shredded hardwood bark.
 - 2. Size Range: 3-inch maximum, 1/2-inch minimum.
 - 3. Color: Natural and undyed.
- B. Leaf Litter: Chopped or shredded leaves, free of weeds, seeds, loam, sand, clay, and other foreign substances. Acquire leaf litter locally from a source approved by Landscape Architect.

2.7 TREE-WATERING BAGS

- A. Slow-Release Watering Bags: Standard product manufactured for drip irrigation of plants and emptying its water contents over an extended time period; manufactured from UV-light-stabilized nylon-reinforced polyethylene sheet, PVC, or HDPE plastic. Obtain from source below or approved equal.
 - 1. Tregator Original, manufactured by Spectrum Products, Inc.
153 Mosswood Boulevard, Youngsville, NC 27596
Phone: 1-866-873-3428
www.tregator.com

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

- A. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Burlap: Non-synthetic, biodegradable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive plants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.

2. Verify that plants and vehicles loaded with plants can travel to planting locations with adequate overhead clearance.
 3. Suspend planting operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
 4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable or which is dusty.
- B. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- C. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.

3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

- A. General: Prepare planting area for soil placement and mix planting soil according to Section 329113 "Soil Preparation ."
- B. Placing Planting Soil: Place and mix planting soil in-place over exposed subgrade.
- C. Before planting, obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.
- D. Around Existing Trees:
1. Loosen existing soil surface by hand to a depth required to plant shrubs and / or herbaceous plants.
 2. Do not place more than 10" of planting soil under dripline of existing trees.
 3. Spread two-inch deep layer of compost over soil. Mix thoroughly into top six inches of soil. Excavate and remove existing soil as required to maintain existing grades of landscape beds.
- E. Newly Graded Subgrades:
1. Loosen compacted subgrade with a subsoil ripping tool to a depth of 18-inches and with vertical trenches 24-inches apart. Run subsoil-ripping tool in two directions at right angles to each other.

2. Spread 2-inch-deep layer of topsoil or planting mix over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 4-inches of subgrade.
 3. Spread topsoil or planting mix to depths indicated, but not less than required, to meet finish grades after addition of amendments, light rolling, and natural settlement. Do not spread if topsoil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet. Apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface and mix thoroughly into topsoil.
 4. Spread 2-inch-deep layer of compost over topsoil. Mix thoroughly into top 6-inches of soil.
 5. After light rolling and settlement, compact in 6-inch lifts and compact to 85% of maximum dry weight according to ASTM D698, to depth required to meet grades and elevations as indicated on Drawings.
- F. Finish Grade: Grade planting beds to a smooth, even surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.
1. Before planting, obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.
- G. Stage installation of topsoil or planting mix to avoid travel by equipment over placed topsoil or planting mix.
- H. Restore planting beds if eroded or otherwise disturbed

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits.
1. Excavate planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are unacceptable. Scarify subgrade 2-inches, and trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage away from center. Scarify sides of planting pit smeared or smoothed during excavation.
 2. Excavate approximately three times as wide as ball diameter for balled and burlapped and container-grown stock.
 3. Excavate at least 12 inches wider than root spread and deep enough to accommodate vertical roots for bare-root stock.
 4. Do not excavate deeper than depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.
 5. If area under the plant was initially dug too deep, add soil to raise it to the correct level and thoroughly tamp the added soil to prevent settling.
 6. Maintain angles of repose of adjacent materials to ensure stability. Do not excavate subgrades of adjacent paving, structures, hardscapes, or other new or existing improvements.
 7. Maintain supervision of excavations during working hours.
 8. Keep excavations covered or otherwise protected after working hours or when unattended by Installer's personnel.
- B. Obstructions: Notify Landscape Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.

- C. Drainage: Notify Landscape Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.

3.5 TREE AND SHRUB PLANTING

- A. Inspection: At time of planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.
- B. Roots: Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.
- C. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Set each plant plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with top of root ball at same elevation relative to ground level as in the nursery.
 - 1. If soil is dry, moisten prepared planting areas before planting. Do not create muddy soil conditions.
 - 2. Backfill: Approved planting soil.
 - 3. Do not remove burlap from balls. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove rope and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
 - 4. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
 - 5. Place fertilizer feeder packs equally distributed around each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled. Place tablets beside the root ball per manufacturer's instructions.
 - a. Quantity: Three (3) per canopy and understory tree.
 - 6. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
- D. Container-Grown Stock: Set each plant plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with top of root ball level with adjacent finish grades of planting soil.
 - 1. Backfill: Approved planting soil.
 - 2. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.
 - 3. Cut pot bound roots to prevent future root girdling.
 - 4. Place stock on setting layer of compacted planting soil.
 - 5. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
 - 6. Place planting tablets equally distributed around each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled. Place tablets beside the root ball per manufacturer's instructions.
 - a. Quantity: One (1) per shrub.
 - 7. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

- E. Slopes: When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.

3.6 TREE AND SHRUB PRUNING

- A. Remove only dead, dying, or broken branches. Do not prune otherwise unless directed by Landscape Architect
- B. Do not cut tree leaders unless directed by Landscape Architect.
- C. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.

3.7 PLANTING AREA MULCHING

- A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.
 - 1. Trees in Turf Areas: Apply organic mulch ring of 1-1/2" thick layer of leaf litter, followed by 1-1/2" thick layer of triple-shredded hardwood mulch on top of leaf litter layer, with 18-inch radius around trunks or stems. Do not place mulch within 3 inches of trunks or stems.
 - 2. Planting Areas: Apply 1-1/2" thick layer of leaf litter, followed by 1-1/2" thick layer of triple-shredded hardwood mulch on top of leaf litter layer, over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 3 inches of trunks or stems.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF TREE WATERING BAGS

- A. Provide one device for each tree.
- B. Place device on top of the mulch at base of tree stem and fill with water according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 PLANT MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings.
- B. Fill in, as necessary, soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
- C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices when possible to minimize use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical

controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

- D. Plant maintenance shall include watering of plants. Loss of plants due to inadequate watering will be considered negligence of maintenance services and will require plant replacement at no cost to Owner. A one-year watering plan shall be submitted as part of Plant Submittals.
 - 1. Install and maintain temporary drip irrigation piping and hoses to convey water from sources to planting areas and to keep plantings uniformly moist.
- E. Fertilize trees approximately one year after installation between October and December, or between February and April. Unless otherwise indicated by soil test results, apply at a rate of 2 pounds of actual nitrogen per 1,000 square feet. Make insertion points approximately 2'-6" apart, at a depth of 6 inches. Apply fertilized in the ball and backfill area, and to approximately 1 foot outside of the planting hole.\

3.10 REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

- A. General: Repair or replace existing or new trees and other plants that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Landscape Architect.
 - 1. Submit details of proposed pruning and repairs.
 - 2. Perform repairs of damaged trunks, branches, and roots within 24 hours, if approved.
 - 3. Replace trees and other plants that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Landscape Architect.
- B. Remove and replace trees that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition or are damaged during construction operations that Landscape Architect determines are incapable of restoring to normal growth pattern.
 - 1. Provide new trees of same size and species as those being replaced for each tree unless otherwise directed by Landscape Architect.

3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- C. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.
- D. After installation and before Substantial Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

- E. At time of Substantial Completion, verify that tree-watering devices are in good working order and leave them in place. Replace improperly functioning devices.

3.12 FINAL INSPECTION

- A. Inspection to determine completion and acceptance of planted areas will be made by the Landscape Architect, upon Contractor's request. Provide notification at least ten (10) business days before requested inspection date. Inspection comments will be submitted to the Contractor in writing.
- B. Planted areas will be accepted provided all requirements, including the maintenance period have been complied with and plant materials are alive and in a healthy, vigorous condition.
- C. Upon acceptance of Work, the Owner will assume plant maintenance and the plant material Warranty period will begin.
- D. An additional inspection will be made near the end of the Warranty period to determine if plant materials need to be replaced. Plants shall be in a health, vigorous growing state and free of disease and insects.

END OF SECTION 329300

SECTION 33 05 00 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping joining materials.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Grout.
 - 4. Piping system common requirements.
 - 5. Equipment installation common requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- D. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- B. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

2.2 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 33 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.

Issue for Bid

- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- I. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 33 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install connections to existing utilities, per the utility companies requirements and specifications.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

3.5 GROUTING

- A. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

Issue for Bid

- B. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- C. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- D. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 330500

SECTION 33 41 00 – SITE STORM SEWERAGE SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Storm sewerage systems shall include but not be limited to:
 - 1. Storm water system for the project site.
 - 2. Storm pipes.
 - 3. Storm structures.
 - 4. All excavating and backfill required for the storm sewer system.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Plumbing Code Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of National Standard Plumbing Code pertaining to selection and installation of storm water systems materials and products.
- B. Comply with applicable portions of Philadelphia Water Department (PWD) regulations pertaining to storm sewage systems.
- C. Comply with applicable Pennsylvania Department of Transportation (PennDOT), Publication 408, "Specifications", latest revision.
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - 1. A 36 Structural Steel.
 - 2. A 185 Welded Steel Wire Fabric for Concrete Reinforcement.
 - 3. ASTM F-2648 – Corrugated Drainage Pipe

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for storm sewer system materials and products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for storm sewer systems, showing piping materials, size, locations, and inverts. Include details of underground structures, connections, screens, traps, weir plate, valves and manholes, Show interface and spatial relationship between piping and structures.
- C. Record Drawings: At project closeout, submit record drawings of installed storm water piping and products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Issue for Bid

- A. The services of qualified inspection and testing agencies shall be used for this work.
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Obtain materials from firm's regularly engaged in manufacture of storm sewer system's products of types, materials, and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five (5) years.
- C. Installer's Qualifications: Firm with at least three (3) years of successful installation experience on projects with storm water work similar to that required for project.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- B. Handle pre-cast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Underground-Type Plastic Line Marker: Manufacturer's standard permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed plastic tape, intended for direct-burial service; not less than 6" wide x 4 mills thick. Provide green tape with black printing reading "CAUTION STORM LINE BURIED BELOW".

2.2 PIPES AND PIPE FITTINGS

- A. General: Provide pipes of one of the following materials, of weight/class indicated. Provide pipe fittings and accessories of same materials and weight/class as pipes, with joining method as indicated.
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Sewer Pipe: ASTM A 746, for push-on joints.
 - a. Standard-Pattern, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
 - b. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
 - 2. Refer to 321806 for field drainage materials.

2.3 DRAINAGE STRUCTURES AND APPURTENANCES

- A. Reinforcing Mesh and Bars: Welded plain cold drawn steel wire fabric, ASTM A185. Deformed steel bars, grade 60, ASTM A615.
- B. Inlet Sub-base: Soil material in accordance with PennDOT Specifications Section 350.2.

Issue for Bid

- C. Coarse Aggregate: PennDOT Type C or better in accordance with PennDOT Specification Section 703.2. Provide aggregate sizes as shown on the drawings.
- D. Concrete: All concrete shall be in accordance with PennDOT Specifications Section 704 Class A concrete.
- E. Storm Sewer Manholes, Catch Basins and inlets: All materials to be in accordance with the details shown on the drawings, Philadelphia Water Department Specifications or PennDOT Specification Sections 605 and 713.2 except catch basin and inlet grates and frames shall only be acceptable in structural steel conforming to AASHTO M183 or ASTM A36, the more stringent requirements apply.
- F. Ductile Iron grate: Provide in accordance with ASTM A536 class 65-45-12.
 - 1. Urban Accessories – Trench Drain Grate: 4.9" x 500 mm Double Wave Grate for ACO Klassik Drain to be used for proposed trench drain within plaza.
 - a. Material: Ductile iron.
 - b. Finish: Black, manufacturer's standard powdercoat; matte.
- G. Geo-textile Fabric: Linq Industrial Fabrics, Inc., Style 125EX, non-woven polypropylene fabric; or approved equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earthwork."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF IDENTIFICATION

- A. General: During backfilling/top-soiling of storm water systems, install continuous underground type plastic line marker, located directly over buried line at 6" to 8" below finished grade.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS

- A. General: Install piping in accordance with governing authorities having jurisdiction, as well as pipe manufacturer, except where more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Inspect piping before installation to detect apparent defects. Mark defective materials with paint and promptly remove from site.
- C. Lay piping beginning at low point of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert.
- D. Place bell ends or groove ends of piping facing upstream.

Issue for Bid

- E. Install gaskets in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation for lubricants, cements, and other special installation requirements.
- F. Cleaning Piping: Clear interior of piping of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in line and pull past each joint as it is completed.
 - 1. In large, accessible piping, brushes and brooms may be used for cleaning.
 - 2. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted conduit at end of day or whenever work stops.
 - 3. Flush lines between manholes if required to remove collected debris.
- G. Joint Adaptors: Make joints between different types of pipe with standard manufactured adapters and fittings intended for the purposes.
- H. Interior Inspection: Inspect piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred.
 - 1. Make inspections after lines between manholes, or manhole locations, have been installed and approximately 2' of backfill is in place, and again at completion of project.
 - 2. If inspection indicates poor alignment, debris, displaced pipe, infiltration or other defects, correct such defects, and re-inspect.
- I. Construct all storm sewer pipes in accordance with PennDOT specification section 601.3 and Philadelphia Water Department (PWD) Standards, the more stringent apply, except trench backfill shall be in accordance with Section 312000 "Earthwork."

3.4 STORM SEWER MANHOLES, INLETS AND CATCH BASINS

- A. Construct storm sewer structures in accordance with PennDOT specification section 605.3 and ASTM C891 except backfill shall be in accordance with Section 312000 "Earthwork" and the details shown on the drawings

3.5 STORMWATER SYSTEM STRUCTURES

- A. All construction shall conform to PennDOT Specifications Section 605.

END OF SECTION 33 41 00

SECTION 33 41 01 – CONNECTION TO EXISTING CITY OF PHILADELPHIA SEWER STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 109, Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (using 2-in. or 50 mm cube specimens).
- B. ASTM D 638, Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.
- C. ASTM D 695, Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Before starting this work, submit for approval of City of Philadelphia Engineer and the Construction Manager, manufacturer's literature describing Epoxy Mortar Gel and Epoxy Bonding Agent. Literature must address each requirement (e.g., Compressive Strength per ASTM D 109).

1.3 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. This work consists of making necessary adjustments and proper connections between new sewer structures and existing sewer structures and shall include sealing all remaining openings and all appurtenant work and materials necessary for completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. The following products are acceptable as Epoxy Mortar Gel, provided they continue to meet all requirements:
 - 1. Meta Bond HM Gel, as manufactured by American Meta Seal Company, 509 Washington Avenue, Carlstadt, NJ 07072.
 - 2. Sikadur 31 Hi-Mod Gel, as manufactured by Sika Corporation, Box 297, Lyndhurst, NJ 07071.
 - 3. Thermal-Chem Mortar Resin Gel (Product No. 304), as manufactured by Thermo-Chem. Inc., 1400 Louis Avenue, Elk Grove, IL 60007.
- B. The following products are acceptable as Epoxy Bonding Agent, provided they continue to meet all requirements:

Issue for Bid

1. Meta Bond HM, or Meta Bond HM Gel, as manufactured by American Meta Seal Company, 509 Washington Avenue, Carlstadt, NJ 07072.
2. Sikastix 370, Sikadur Hi-Mod, or Sikadur 31 Hi-Mod Gel, as manufactured by Sika Corporation, Box 297, Lyndhurst, NJ 07071.
3. Thermal-Chem Mortar Resin (Product No. 3), or Therma-Chem Mortar Resin Gel (Product No. 304), as manufactured by Therma-Chem, Inc., 1400 Louis Avenue, Elk Grove, IL 60007.

2.2 MATERIAL

A. Epoxy Mortar Gel shall:

1. Be a 100% solids formulation.
2. Have a tensile strength per ASTM D 638 not less than 3000 psi after 7 days at 73°F.
3. Have a tensile elongation per ASTM D 638 not over 7%.
4. Have a compressive strength per ASTM D 695 not less than 3000 psi after 24 hours at 73°F, and not less than 6000 psi after 7 days at 73°F.

B. Sand Shall:

1. Be oven-dry silica sand.
2. Have at least 70% by weight pass #20 sieve.
3. Have not over 35% by weight pass #40 sieve.

C. Epoxy Bonding Agent shall meet the requirements for Epoxy Mortar Gel.

2.3 MIXES

- A. Epoxy Mortar shall consist of Epoxy Mortar Gel and Sand mixed at a 1:1 ratio by loose volume.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Make hole(s) in existing structure as necessary to permit connections. Drill $\frac{3}{4}$ " to 1" diameter holes along perimeter of required opening. Break out existing material as necessary. Cut reinforcing as necessary. Remove all dirt, laitance, and other loose or undesirable material from mating surfaces. Check hole(s) for fit.
- B. Comply fully with manufacturer's instructions. Coat mating surfaces with Epoxy Bonding Agent and set pipe. Seal all openings with Epoxy Mortar. Support pipe securely to prevent movement and protect for at least 24 hours.

END OF SECTION 33 41 01